HANDBOOK



PEUGEOT 508

PEUGEOT

On-line handbook

Select one of the following means of access to view your handbook on-line...

Find your handbook on the PEUGEOT website, under "MyPEUGEOT".

This personal space offers advice and other useful information for the care and maintenance of your vehicle.

Scan this code for direct access to your handbook.

If the "MyPEUGEOT" function is not available on the PEUGEOT public website for your country, you can find your handbook at the following address:
http://public.servicebox.peugeot.com/ddb/

Select:
- the language,
- the vehicle, its body style,
- the print edition of your handbook appropriate for the date of registration of your vehicle.

Referring to the handbook on-line also gives you access to the latest information available, easily identified by the bookmark, associated with this symbol:

Welcome

This handbook describes all of the equipment available in the whole range.

Your vehicle will be fitted with some of the equipment described in this document, depending on its trim level, version and the specification for the country in which it is sold.

The descriptions and illustrations are given without any obligation. Automobiles PEUGEOT reserves the right to modify the technical specifications, equipment and accessories without having to update this edition of the handbook.

This document is an integral part of your vehicle. It should be passed on to the new user in the event of sale or transfer.

Thank you for choosing a 508.

This handbook has been designed to enable you to make the most of your vehicle in all situations.

Key

! safety warning

contributes to the protection of the environment

i additional information

Overview

Eco-driving

Instruments 1

Instrument panel 13
Indicator and warning lamps 14
Indicators 29
Distance recorders 29
Trip computer 39
Touch screen 43
Setting the date and time 47

Access 2

Remote control key 49
Back-up procedure - Remote controls 53
"Keyless Entry and Starting" electronic key 55
Back-up procedure - Electronic keys 62
Boot 65
Motorised tailgate (SW and non-hybrid RHX) 66
Alarm 70
Electric windows 73

Ease of use and comfort 3

Front seats 75
Steering wheel adjustment 79
Mirrors 80
Heating and Ventilation 83
Manual air conditioning 86
Dual-zone digital air conditioning 88
Quad-zone digital air conditioning 91
Front demist - defrost 96
Rear screen demist - defrost 96
Programmable Heating / Ventilation 97
Front fittings 99
Courtesy lamps 102
Interior mood lighting 103
Sunroof 104
Panoramic sunroof (SW and non-hybrid RHX) 106
Centre console 107
Rear seats 109
Rear fittings 111
Boot fittings (Saloon) 112
Boot fittings (SW and non-hybrid RHX) 113

Lighting and visibility 4

Lighting controls 117
Direction indicators 120
Daytime running lamps 120
Automatic illumination of headlamps 121
Adaptive lighting 122
Cornering lighting 123
Guide-me-home lighting 124
Headlamp beam height adjustment 126
Wiper controls 127
Automatic rain sensitive wipers 129

Safety 5

General safety recommendations 131
Hazard warning lamps 132
Horn 132
Emergency or assistance call 132
Electronic stability control (ESC) 133
Seat belts 136
Airbags 139
Child seats 143
Deactivating the passenger's front airbag 146
ISOFIX child seats 152
Child lock 158

6 Driving

Driving recommendations 159
Starting-switching off the engine using the remote control key 161
Starting-switching off the engine using the electronic key 165
Manual parking brake 167
Electric parking brake 168
Manual gearbox 174
Gear shift indicator 175
Automatic gearbox 176
Stop & Start 180
Hill start assist 183
Head-up display 184
Tyre under-inflation detection 186
Speed limiter 188
Cruise control 190
Memorising speeds 192
Parking sensors 193
Blind spot monitoring system 196
Reversing camera 199

7 Practical information

Fuel 200
Snow chains 203
Very cold climate screen 204
Towing a trailer 205
Towbar with quickly detachable towball 206
Changing a wiper blade 211
Fitting roof bars 212
Opening the bonnet 214
Petrol engines 215
Diesel engines 216
BlueHDi Diesel engines 217
Checking levels 218
Checks 221
AdBlue® additive and SCR system (BlueHDi Diesel) 223

8 In the event of a breakdown

Warning triangle 227
Running out of fuel (Diesel) 228
Temporary puncture repair kit 229
Spare wheel 235
Changing a bulb 242
Changing a fuse 249
12 V battery 253
Removing - refitting the battery 257
Energy economy mode 261
Towing the vehicle 262

9 Technical data

Petrol engines 264
Petrol weights 265
Diesel engines 266
Diesel weights 268
Dimensions 271
Identification markings 273

Audio equipment and telematics

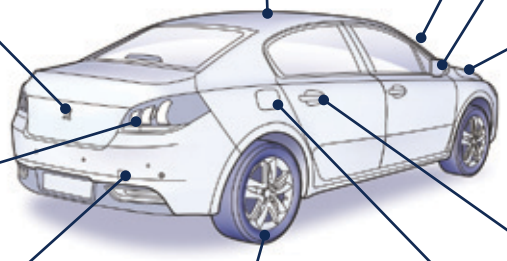
Emergency or assistance 274
JBL equipment 276
7-inch touch screen 277
Audio system 337

Alphabetical index

Exterior

Saloon





Remote control key / electronic key 49-63
- opening / closing
- anti-theft protection
- starting
- battery

Boot 50, 57, 65, 68
- opening / closing
- emergency release

Temporary puncture repair kit 229-234

Reversing camera 199

Changing bulbs 242, 248
- rear lamps
- 3rd brake lamp
- number plate lamps

Parking sensors 193-195

Towbar 205-210

Towing 262-263

Sunroof 104-105

Roof bars 212

Tyre under-inflation detection 186-187

ESC: ABS-EBFD, EBA, ASR, DSC 133-135

Changing a wheel 235-241
- tools
- removing / refitting

Snow chains 203

Tyre pressures 277

Wipers 127-130

Changing a wiper blade 130, 211

Door mirrors 80-81

Blind spot monitoring system 196-198

Welcome lighting 125

Door mirror spotlamps 125

Additional headlamps 123

Secondary additional headlamps 123

Adjusting the headlamp beam height 126

Changing front bulbs 242-244

Doors 49-63
- Keyless Entry and Starting
- opening / closing
- central locking
- emergency control

Alarm 70-72

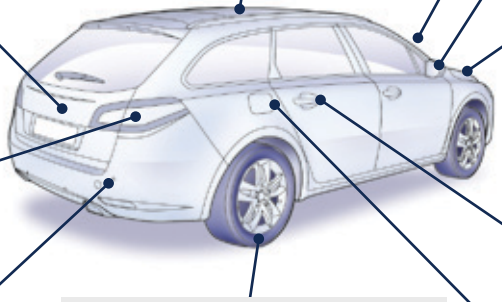
Electric windows 73-74

Fuel tank, misfuel prevention 200-202

Exterior

SW and non-hybrid RXH





Remote control key / electronic key	49-63
- opening / closing	
- anti-theft protection	
- starting	
- battery	

Boot	50, 57, 65, 68
- opening / closing	
- emergency control	
Motorised tailgate	66-68
Temporary puncture repair kit	229-234
Reversing camera	199

Changing bulbs	246-248
- rear lamps	
- 3rd brake lamp	
- number plate lamp	

Parking sensors	193-195
Towbar	205-210
Towing	262-263

Sunroof	104-105
Panoramic sunroof	106
Roof bars	212

Under-inflation detection	186-187
ESC: ABS-EBFD, EBA, ASR, DSC	133-135
Changing a wheel	235-241
- tools	
- removing / refitting	
Snow chains	203
Tyre pressures	273

Wipers	127-130
Changing a wiper blade	130, 211

Door mirrors	80-81
Blind spot monitoring system	196-198

Welcome lighting	125
Door mirror spotlamps	125
Additional headlamps	123
Additional secondary headlamps	123
Adjusting headlamp beam height	126
Changing front bulbs	242-244

Doors	49-63
- Keyless Entry and Starting	
- opening / closing	
- central locking	
- emergency control	
Alarm	70-72
Wipers	73-74

Fuel tank, misfuel prevention	200-202

Interior

Rear seats 109-110
ISOFIX child seats 152-156, 157

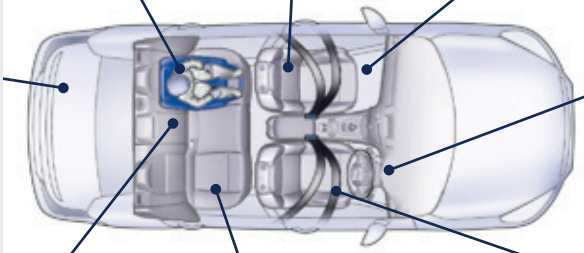
Boot fittings (Saloon) 112
- rings, hooks, straps
- storage box
- boxes, storage
- boot lamp
- floor

Boot fittings (SW and non-hybrid RXH) 113
- rings hooks
- boot lamp
- floor
- 12 V accessory socket
- storage

Luggage cover (SW and non-hybrid RXH) 114
High load net (SW and non-hybrid RXH) 115-116
Warning triangle 227
AdBlue® additive tank 223-226

Rear fittings 111
- rear armrest
- ski flap

Front seats 75-78
- manual
- electric
- welcome function
- head restraints
- heated
- massage



Mats 100
Airbags 139-152

Interior fittings 99-101
- sun visor
- illuminated glove box
- 12 V accessory socket

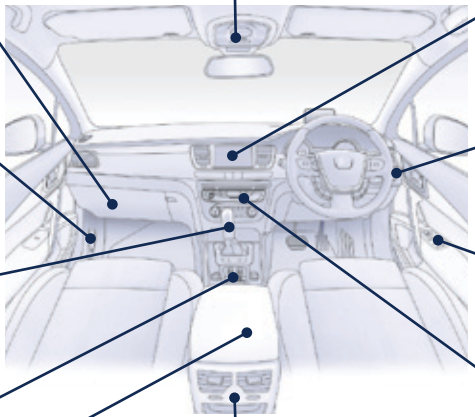
Centre console 107-108
- front armrest
- 12 V socket
- USB Player - Plug

Deactivating the passenger's front airbag 140, 146

Seat belts 136-138

Conventional child seats 143-151, 157
Electric child lock 158

Instruments and controls



Courtesy lamps	102
Seat belt / passenger's front airbag warning lamps display	137, 140
Rear view mirror	82
Sunroof	104-105
Panoramic sunroof (SW and non-hybrid RXH)	106
Emergency or assistance	274

Fuses behind the glove box	249-250

Opening the bonnet	214

6-speed manual gearbox	174
Gear shift indicator	175
Automatic gearbox	176-179
Stop & Start	180-182
Hill start assist	172, 183

Manual parking brake	167

PEUGEOT Connect USB	108

Touch screen	277-335
Setting the date/time	48
Audio system	337-352
Setting the date/time	47

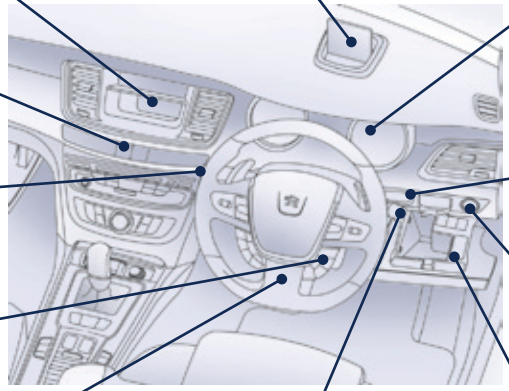
Electric parking brake	168-173
Dashboard fuses	249, 251

Door mirrors	80-81
Electric windows, deactivating	73-74

Heating, ventilation	83-85
Manual air conditioning	86-87
Dual-zone air conditioning	88-90
Quad-zone front air conditioning	91-93
Demisting / defrosting	96

Quad-zone rear air conditioning	94-95

Instruments and controls (cont.)



Touch screen 43-46, 48, 277-335
Screen C 47, 337-352

Hazard warning lamps 132

Lighting controls 117-125
Direction indicators, parking 120, 125

Memorising speeds 192
Speed limiter 188-189
Cruise control 190-191

Adjusting the steering wheel 79
Horn 132

Head-up display 184-185

Instrument panels, screens 13, 28-29, 32-34
- check / service indicator / trip distance recorder
- lighting dimmer

Warning lamps 14-27
Indicators 29-38
- engine coolant / oil temperature
- engine oil level
- AdBlue® additive operating range

Gear shift indicator 175

Switch panels, buttons 9
Programmable heating 97-98

Ignition switch, Keyless Entry and Starting, starting/switching off the engine 161-166
Stop & Start 180-182
Electric parking brake 168-173

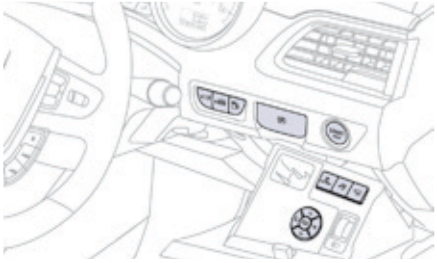
Adjusting the headlamp beam height 126

Wiper controls 127-130
Trip computer 39-42

Instruments and controls (continued)

Switch panels*





Lighting of the indicator lamp indicates the state of the corresponding function.

Massage.
79

Adaptive lighting.
122

Blind spot monitoring system.
196

Alarm.
70

Electric parking brake.
168

Starting/switching off using the electronic key.
165

Opening the boot.
50, 57, 65, 68

Opening the fuel filler flap.
200

Deactivation of the DSC/ASR system.
135

Electric child lock.
158

Programmable heating warning lamp.
97

Deactivation of parking sensors.
193

Deactivation of Stop & Start.
182

Head-up display (on/off, settings).
184

* Depending on version.

Maintenance - Technical data

Checking levels 218-220
- oil
- brake fluid
- power steering fluid
- coolant
- screenwash/headlamp wash fluid
- fuel additive (Diesel)

AdBlue® additive 35-38, 223-226

Checking components 221-222
- 12 V battery
- air filter
- passenger compartment filter
- oil filter
- particle filter (Diesel)
- gearbox
- brake pads / discs
- parking brake
- electric parking brake

Changing bulbs 242-248
- front
- rear

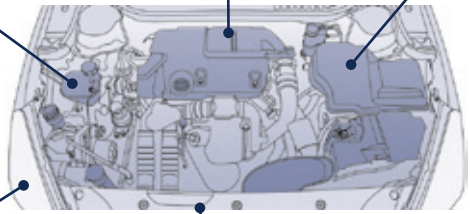
Running out of fuel (Diesel) 228

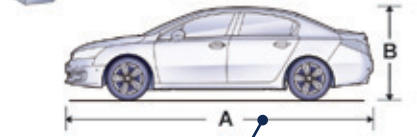
12V battery 253-256
Removing/refitting the 12V battery 257-260
Load reduction, economy mode 261
Engine compartment fuses 249, 252

Petrol weights 265
Diesel weights 268-269

Identification markings 273
Dimensions 271-272

Opening the bonnet 214
Under the bonnet, petrol 215
Under the bonnet, Diesel 216-217
Petrol engines 264
Diesel engines 266-267





Eco-driving

Eco-driving is a range of everyday practices that allow the motorist to optimise their fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions.

Optimise the use of your gearbox

With a manual gearbox, move off gently and change up without waiting. During acceleration change up early.

With an automatic or electronic gearbox, give preference to automatic mode and avoid pressing the accelerator pedal heavily or suddenly.

The gear shift indicator invites you to engage the most suitable gear: as soon as the indication is displayed in the instrument panel, follow it straight away.
For vehicles fitted with an electronic or automatic gearbox, this indicator appears only in manual mode.

Drive smoothly

Maintain a safe distance between vehicles, use engine braking rather than the brake pedal, and press the accelerator progressively. These practices contribute towards a reduction in fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions and also help to reduce the background traffic noise.

If your vehicle has cruise control, make use of the system at speeds above 25 mph (40 km/h) when the traffic is flowing well.

Control the use of your electrical equipment

Before moving off, if the passenger compartment is too warm, ventilate it by opening the windows and air vents before using the air conditioning.
Above 30 mph (50 km/h), close the windows and leave the air vents open.
Remember to make use of equipment that can help keep the temperature in the passenger compartment down (sunroof and window blinds...).
Switch off the air conditioning, unless it has automatic regulation, as soon as the desired temperature is attained.
Switch off the demisting and defrosting controls, if not automatic.
Switch off the heated seat as soon as possible.

Switch off the headlamps and front foglamps when the level of light does not require their use.

Avoid running the engine before moving off, particularly in winter; your vehicle will warm up much faster while driving.

As a passenger, if you avoid connecting your multimedia devices (film, music, video game...), you will contribute towards limiting the consumption of electrical energy, and so of fuel.
Disconnect your portable devices before leaving the vehicle.

Limit the causes of excess consumption

Spread loads throughout the vehicle; place the heaviest items in the bottom of the boot, as close as possible to the rear seats.
Limit the loads carried in the vehicle and reduce wind resistance (roof bars, roof rack, bicycle carrier, trailer...). Use a roof box in preference.
Remove roof bars and roof racks after use.

At the end of winter, remove snow tyres and refit your summer tyres.

Observe the recommendations on maintenance

Check the tyre pressures regularly, when cold, referring to the label in the door aperture, driver's side.
Carry out this check in particular:
- before a long journey,
- at each change of season,
- after a long period out of use.

Don't forget the spare wheel and the tyres on any trailer or caravan.

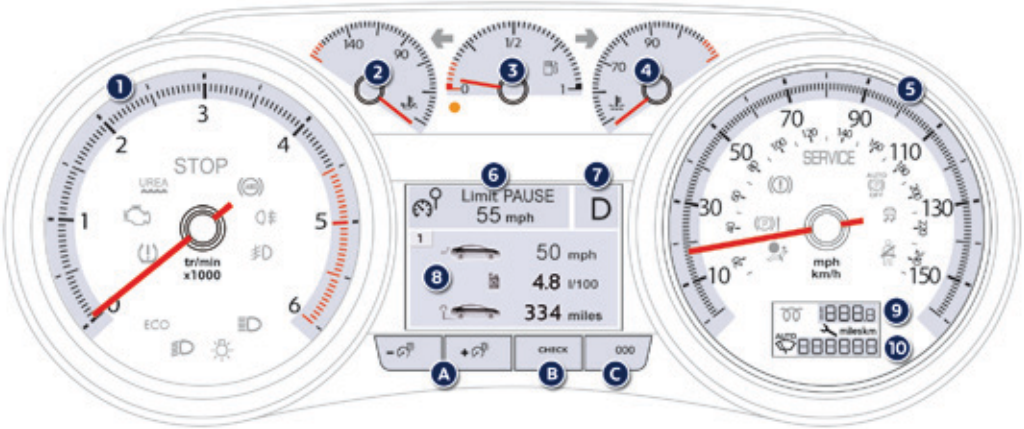
Have your vehicle serviced regularly (engine oil, oil filter, air filter, passenger compartment filter...) and observe the schedule of operations recommended in the manufacturer's service schedule.

With a BlueHDi Diesel engine, if the SCR system is faulty your vehicle becomes polluting; go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop without delay to have the emissions of nitrous oxides brought back to the legal level.

When refuelling, do not continue after the third cut-off of the nozzle to avoid any overflow.

At the wheel of your new vehicle, it is only after the first 1 800 miles (3 000 kilometres) that you will see the fuel consumption settle down to a consistent average.

Instrument panel



Dials and screens

1. Rev counter (x 1 000 rpm or tr/min), graduation according to engine (petrol or Diesel).
2. Engine oil temperature gauge.
3. Fuel gauge.
4. Engine coolant temperature gauge.
5. Speedometer (mph or km/h).
6. Cruise control or speed limiter settings.
7. Gear shift indicator for a manual gearbox or gear lever position and gear for an automatic gearbox.
8. Display zone: alert messages or state of functions, trip computer.
9. Trip distance recorder (miles or km).
10. Automatic wipers
    Service indicator
    (miles or km) then,
    total distance recorder.
    These two functions are displayed in turn when switching on the ignition.

Control buttons

A. Main lighting dimmer.
B. Display of alert log.
   Recall of information:
   - on servicing,
   - on driving range for the emissions control additive (AdBlue®).
C. Reset the trip distance recorder.

Indicator and warning lamps

Visual indicators informing the driver that a system is in operation, switched off or has a fault.



When the ignition is switched on

Certain warning lamps come on for a few seconds in the instrument panel and/or instrument panel screen when the vehicle's ignition is switched on.
When the engine is started, these same warning lamps should go off.
If they remain on, before moving off, refer to the information on the warning lamp concerned.

Associated warnings

The switching on of certain warning lamps may be accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the instrument panel screen.
The warning lamp may come on continuously (fixed) or flash.

! Certain warning lamps may come on in one of two modes: fixed or flashing. Only by relating the type of illumination to the operating status of the vehicle can it be ascertained whether the situation is normal or whether a fault has occurred.
Please refer to the tables described hereafter for more information.

Operation indicator lamps

If one of the following indicator lamps comes on in the instrument panel and/or instrument panel screen, this confirms that the corresponding system has come into operation.

Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action / Observations
	**Left-hand direction indicator**	flashing with buzzer.	The lighting stalk is pushed down.	
	**Right-hand direction indicator**	flashing with buzzer.	The lighting stalk is pushed up.	
	**Sidelamps**	fixed.	The lighting stalk is in the "Sidelamps" position.	
	**Dipped beam headlamps**	fixed.	The lighting stalk is in the "Dipped beam headlamps" position.	
	**Main beam headlamps**	fixed.	The lighting stalk is pulled towards you.	Pull the stalk to return to dipped beam headlamps.
	**Front foglamps**	fixed.	The front foglamps are switched on using the ring on the lighting control stalk.	Turn the ring on the lighting control stalk rearward twice to switch off the front foglamps.
	**Rear foglamps**	fixed.	The rear foglamps are on.	Turn the ring on the stalk rearward to switch off the rear foglamps.

For more information on the lighting controls, refer to the corresponding section.

Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action / Observations
	**Diesel engine pre-heating**	fixed.	The ignition switch is at the 2nd position (ignition on) or the "**START/STOP**" button has been pressed.	Wait until the warning lamp goes off before starting. Once it goes off, starting is immediate, on condition that: - the clutch pedal is pressed fully down with a manual gearbox, - pressure is maintained on the brake pedal with an automatic gearbox. The period of illumination of the warning lamp is determined by the ambient conditions (up to about thirty seconds in extreme conditions). If the engine does not start, switch the ignition off and then on, wait until the warning lamp goes off again, then start the engine.
	**Parking brake**	fixed.	The parking brake is applied or not properly released.	Release the parking brake to switch off the warning lamp, keeping your foot on the brake pedal. Observe the safety recommendations. For more information on the parking brake, refer to the corresponding section.
	**Deactivation of the automatic functions of the electric parking brake**	fixed.	The "automatic application" (on switching off the engine) and "automatic release" functions are deactivated or faulty.	Activate the function (depending on the country of sale) via the vehicle configuration menu or contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop if automatic application / release is not possible. For more information on the electric parking brake, refer to the corresponding section.

Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action / Observations
	**Automatic wiping**	fixed.	The wiper control is pushed downwards.	Automatic front wiping is activated. To deactivate automatic wiping, operate the control stalk downwards or put the stalk into another position.
	**Passenger's airbag system**	fixed in the seat belt and passenger's front airbag warning lamps display.	The control switch, located in the glove box, has been placed in the **"ON"** position. The passenger's front airbag is activated. In this case, do not install a rearward facing child seat on this seat.	Move the control switch to the **"OFF"** position to deactivate the passenger's front airbag. In this case, you can install a rearward facing child seat, unless there is a fault with the airbags (airbag warning lamp on).
	**Stop & Start**	fixed.	When the vehicle stops (red lights, traffic jams, ...) the Stop & Start system has put the engine into STOP mode.	The warning lamp goes off and the engine restarts automatically in START mode, as soon as you want to move off.
		flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.	STOP mode is temporarily unavailable. or START mode is invoked automatically.	For more information on Stop & Start, refer to the corresponding section.

Deactivation indicator lamps

If one of the following indicator lamps comes on, this confirms that the corresponding system has been switched off intentionally.
This is may be accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the instrument panel screen.

Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action / Observations
	**Passenger's airbag system**	fixed in the instrument panel and/or seat belt and front passenger's airbag warning lamps display.	The control switch, located in the glove box, is set to the **OFF** position. The passenger's front airbag is deactivated. You can install a rearward facing child seat, unless there is a fault with the airbags (airbag warning lamp on).	Set the control to the **"ON"** position to activate the passenger's front airbag. In this case, do not install a rearward facing child seat on this seat.
	**Dynamic stability control (DSC/ASR)**	fixed.	The button is pressed and the indicator lamp comes on. The DSC/ASR is deactivated. DSC: dynamic stability control. ASR: anti-slip regulation.	Press the button to activate the DSC/ASR. Its indicator lamp goes off. The DSC/ASR system is activated automatically when the vehicle is started. If deactivated, the system is reactivated automatically from around 30 mph (50 km/h). For more information on the ESC system (DSC/ASR), refer to the corresponding section.

Warning lamps

When the engine is running or the vehicle is being driven, illumination of one of the following warning lamps indicates a fault which requires action on the part of the driver.
Any fault resulting in the illumination of a warning lamp must be investigated further by reading the associated message in the instrument panel screen.
If you encounter any problems, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action / Observations
STOP	**STOP**	fixed, associated with another warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen.	Illumination of this warning lamp is related to a serious fault with the braking system, power steering, the engine oil pressure or engine coolant temperature or a major electrical fault.	Stop as soon as it is safe to do so as the engine may cut out. Park, switch off the ignition and call a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action / Observations
SERVICE	**Service**	on temporarily.	A minor fault has occurred for which there is no specific warning lamp.	Identify the fault by means of the associated message, such as: - low engine oil level, - low screenwash/headlamp wash fluid level, - discharged remote control battery, - low tyre pressures, - saturation of the particle filter (FAP) on Diesel vehicles. For more information on checking the particle filter, refer to the corresponding section. For any other faults, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
		fixed.	A major fault has occurred for which there is no specific warning lamp.	Identify the fault by reading the message and contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
		fixed, associated with flashing and then fixed display of the service spanner.	The servicing interval has been exceeded.	Only on BlueHDi Diesel versions. Your vehicle must be serviced as soon as possible.

Warning / indicator lamp	State	Cause	Action / Observations
 **Electric parking brake**	flashing.	The electric parking brake is not applied automatically. The application/release is faulty.	You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Park on flat level ground, engage a gear (or place the lever in position **P** for an automatic gearbox), switch off the ignition and contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
 **Electric parking brake fault**	fixed.	The electric parking brake has a fault.	Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop without delay. For more information on the electric parking brake, refer to the corresponding section.
 **Deactivation of the automatic functions of the electric parking brake**	fixed.	The "automatic application" (on switching off the engine) and "automatic release" functions are deactivated or faulty. In the event of a fault, illumination of this warning lamp is accompanied by a message.	To reactivate the automatic functions, refer to the "Electric parking brake" section. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop if automatic application / release is not possible. The parking brake can be released manually. For more information on the electric parking brake, refer to the corresponding section.

Warning / indicator lamp	State	Cause	Action / Observations
 **Braking**	fixed.	The brake fluid level has dropped significantly.	You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Top up with brake fluid listed by PEUGEOT. If the problem persists, have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
+ 	fixed, associated with the ABS warning lamp.	The electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) system has a fault.	You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
 **Anti-lock Braking System (ABS)**	fixed.	The anti-lock braking system has a fault.	The vehicle retains conventional braking. Drive carefully at reduced speed and contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.
 **Dynamic stability control (DSC/ASR)**	flashing.	The DSC/ASR regulation is operating.	The system optimises traction and improves the directional stability of the vehicle in the event of loss of grip or trajectory.
	fixed.	The DSC/ASR system has a fault.	Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action / Observations
	**Engine autodiagnosis system**	flashing.	The engine management system has a fault.	Risk of destruction of the catalytic converter. Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
		fixed.	The emission control system has a fault.	The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started. If it does not go off, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or qualified workshop without delay.
	**Low fuel level**	fixed with the needle in the red zone.	When it first comes on there remains approximately **7 litres** of fuel in the tank. At this point, you begin to use the fuel reserve.	Refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out of fuel. This warning lamp will come on every time the ignition is switched on, until a sufficient addition of fuel is made. Never continue to drive until you run out of fuel, as this could damage the emission control and injection systems.

Warning or indicator lamp in the instrument panel		State	Cause	Action / Observations
UREA	**AdBlue® additive (BlueHDi Diesel)**	fixed, on switching on the ignition, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The remaining driving range is between 350 miles (600 km) and 1500 miles (2400 km).	Have the AdBlue® additive tank topped up as soon as possible: go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop, or carry out this operation yourself.
+ SERVICE		flashing associated with the SERVICE warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The remaining driving range is between 0 and 350 miles (600 km).	You must **top-up the** AdBlue® additive tank to **avoid a breakdown**: go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop, or carry out this operation yourself.
		flashing, associated with the SERVICE warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating that starting is prevented.	The AdBlue® tank is empty: the starting inhibition system required by legislation prevents starting of the engine.	To be able to start the engine, you must **top-up the** AdBlue® additive tank: go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop, or carry out this operation yourself. It is **essential** to add at least 3.8 litres of AdBlue® to the additive tank.

For topping-up or for more information on the AdBlue® additive, refer to the corresponding section.

Warning or indicator lamp in the instrument panel		State	Cause	Action / Observations
UREA + SERVICE +	**SCR emissions control system (BlueHDi Diesel)**	fixed, on switching on the ignition, associated with the SERVICE and engine diagnostic warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	A fault with the SCR emissions control system has been detected.	This alert disappears once the exhaust emissions return to normal levels.
		flashing, on switching on the ignition, associated with the SERVICE and engine diagnostic warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	After confirmation of the fault with the emissions control system, you can drive for up to 650 miles (1 100 km) before the engine starting inhibition system is triggered.	Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop **without delay**, **to avoid a breakdown**.
		flashing, on switching on the ignition, associated with the SERVICE and engine diagnostic warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	You have exceeded the authorised driving limit following confirmation of a fault with the emissions control system: the engine starting inhibition system prevents starting of the engine.	To be able to start the engine, you **must** call on a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning or indicator lamp in the instrument panel		State	Cause	Action / Observations
	**Engine oil pressure**	fixed.	There is a fault with the engine lubrication system.	You must stop as soon it is safe to do so. Park, switch off the ignition and contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
	**Battery charge**	fixed.	The battery charging circuit has a fault (dirty or loose terminals, slack or cut alternator belt, ...).	The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started. If it does not go off, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
	**Door(s) open**	fixed, associated with a message identifying the door, if the speed is below 6 mph (10 km/h).	A door or the boot is still open.	Close the door or boot.
		fixed, associated with a message identifying the door, together with an audible signal if the speed is above 6 mph (10 km/h).		

Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action / Observations
	**Seat belt(s) not fastened / unfastened**	fixed then flashing accompanied by an increasing audible signal.	A seat belt has not been fastened or has been unfastened.	Pull the strap then insert the tongue in the buckle.
	**Airbags**	on temporarily.	This lamp comes on for a few seconds when you turn on the ignition, then goes off.	This lamp should go off when the engine is started. If it does not go off, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
		fixed.	One of the airbag or seat belt pretensioner systems has a fault.	Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
	**Directional headlamps**	flashing.	The directional headlamps system has a fault.	Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
	**Under-inflation**	fixed.	The pressure in one or more wheels is too low.	Check the pressure of the tyres as soon as possible. This check should preferably be carried out when the tyres are cold.
+ SERVICE 		flashing then fixed, accompanied by the Service warning lamp.	The tyre pressure monitoring system has a fault or no sensor is detected on one of the wheels.	Under-inflation detection is not assured. Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Instrument panel screen



With the vehicle stationary, use the left hand thumb wheel to move through the menus, so as to configure the vehicle settings (driving and comfort systems, ...).

- Press: **Main menu**, confirm the selection,
- Rotate (other than menu): scroll through the list of active functions available,
- Rotate (in a menu): move up or down in the menu.

Main menu*

1 **Vehicle parameters**

2 **Driving position setting**

2 **Access to the vehicle**

3 Unlocking boot only

2 **Driving assistance**

3 Speeds memorised

3 Rear wipe in reverse gear

3 Parking brake automatic

2 **Lighting**

3 Welcome lighting

3 Follow-me-home headlamps

3 Directional headlamps

1 **Screen settings**

2 **Choice of color schemes**

2 **Choice of language**

2 **Choice of units**

3 Fuel consumption

3 Temperature

1 **Preheating / Preventilation**

2 **Parameters**

* Depending on version.

Indicators

You may have to modify the unit of distance when travelling in another country: the speed must be displayed in the official units for the country (miles or km). The units are changed in the screen configuration menu, with the vehicle stationary.

Distance recorders



Total distance recorder

The total distance covered by the vehicle is displayed in zone **A** of the screen and the trip distance in zone **B**.



Trip recorder reset

With the trip distance displayed, press the button for a few seconds.

Coolant temperature gauge



With the engine running, when the needle is:

- in zone **A**, the temperature is correct,
- in zone **B**, the temperature is too high; the central **STOP** warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the instrument panel screen.

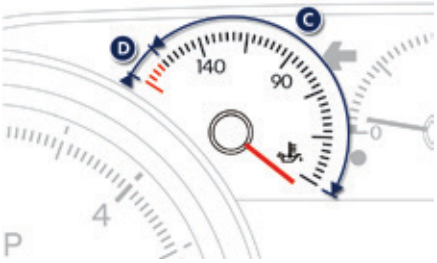
You MUST stop as soon as it is safe to do so.
Wait a few minutes before switching off the engine.
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

After driving for a few minutes, the temperature and pressure in the cooling system increase.
To top up the level:

- ☞ wait for the engine to cool,
- ☞ unscrew the cap by two turns to allow the pressure to drop,
- ☞ when the pressure has dropped, remove the cap,
- ☞ top up the level to the "MAX" mark.

! Be aware of the risk of burns when topping up the cooling system. Do not fill above the maximum level (indicated on the reservoir).

Engine oil temperature gauge



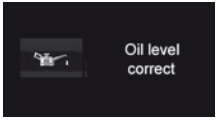
On switching on the ignition or when driving, it indicates the engine oil temperature.
With the needle in zone **C**, the temperature is correct.
With the needle in zone **D**, the temperature is too high.
Slow down to lower the oil temperature.

Engine oil level indicator*

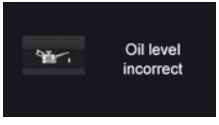
On versions fitted with an electric oil level indicator, the state of the engine oil level is displayed in the instrument panel for a few seconds, after the servicing information.

The level read will only be correct if the vehicle is on level ground and the engine has been off for more than 30 minutes.

Oil level correct



Oil level incorrect



This is indicated by the display of the message "Oil level incorrect" in the instrument panel screen, accompanied by the service warning lamp and an audible signal.
If the low oil level is confirmed by a check using the dipstick, the level must be topped up to avoid damage to the engine.

For more information on checking the levels, refer to the corresponding section.

Oil level indicator fault



This is signalled by the display of the message "Oil level measurement invalid" in the instrument panel.
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

In the event of a fault with the electric indicator, the oil level is no longer monitored.
If the system is faulty, you must check the engine oil level using the manual dipstick located under the bonnet.

For more information on checking the levels, refer to the corresponding section.

* Depending on version.

Lighting dimmer control

Allows the brightness of the instruments and controls and the interior mood lighting to be manually adjusted.

> Operates only when the vehicle's exterior lighting is on.



With the lighting on, press button **B** to increase the brightness of the instruments and controls and the interior mood lighting or button **A** to reduce it.
Release the button when the desired level of brightness is reached.

CHECK (vehicle autotest)

Automatic CHECK

With the key in the ignition on position, all of the warning lamps for the functions tested are displayed. They are switched off after a few seconds.
At the same time, an automatic CHECK (vehicle autotest) is carried out.

If no "major" fault is found, you can start your vehicle.

In the presence of a fault

A "minor" fault has been detected: the warning lamp(s) are displayed then go off.
You can start your vehicle; however, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.
A "major" fault has been detected: the associated warning lamps(s) remain on accompanied by the STOP or SERVICE warning lamp.
Do not start your vehicle.
Call a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.

Manual CHECK



Pressing the **"CHECK"** button on the instrument panel starts the manual CHECK (vehicle autotest). This function enables you to recall at any time (with the key in the ignition on position or with the engine running), the alerts present.

With the engine running and the vehicle moving, the instrument panel displays the warning lamps (in the event of a fault).

> The passenger's airbag deactivated warning lamp* remains on while the airbag is deactivated.

> If your vehicle has a BlueHDi engine, pressing the "**CHECK**" button gives you the distance that can be travelled before engine starting is prevented automatically.
> For more information on the AdBlue® additive, refer to the corresponding section.

* According to country.

Service indicator

System informing the driver when the next service is due, in line with the manufacturer's service schedule.
It is calculated from the last service indicator reset according to the distance travelled and the time elapsed since the last service.
For BlueHDi Diesel versions only (depending on country of sale), the level of deterioration of the engine oil is also taken into account.



With BlueHDi Diesel versions the **Service** warning lamp may come on as soon as the ignition is switched on.

More than 1 800 miles (3 000 km) remain before the next service is due

When the ignition is switched on, no service information appears in the screen.

Between 600 miles (1 000 km) and 1 800 miles (3 000 km) remain before the next service is due

The spanner symbolising the service operations comes on tor a few seconds after the ignition is switched on. The distance recorder display line indicates the distance remaining before the next service is due.
Example: 1 700 miles (2 800 km) remain before the next service is due.
For 5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the screen indicates:

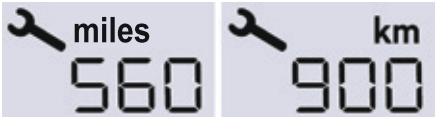


A few seconds after the ignition is switched on, **the spanner goes off**; the distance recorder resumes its normal operation. The screen then indicates the total and trip distances.



Less than 600 miles (1 000 km) remain before the next service is due

Example: 560 miles (900 km) remain before the next service is due.
For a few seconds after the ignition is switched on, the screen indicates:



A few seconds after the ignition is switched on, the distance recorder resumes its normal operation. **The spanner remains on** to indicate that a service must be carried out soon.



Illumination of the spanner is accompanied by a message in the instrument panel screen.

Service overdue

The **spanner flashes** for a few seconds after the ignition is switched on, to indicate that the service must be carried out as soon as possible.
Example: the service is overdue by 180 miles (300 km).
For a few seconds after the ignition is switched on, the screen indicates:



A few seconds after the ignition is switched on, the distance recorder resumes its normal operation. **The spanner remains on.**



The mileage remaining may be weighted by the time factor, depending on the driving conditions in which the vehicle is used.
The spanner may also come on if you have exceeded the period since the last service, as indicated in the manufacturer's service schedule.
With BlueHDi Diesel versions, the spanner can also come on in advance of the service interval, according to the level of deterioration of the engine oil, which depends on the driving conditions in which the vehicle is used.

Resetting the service indicator



After each service, the service indicator must be reset to zero.

If you have carried out the service on your vehicle yourself:

- switch off the ignition,
- press and hold the trip distance recorder zero reset button,
- switch on the ignition; the distance recorder display begins a countdown,
- when the display indicates **"=0"**, release the button; the spanner disappears.

If you have to disconnect the battery following this operation, lock the vehicle and wait at least five minutes for the reset to be registered.

Retrieving the service information

You can access the service information at any time.

- Press the trip distance recorder zero reset button.
  The service information is displayed for a few seconds, then disappears.

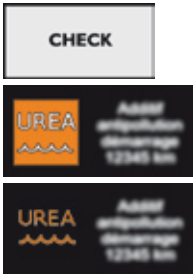
AdBlue® additive range indicators

Once the AdBlue® tank is on reserve or following the detection of a fault with the SCR emissions control system, when the ignition is switched on, an indicator displays an estimate of the distance that can be covered, the range, before engine starting is prevented.
In the event of simultaneous system fault and low AdBlue® level, the shortest range figure is the one displayed.

In the event of the risk of non-starting related to a lack of AdBlue®

! The engine start prevention system required by regulations is activated automatically once the AdBlue® tank is empty.

Range greater than 1 500 miles (2 400 km)
When the ignition is switched on, no information on range is displayed automatically in the instrument panel.



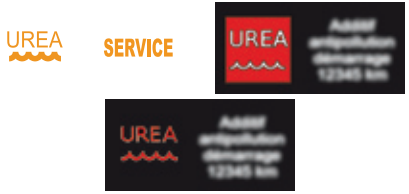
Pressing this button displays the driving range temporarily. Above 3 000 miles (5 000 km), the value is not specified.

Remaining range between 350 and 1500 miles (600 and 2 400 km)



When switching on the ignition, the UREA warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message (e.g.: "Top up emissions additive: Starting prevented in 900 miles") indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres.
When driving, the message is displayed every 200 miles (300 km) until the additive tank has been topped-up.
Go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the AdBlue® tank topped-up.
You can also top-up the tank yourself.
For more information on topping-up the AdBlue® additive, refer to the corresponding section.

Remaining range between 0 and 350 miles (0 and 600 km)



When switching on the ignition, the SERVICE warning lamp comes on and the UREA warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message (e.g. "Top up emissions additive: Starting prevented in 350 miles") indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres.
When driving, the message is displayed every 30 seconds until the additive tank has been topped-up.
Go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the AdBlue® tank topped-up.
You can also top-up the tank yourself.
Otherwise you will not be able to restart your engine.

For more information on topping-up the AdBlue® additive, refer to the corresponding section.

Breakdown related to a lack of AdBlue® additive



When switching on the ignition, the SERVICE warning lamp comes on and the UREA warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of the message "Top up emissions additive: Starting prevented".
The AdBlue® tank is empty: the system required by regulations prevents engine starting.

! To be able to start the engine, we recommend that you call on a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop for the top-up required.
If you carry out the top-up yourself, it is essential to add at least 3.8 litres of AdBlue® to the tank.

In the event of a fault with the SCR emissions control system

A system that prevents engine starting is activated automatically from 650 miles (1 100 km) after confirmation of a fault with the SCR emissions control system. Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

In the event of the detection of a fault



The UREA, SERVICE and diagnostic warning lamps comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of the message "Emissions fault".
The alert is triggered when driving when the fault is detected for the first time, then when switching on the ignition for subsequent journeys, while the fault persists.

If it is a temporary fault, the alert disappears during the next journey, after self-diagnosis of the SCR system.

During an authorised driving phase (between 650 miles and 0 miles) (1 100 km and 0 km)



If a fault with the SCR system is confirmed (after 30 miles (50 km) covered with the permanent display of the message signalling a fault), the SERVICE and engine diagnostic warning lamps come on and the UREA warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message (e.g.: "Emissions fault: Starting prevented in 150 miles") indicating the remaining range express in miles or kilometres.
While driving, the message is displayed every 30 seconds while the fault with the SCR system persists.
The alert is repeated when switching on the ignition.
You should go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible. Otherwise, you will not be able to restart your engine.

Starting prevented



Every time the ignition is switched on, the SERVICE and engine diagnostic warning lamps come on and the UREA warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of the message "Emissions fault: Starting prevented".

! You have exceeded the authorised driving limit: the starting prevention system inhibits engine starting.

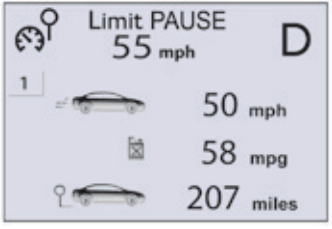
To be able to start the engine, you must call on a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

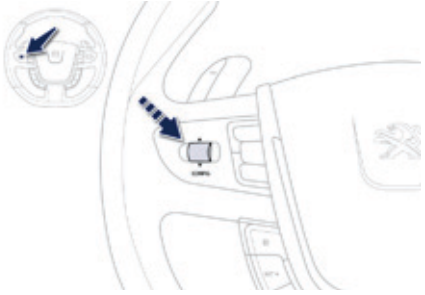
Trip computer

Instrument panel

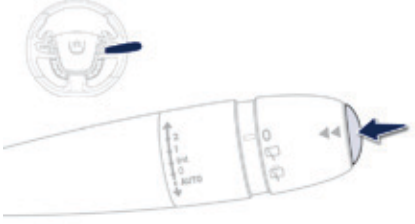
System which provides current information concerning the trip (range, fuel consumption…).

Display of information in the instrument panel





☞ Press the **steering mounted control** to display the various trip computer tabs in succession.



☞ Or on the end of the wiper stalk.

- The current information tab with:
  - the range,
  - the current fuel consumption,
  - the Stop & Start time counter.

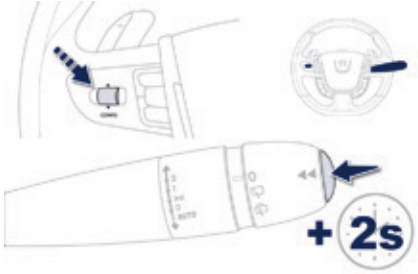
1

- The trip **"1"** tab with:
  - the average speed, for the first trip,
  - the average fuel consumption,
  - the distance travelled.

2

- The trip **"2"** tab with:
  - the average speed, for the second trip,
  - the average fuel consumption,
  - the distance travelled.

Trip reset



☞ When the trip required is displayed, press the control for more than two seconds or make a long press on the left hand thumb wheel of the steering mounted controls.

Trips **"1"** and **"2"** are independent but their use is identical.

For example, trip **"1"** can be used for daily figures, and trip **"2"** for monthly figures.

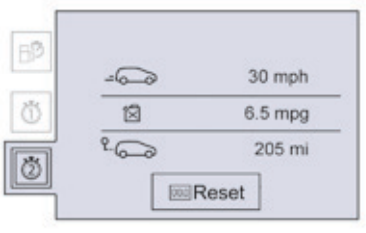
Trip computer

Touch screen

System which provides current information concerning the trip (range, fuel consumption…).

The information is accessible in the "**Driving**" menu.

Display of information in the touch screen



Permanent display:

☞ Select the "**Driving**" menu.

The trip computer information is displayed in the primary page of the menu.

☞ Press one of the buttons to display the desired tab.

Temporary display in a new window:

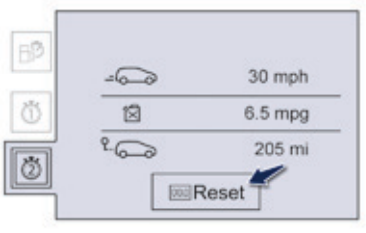
☞ Press the end of the wiper control stalk for access to the information and display the different tabs.

The current instantaneous fuel consumption tab with:
- the range,
- the current fuel consumption,
- the Stop & Start time counter.

The trip **"1"** tab with:
- the distance travelled.
- the average fuel consumption,
- the average speed,
  for the first trip.

The trip **"2"** tab with:
- the distance travelled.
- the average fuel consumption,
- the average speed,
  for the second trip.

Trip reset



☞ When the desired trip is displayed, press the reset button or on the end of the wiper control stalk.

Trips **"1"** and **"2"** are independent but their use is identical.

For example, trip **"1"** can be used for daily figures, and trip **"2"** for monthly figures.

Trip computer, a few definitions…



Range

(miles or km)
This indicates the distance which can still be travelled with the fuel remaining in the tank in relation to the average fuel consumption over the last few miles (kilometres) travelled.

i This value may vary following a change in the style of driving or the relief, resulting in a significant change in the current fuel consumption.

When the range falls below 20 miles (30 km), dashes are displayed. After filling with at least 5 litres of fuel, the range is recalculated and is displayed when it exceeds 60 miles (100 km).

i If dashes are displayed continuously while driving in place of the digits, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.



Current fuel consumption

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)
This is the average fuel consumption during the last few seconds.

i This function is only displayed from 20 mph (30 km/h).



Average fuel consumption

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)
This is the average fuel consumption since the last trip computer zero reset.



Average speed

(mph or km/h)
This is the average speed calculated since the last trip computer zero reset (ignition on).



Stop & Start time counter

(minutes / seconds or hours / minutes)
If your vehicle is fitted with Stop & Start, a time counter calculates the time spent in STOP mode during a journey. It resets to zero every time the ignition is switched on with the key.

Touch screen

It gives access to:
- menus for adjusting settings for vehicle functions and systems,
- audio and display configuration menus,
- audio system and telephone controls and the display of associated information.

And, depending on equipment, it allows:
- the display of alert messages and the visual parking sensors information,
- access to the controls for the navigation system and Internet services, and the display of associated information.

! **For reasons of safety, the driver should only carry out operations that require close attention, with the vehicle stationary.**
Some functions are not accessible when driving.

General operation

Recommendations

It is necessary to press firmly, particularly for "flick" gestures (scrolling through lists, moving the map...).
A light wipe is not enough.
The screen does not recognise pressing with more than one finger.
This technology allows use at all temperatures and when wearing gloves.
Do not use pointed objects on the touch screen.
Do not touch the touch screen with wet hands.
Uses a soft clean cloth to clean the touch screen.

State of indicator lamps

Some buttons contain an indicator lamp that gives the state of the corresponding function.
Green indicator: you have switched on the corresponding function.
Orange indicator: you have switched off the corresponding function.

Principles

Press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.
Each menu is displayed over one or two pages (primary page and secondary page).

Use this button to go to the secondary page.

Use this button to return to the primary page.

After a few moments with no action on the secondary page, the primary page is displayed automatically.

Use this button for access to additional information and to the settings for certain functions.

Use this button to confirm.

Use this button to quit.

Menus

Press this button for access to the main menu or press one of the buttons on the control panel for direct access to a particular menu.



Navigation.
Depending on trim level, navigation can be not available, an option or standard.
See the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.
NAV

Radio Media.
See the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.
MEDIA

Settings.
Allows configuration of the display and the system.
SETUP

Internet.
These services are available as standard or as an option.
See the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.
WEB

Telephone.
See the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.
TEL

Driving.
Gives access to the trip computer and, depending on version, allows settings to be adjusted for certain functions.
See the corresponding section.
DRIVE



1. Volume / mute.
See the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.

"Settings" menu

The functions available through this menu are detailed in the table below.

Button	Corresponding function	Comments
	**Audio settings**	Adjustment of volume, balance...
	**Color schemes**	Choice of color scheme.
	**Turn off screen**	Turn off the display in the the touch screen (black screen). Pressing the black screen or one of the menu buttons restores the display.
	**System Settings**	Choice of units: - temperature (°Celsius or °Fahrenheit) - distance and fuel consumption (l/100 km, mpg or km/l).
	**Time/Date**	Setting the date and time.
	**Languages**	Choice of language used: French, English, Italian, Spanish, German, Dutch, Portuguese, Polish, Turkish, Russian.
	**Screen settings**	Adjustment of the display settings (scrolling of text, animations...)
	**Calculator**	Display the calculator.
	**Calendar**	Display the calendar.

"Driving" menu

The systems with settings that can be adjusted (depending on version) are detailed in the table below.

Button	Corresponding function	Comments
	**Parking sensors**	Deactivation of the function.
	**Blind spot monitoring system**	Activation of the function.

Setting the date and time

Audio system without touch screen





Press **MENU**.



Using the arrows, select "**Personalisation-configuration**" and confirm.



Using the arrows, select "**Display configuration**" and confirm.

Using the arrows, select "**Date and time adjustment**" and confirm.



Select the setting to be modified. Confirm by pressing **OK**, then make the change and confirm again to save the modification.

Adjust the settings one by one, confirming by pressing the **OK** button. Next select the "**OK**" tab on the screen then confirm to exit from the "**Date and time adjustment**" menu.

Audio system with touch screen



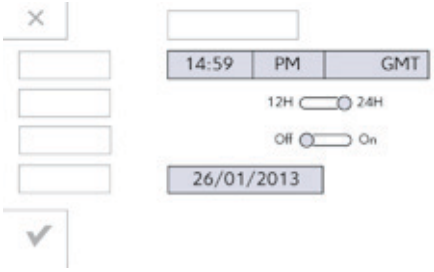


SETUP

☞ Select the "**Settings**" menu.



☞ In the secondary page, press on "**Time/Date**".



☞ Select "**Adjust time**" or "**Adjust date**" and modify the settings using the numeric keypad, then confirm.

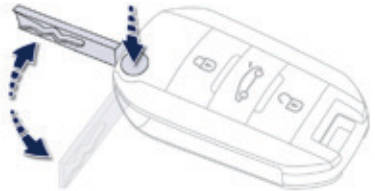


✔

☞ Press "**Confirm**" to quit.

Remote control key

System for the central locking or unlocking of the vehicle using the door lock or from a distance.
It is also used to open and close the fuel filler cap, locate and start the vehicle, as well as providing protection against theft.

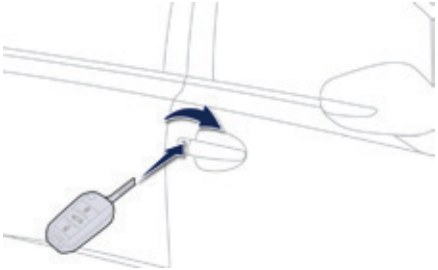


Unfolding / Folding the key

☞ Press this button to unfold or fold the key.

! If you do not press the button, you risk damaging the remote control.

Total unlocking



Using the key

☞ Turn the key toward the front of the vehicle to unlock the vehicle.

Using the remote control



☞ Press the open padlock to unlock the vehicle.

i 

Holding this button down opens the windows automatically.

i Unlocking is confirmed by rapid flashing of the direction indicators for approximately two seconds.
According to version, the door mirrors unfold at the same time.

Selective unlocking



This is set via the instrument panel screen configuration menu.
Total unlocking is activated by default.

Using the remote control



☞ To unlock the driver's door only press the open padlock once.

☞ To unlock the other doors and the boot, press the open padlock again.

i Each unlocking action is confirmed by rapid flashing of the direction indicators for about two seconds.
According to version, the door mirrors unfold at the same time as the first unlocking action.

Unlocking the boot

Using the remote control



☞ Press this button to unlock the vehicle and open the boot.

Boot only function activated



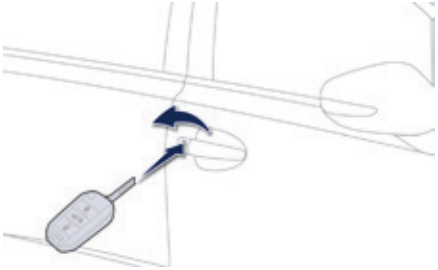
This is set in the instrument panel configuration menu.

This function is deactivated by default.

☞ The use of the remote control then unlocks and/or opens only the boot.

! Don't forget to lock your boot afterwards.

Normal locking



Using the key

☞ Turn the key toward the rear of the vehicle to lock the vehicle totally.

Using the remote control



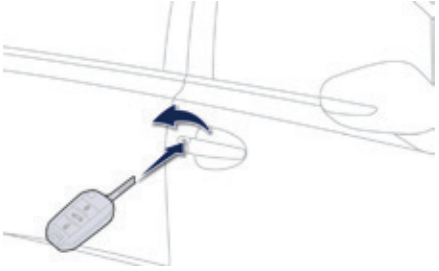
☞ Press the closed padlock to lock the vehicle totally.

Deadlocking

Maintaining the locking action (remote control or manual key) automatically closes the windows and sunroof.
Contact a PEUGEOT for deactivation of this function.

Locking is confirmed by fixed illumination of the direction indicators for about two seconds.
According to version, the door mirrors fold at the same time.

Deadlocking renders the exterior and interior door controls inoperative.
It also deactivates the manual central locking control button.
You should therefore never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.



Using the key

- Turn the key rearward in the driver's door lock to totally lock the vehicle.
- Turn the key rearward again within five seconds to deadlock the vehicle.

Using the remote control

- Press the closed padlock to lock the vehicle completely or press the closed padlock for more than two seconds to close the windows automatically in addition to locking.
- Press the closed padlock again within five seconds to deadlock the vehicle.

Deadlocking is confirmed by the fixed illumination of the direction indicators for approximately two seconds.

Locating your vehicle



☞ Press the closed padlock to locate your locked vehicle in a car park.

This is indicated by lighting of the courtesy lamps and flashing of the direction indicators for a few seconds.

Anti-theft protection

Electronic engine immobiliser

The key contains an electronic chip which has a special code. When the ignition is switched on, this code must be recognised in order for starting to be possible.
This electronic engine immobiliser locks the engine management system a few moments after the ignition is switched off and prevents starting of the engine by anyone who does not have the key.

SERVICE In the event of a fault, you are informed by illumination of this warning lamp, an audible signal and a message in the screen.
In this case, your vehicle will not start; contact a PEUGEOT dealer as soon as possible.

Keep safely, away from your vehicle, the label attached to the keys given to you on acquisition of the vehicle.

Back-up procedure - Remote controls

Locking - unlocking the driver's door

Insert the key in the door lock to lock or unlock the door.



Locking - unlocking the passenger doors

Locking

- ☞ On the rear doors, check that the child lock is not on.
- ☞ Remove the black cap located on the edge of the door, using the key.
- ☞ Insert the key into the aperture without forcing, then without turning, move the latch sideways towards the inside of the door.
- ☞ Remove the key and refit the cap.

Unlocking

Pull the interior door handles.

If your vehicle has an alarm, it will not be activated and deactivated on locking and unlocking the vehicle.
Opening a door will trigger the alarm; it will stop when the ignition is switched on.

Remote control fault

Following disconnection of the vehicle battery, replacement of the remote control battery or in the event of a fault with the remote control, you can no longer unlock, lock or locate your vehicle.

- First of all, use the key in the door lock to unlock or lock your vehicle.
- Then, reinitialise the remote control.

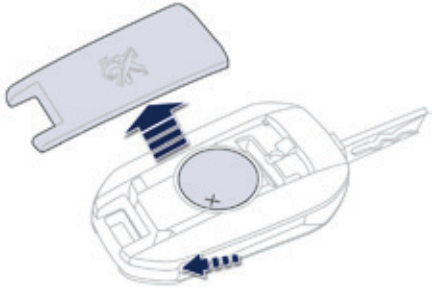
If the problem persists, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

Reinitialisation

- Switch the ignition on.
- Immediately press one of the remote control buttons for a few seconds.
- Switch the ignition off.

The remote control is fully operational again.

Changing the battery of the key

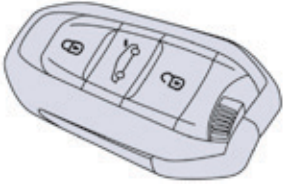


Battery ref.: CR2032 / 3 volts.
This replacement battery is available from a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
A message appears in the instrument panel screen when replacement of the battery is needed.

- Unclip the cover using a small screwdriver at the cutout.
- Lift off the cover.
- Remove the flat battery from its location.
- Fit the new battery into its location observing the original direction of fitment.
- Clip the cover onto the casing.

Do not throw the remote control batteries away, they contain metals which are harmful to the environment. Take them to an approved collection point.

"Keyless Entry and Starting" electronic key



System that allows the opening, closing and starting of the vehicle while keeping the electronic key on your person. It can also be used as a remote control.

For reasons of safety and theft protection, do not leave your electronic key in the vehicle, even when you are close to it. It is recommended that you keep it on your person.

Total unlocking

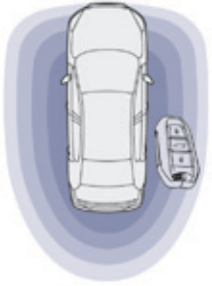
Using the remote control



☞ Press the open padlock to unlock the vehicle.



Holding this button down opens all of the windows remotely.





With the key on your person

☞ With the electronic key on your person and in the recognition zone, pass your hand behind the door handle to unlock the vehicle, then pull on the handle to open the door.

Your passengers can also open the doors, with the exception of the boot, as soon as the electronic key is in the recognition zone.

Unlocking is confirmed by rapid flashing of the direction indicators for approximately two seconds.
According to version, the door mirrors unfold at the same time.

! Accumulations (water, dust, grime, salt...) on the inner surface if the door handle may affect detection.
If cleaning the inner surface of the door handle using a cloth does not restore detection, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
A sudden splash of water (stream of water, high pressure jet washer, …) may be identified by the system as the desire to open the vehicle.

Selective unlocking



This is set via the instrument panel screen configuration menu.
Total unlocking is activated by default.

Using the remote control



☞ To unlock the driver's door only press the open padlock once.

☞ To unlock the other doors and the boot, press the open padlock again.

With the electronic key on your person

☞ To unlock only the driver's door with the electronic key on your person, pass your hand behind the driver's door handle then pull the handle to open the door.

☞ To unlock the vehicle totally, pass your hand behind one of the passenger door handles, on the side of the vehicle where the electronic key is located, then pull the door handle.

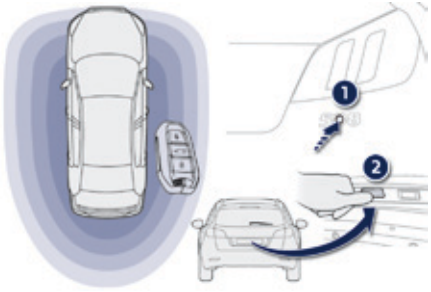
i Each unlocking is confirmed by rapid flashing of the direction indicators for about two seconds.
According to version, the door mirrors unfold at the same time as the first unlocking action.

Unlocking the boot

Using the remote control



☞ Press this button to unlock the vehicle and open the boot.



With the electronic key on your person

☞ With the electronic key in the recognition zone, press button **1** (Saloon) or press button **2** (SW and non-hybrid RXH) to unlock the vehicle and open the boot.

Boot only function activated



This is set in the instrument panel configuration menu.

This function is deactivated by default.

☞ Use of the remote control or the electronic key then unlocks and/or opens only the boot.

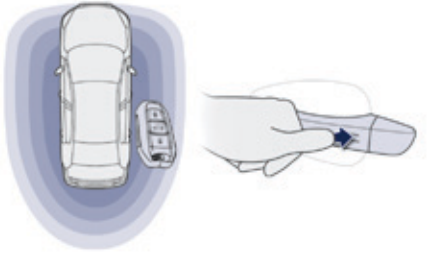
! Don’t forget to lock your boot afterwards.

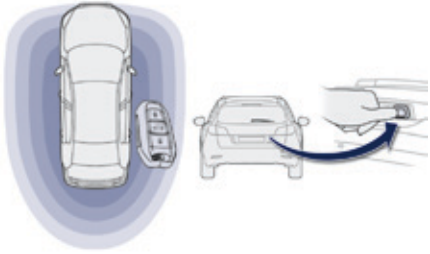
Normal locking

Using the remote control



☞ Press the closed padlock to lock the vehicle totally.





With the electronic key on your person

☞ With the electronic key in the recognition zone, press with a finger or thumb on the door handle (at the markings) to lock the vehicle.

☞ From the boot (SW and non-hybrid RXH only), with the electronic key in the recognition zone, press the right-hand tailgate button to lock the vehicle.



Maintaining the locking action (remote control or manual key) automatically closes the windows and sunroof.
Contact a PEUGEOT for deactivation of this function.

Locking is confirmed by fixed lighting of the direction indicators for about two seconds.
According to version, the door mirrors fold at the same time.

! If one of the doors or the boot is still open or if the key for Keyless Entry and Starting system has been left inside the vehicle or if the ignition is on, the central locking does not take place.
When the vehicle is locked, if it is unlocked inadvertently, it will lock itself again automatically after about thirty seconds unless a door is opened.
If the alarm was previously activated, it will not be reactivated automatically.
The folding and unfolding of the door mirrors by the remote control can be deactivated by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

i As a safety measure (children on board), never leave the vehicle without taking the key for the Keyless Entry and Starting system, even for a short period.
Guard against theft when the key for the Keyless Entry and Starting system is in the recognition zone with the vehicle unlocked.
In order to preserve the charge of the cell battery in the remote control, the "hands-free" functions go into extended stand-by after 21 days of non-use. To restore these functions, press one of the remote control buttons or start the engine with the electronic key in the reader.

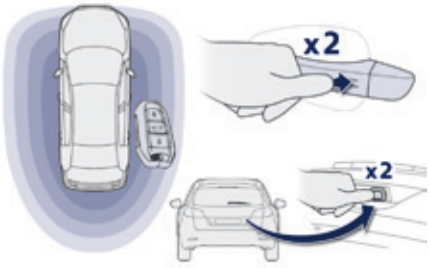
Deadlocking

Deadlocking renders the exterior and interior door controls inoperative.
It also deactivates the manual central locking button.
You should therefore never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.

Using the remote control



- Press the closed padlock to lock the vehicle totally or press the closed padlock for more than two seconds to close the windows automatically in addition to locking.
- Press the closed padlock again within five seconds to deadlock the vehicle.



With the electronic key on your person

At the doors:

- With the electronic key in the recognition zone, press with a finger or thumb on the door handle (at the markings) to lock the vehicle.
- Within five seconds, press the door handle again to deadlock the vehicle.

At the tailgate (SW and non-Hybrid RXH only):

- With the electronic key in the recognition zone, press the button to lock the vehicle.
- Within five seconds, press the button again to deadlock the vehicle.

Deadlocking is confirmed by the fixed illumination of the direction indicators for approximately two seconds.

Locating your vehicle



☞ Press the closed padlock to locate your locked vehicle in a car park.

This is indicated by lighting of the courtesy lamps and flashing of the direction indicators for a few seconds.

Anti-theft protection

Electronic engine immobiliser

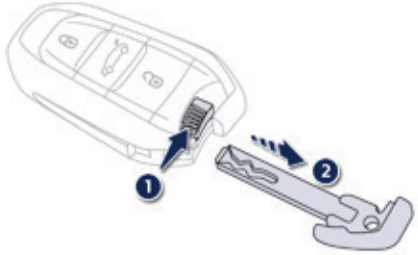
The key contains an electronic chip which has a special code. When the ignition is switched on, this code must be recognised in order for starting to be possible.
This electronic engine immobiliser locks the engine management system a few moments after the ignition is switched off and prevents starting of the engine by anyone who does not have the key.

SERVICE In the event of a fault, you are informed by illumination of this warning lamp, an audible signal and a message in the screen.
In this case, your vehicle will not start; contact a PEUGEOT dealer as soon as possible.

Keep safely, away from your vehicle, the label attached to the keys given to you on acquisition of the vehicle.

Back-up procedure - Electronic keys

Locking - unlocking using the integral key



The integral key is used to lock and unlock the vehicle when the electronic key cannot operate:

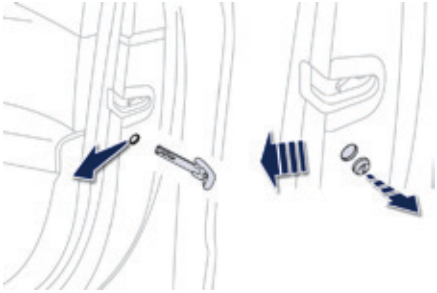
- cell battery flat, vehicle battery discharged or disconnected, ...
- vehicle located in an area with strong electromagnetic emissions.

☞ Pull on button **1**, to extract the integral key **2**.

☞ Unlock or lock the vehicle using the key.

Locking-unlocking the driver's door

Insert the key in the door lock to lock or unlock the door.



Locking-unlocking the passenger doors

Locking

☞ On the rear doors, check that the child lock is not on.

☞ Remove the black cap located on the edge of the door, using the integral key.

☞ Insert the integral key into the aperture without forcing, then without turning, move the latch sideways towards the inside of the door.

☞ Remove the integral key and refit the cap.

Unlocking

Pull the interior door handles

If your vehicle has an alarm, it will not be activated and deactivated on locking and unlocking the vehicle.
Opening a door will trigger the alarm; it will stop when the ignition is switched on.

Electronic key fault

Following disconnection of the vehicle battery, replacement of the remote control battery or in the event of a fault with the remote control, you can no longer unlock, lock or locate your vehicle.

- ☞ First of all, use the key in the door lock to unlock or lock your vehicle.
- ☞ Then, reinitialise the remote control.

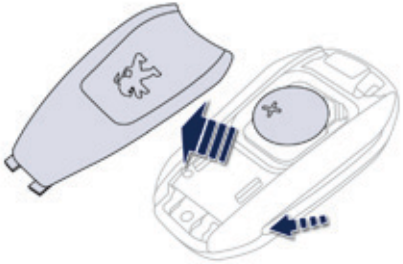
If the problem persists, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

Reinitialisation

- ☞ Switch the ignition off.
- ☞ Immediately press one of the remote control buttons for a few seconds.
- ☞ Switch the ignition on.

The electronic key is fully operational again.

Changing the battery of the electronic key



Battery ref.: CR2032 / 3 volts.
This replacement battery is available from a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
A message is displayed in the instrument panel screen when replacement of the battery is needed.

- ☞ Unclip the cover using a pointed object at the key ring.
- ☞ Slide the flat battery out of its location.
- ☞ Slide the new battery into its location observing the original direction of fitment.
- ☞ Clip the cover in place starting at the front.
- ☞ Reinitialise the electronic key.

Do not throw the remote control batteries away, they contain metals which are harmful to the environment. Take them to an approved collection point.

Locking/ unlocking from the inside



☞ Press the button.
This allows the doors and the boot to be locked or unlocked.

After unlocking, if no door is opened within 30 seconds, the doors lock again automatically.

Automatic central locking of the doors

The doors can lock automatically while driving (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)).
To activate or deactivate this function, press and hold the button until a message appears in the screen.

Driving with the doors locked may make access to the passenger compartment by the emergency services more difficult in an emergency.

If the vehicle is deadlocked or locked with the remote control or the door handles, the button is not active. In this case, use the key or the remote control to unlock.

When carrying large objects with the boot open, you can press this button to lock just the doors.
When locking from inside, the door mirrors do not fold.

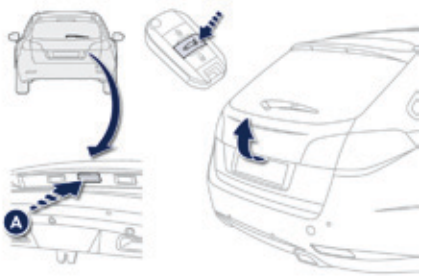
Boot

Opening



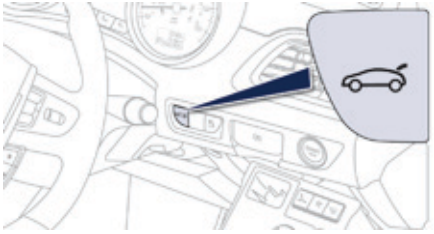
Saloon

☞ After unlocking the vehicle totally or after pressing the boot opening button using the remote control or the key, press this button.



SW and non-hybrid RXH

☞ After unlocking the vehicle totally or after pressing the boot opening button using the remote control or the key, press the lever **A** and raise the tailgate.



Opening from inside

Hold this button down until the boot is heard to unlock.

Closing

☞ Lower the tailgate using the interior grab handle.

If the tailgate is not closed correctly:

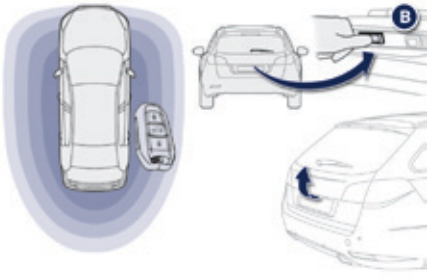


- **when the engine is running**, this warning lamp and a message in the instrument panel screen appear for a few seconds,
- **when the vehicle is moving** (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)), this warning lamp and a message, accompanied by an audible signal, appear in the instrument panel screen for a few seconds.

Motorised tailgate (SW and non-hybrid RHX)

Opening using the electronic key





Vehicle locked / deadlocked



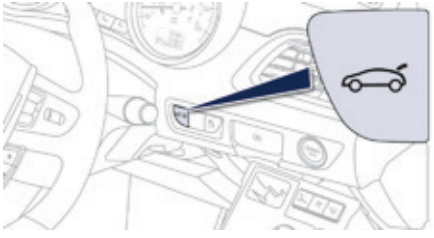
☞ If you are not in the recognition zone, press and hold button **A** on the electronic key. The action first unlocks the vehicle and then triggers opening of the tailgate.

☞ With the electronic key on your person, in the recognition zone, press the tailgate button **B**. The action first unlocks the vehicle and then triggers opening of the tailgate.

Vehicle unlocked

☞ Press and hold button **A** on the electronic key or press the tailgate button **B** to trigger its opening.

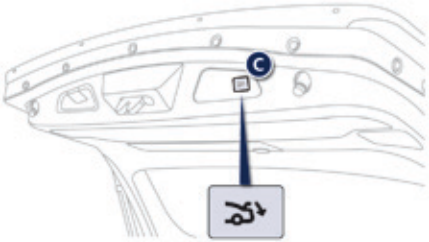
Opening from inside



☞ Press this button to unlock and trigger opening of the tailgate.

! Check that there are no obstacles before opening the tailgate remotely.

Motorised closing



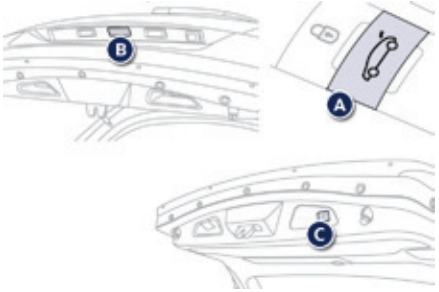


☞ Press this button **C** to close the tailgate electrically.

Do not hinder closing of the tailgate: any obstacle to closing causes the tailgate to stop and rise a few centimetres automatically.
To close the tailgate manually: move the tailgate slightly up then down to disengage it from its drive then lower it until closed.

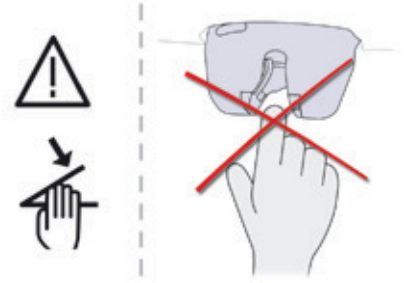
! To avoid the risk of injury, ensure that no one is close to the rear of the vehicle when opening or closing the tailgate.

Stopping the opening or closing



While electric opening or closing of the tailgate is in progress, you can stop its movement at any time:

☞ press the interior button or button **A** on the remote control or **B** or **C** tailgate buttons.



! Never put a finger into the tailgate locking system: risk of serious injury!

Adjusting the opening height

The maximum opening height of the tailgate can be set and memorised (restricted overhead clearance, ...).
This memorisation is done in two steps, by successive presses on button **C**:

- during opening, a first press stops the tailgate at the desired height,
- a second maintained press memorises the position of the tailgate; an audible signal confirms the memorisation.
  To delete this memorisation, make a new maintained press until the audible signal is heard.

"Boot open" warning

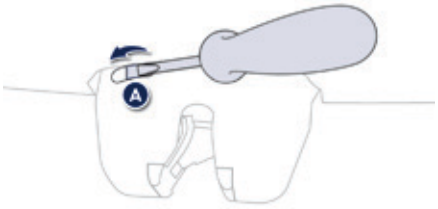
With the engine running or when the vehicle is moving, if the tailgate is not properly closed, a message accompanied by an audible signal (from 6 mph (10 km/h)) is displayed in the instrument panel screen.

! The tailgate is not designed to support a bicycle carrier.
If fitting a bicycle carrier to a towbar, the automatic operation must be deactivated.

Precautions in use
If snow has accumulated on the tailgate, remove the snow before any automatic operation of the tailgate.
Ice can prevent opening of the tailgate: wait until the ice has melted following heating of the passenger compartment.
When washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash, don't forget to lock your vehicle to prevent any risk of unwanted opening.
Repeated opening and closing of the tailgate can overheat the electric motor; neither closing nor opening is then possible.
Allow the motor to cool down for ten minutes before operating the tailgate again.

Back-up release (Saloon, SW and non-hybrid RHX)

System for mechanically unlocking the boot in the event of a battery or central locking fault.



Unlocking

☞ Fold the rear seats to gain access to the lock from inside the boot.
☞ Insert a small screwdriver into hole **A** of the lock, then move the lever to the left to unlock the boot.

Locking again after closing

Once closed again, the boot will remain locked if the problem persists.

Lost keys, remote control, electronic key

Visit a PEUGEOT dealer with the vehicle's registration certificate, your personal identification documents and if possible, the label bearing the key code.
The PEUGEOT dealer will be able to retrieve the key code and the transponder code required to order a new key.

Remote control

The high frequency remote control is a sensitive system; do not operate it while it is in your pocket as there is a possibility that it may unlock the vehicle, without you being aware of it.
Do not repeatedly press the buttons of your remote control out of range and out of sight of your vehicle. You run the risk of stopping it from working and the remote control would have to be reinitialised.
The remote control does not operate when the key is in the ignition, even when the ignition is switched off.

Locking the vehicle

Driving with the doors locked may make access to the passenger compartment by the emergency services more difficult in an emergency.
As a safety precaution (with children on board), remove the key from the ignition or take the electronic key when you leave the vehicle, even for a short time.

Electrical interference

The Keyless Entry and Starting electronic key may not operate if close to certain electronic devices: telephone, laptop computer, strong magnetic fields, ...

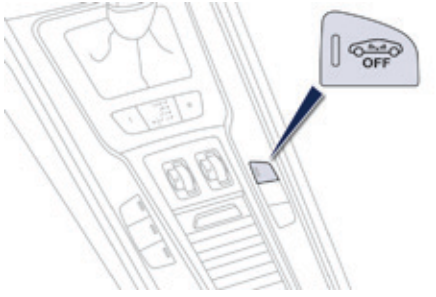
Anti-theft protection

Do not make any modifications to the electronic engine immobiliser system; this could cause malfunctions.
Don't forget to turn the steering to engage the steering lock.

When purchasing a second-hand vehicle

Have the key codes memorised by a PEUGEOT dealer, to ensure that the keys in your possession are the only ones which can start the vehicle.

Alarm



System which protects and provides a deterrent against theft and break-ins. It provides the following types of monitoring:

- Exterior perimeter

The system checks for opening of the vehicle.
The alarm is triggered if anyone tries to open a door, the boot or the bonnet...

- Interior volumetric

The system checks for any variation in the volume in the passenger compartment.
The alarm is triggered if anyone breaks a window, enters the passenger compartment or moves inside the vehicle.

- Tilt

The system checks for any change in the attitude of the vehicle.
The alarm is triggered if the vehicle is lifted, moved or knocked.

! Self-protection function

The system checks for the putting out of service of its components.
The alarm is triggered if the battery, the central control unit or the siren wiring is put out of service or damaged.

For all work on the alarm system, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Locking the vehicle with full alarm system

Activation

☞ Switch off the ignition and get out of the vehicle.



☞ Press the locking button on the remote control or lock the vehicle using the Keyless Entry and Starting system.

The monitoring system is active: the indicator lamp on the button flashes once per second.
After the locking button on the remote control is pressed or the vehicle locked using the Keyless Entry and Starting system, the exterior perimeter monitoring is activated after a delay of 5 seconds, the interior volumetric monitoring after 45 seconds and anti-tilt monitoring after 90 seconds.
If an opening (door, boot...) is not closed fully, the vehicle is not locked but the exterior perimeter monitoring will be activated after a delay of 45 seconds.

Deactivation of the volumetric monitoring



☞ Press the unlocking button on the remote control or unlock the vehicle using the Keyless Entry and Starting system.



The volumetric protection system is deactivated: the indicator lamp in the button goes off.

Locking the vehicle with exterior perimeter monitoring only

Deactivate the interior volumetric and anti-lift monitoring to avoid unwanted triggering of the alarm in certain cases such as:

- leaving a window partially open,
- washing your vehicle,
- changing a wheel,
- having your vehicle towed,
- transportation by sea.

Deactivation of the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring



☞ Switch of the ignition and within ten seconds, press this button until the indicator lamp is on continuously.

☞ Get out of the vehicle.



☞ Press the locking button on the remote control immediately or lock the vehicle using the Keyless Entry and Starting system.

The exterior perimeter monitoring alone is activated: the indicator lamp in the button flashes once per second.

To be effective, this deactivation must be carried out each time the ignition is switched off.

Reactivation of the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring



☞ Press the unlocking button on the remote control or unlock the vehicle using the Keyless Entry and Starting system to deactivate the exterior perimeter monitoring.



☞ Press the locking button on the remote control or lock the vehicle using the Keyless Entry and Starting system to activate all the monitoring functions.



The indicator lamp in the button again flashes once per second.

Triggering of the alarm

This is indicated by sounding of the siren and flashing of the direction indicators for thirty seconds.
The monitoring functions remain active until the alarm has been triggered eleven times in succession.



When the vehicle is unlocked using the remote control or unlocked using the Keyless Entry and Starting system, rapid flashing of the indicator lamp in the button informs you that the alarm was triggered during your absence. When the ignition is switched on, this flashing stops immediately.

Failure of the remote control

To deactivate the monitoring functions:

- ☞ Unlock the vehicle using the key in the driver's door lock.
- ☞ Open the door; the alarm is triggered.
- ☞ Switch on the ignition; the alarm stops. The indicator lamp in the button switches off.

Locking the vehicle without activating the alarm

- ☞ Lock or deadlock the vehicle using the key in the driver's door lock.

Operating fault

When the ignition is switched on, fixed illumination of the indicator lamp in the button indicates a fault in the system.
Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

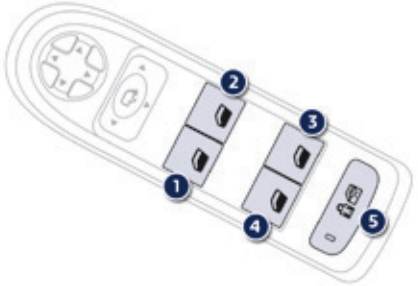
Automatic activation*

2 minutes after the last door or the boot is closed, the system is activated automatically.

- ☞ To avoid triggering the alarm on entering the vehicle, first press the unlocking button on the remote control or unlock the vehicle using the Keyless Entry and Starting system.

* According to country.

Electric windows



1. **Left hand front electric window switch.**
2. **Right hand front electric window switch.**
3. **Right hand rear electric window switch.**
4. **Left hand rear electric window switch.**
5. **Deactivating the rear electric window switches, locking the rear doors (child lock).**

Manual operation
To open or close the window, press or pull the switch gently. The window stops as soon as the switch is released.

Automatic operation (depending on version)
To open or close the window, press or pull switch fully: the window opens or closes completely when the switch is released. Pressing the switch again stops the movement of the window.
The electric window switches remain operational for approximately one minute after the key has been removed from the ignition. Once this time has elapsed, the electric windows will not operate. To reactivate them, switch the ignition on again.

Safety anti-pinch

When the window rises and meets an obstacle, it stops and immediately partially lowers again.
In the event of unwanted opening of the window on closing, press the switch until the window opens completely, then pull the switch immediately until the window closes. Continue to hold the switch for approximately one second after the window has closed.
The safety anti-pinch function is not active during this operation.

Deactivating the rear window controls

For the safety of your children, press switch **5** to prevent operation of the rear windows irrespective of their position.
The interior controls for the rear doors are also deactivated.
When the button is pressed down, the warning lamp is on, the switches are deactivated. When the button is raised, the switches are active, the warning lamp is off.

Reinitialising the electric windows

Following reconnection of the battery, the safety anti-pinch function must be reinitialised. The safety anti-pinch function is not active during these operations:

- lower the window completely, then raise it, it will rise in steps of a few centimetres each time the switch is pressed. Repeat the operation until the window closes completely,
- continue to press the switch for at least one second after reaching this position, window closed.

! Always remove the key from the ignition when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.
In the event of contact during operation of the windows, you must reverse the movement of the window. To do this, press the switch concerned.
When operating the passenger electric window switches, the driver must ensure that no one is preventing correct closing of the windows.
The driver must ensure that the passengers use the electric windows correctly.
Be aware of children when operating the windows.

Front seats

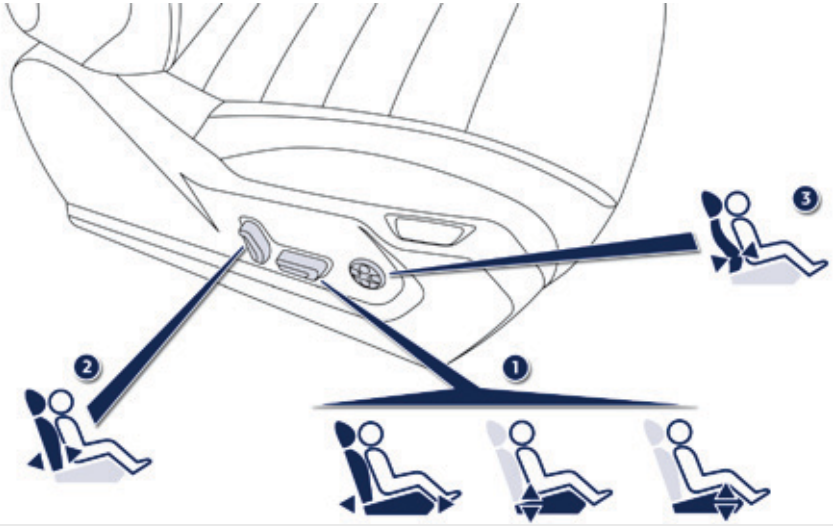
Manual adjustments

1. **Adjustments to the height and angle of the head restraint**
   To raise it, pull upwards.
   To lower it, hold the button in and press on the head restraint (pushing to go past the stiff point of the button).
2. **Adjustment of the backrest angle**
   Operate the control lever and adjust the position of the backrest to the front or to the rear.
3. **Adjustment of the seat height**
   Raise or lower the control lever the number of times required to obtain the desired position.
4. **Adjustment of the lumbar support**
   This system allows the height and depth of the lumbar support to be adjusted separately.
   ☞ Forwards or backwards to increase or decrease the lumbar support.
   ☞ Upwards or downwards to raise or lower the lumbar contact zone.
5. **Forwards-backwards adjustment of the seat position**
   Lift the control bar and slide the seat forwards or backwards.



! Before moving the seat backwards, ensure that there is nothing that might prevent the full travel of the seat, so as to avoid the risk of of jamming the seat caused by the presence of objects on the floor behind the seat or rear passengers. If the seat jams, stop the movement immediately.

Electric adjustments



Switch on the ignition or start the engine if the vehicle has gone into economy mode.

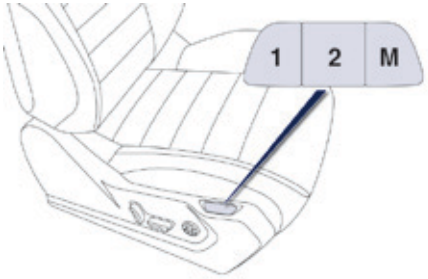
The electric functions of the driver's seat are active for about a minute after opening the front door. They are deactivated about a minute after switching off the ignition and in economy mode.
To reactivate them, switch on the ignition.

Before moving the seat backwards, ensure that there is nothing that might prevent the full travel of the seat, so as to avoid the risk of of jamming the seat caused by the presence of objects on the floor behind the seat or rear passengers. If the seat jams, stop the movement immediately.

1. **Adjustment of the seat cushion angle and height, and forwards-backwards adjustment**
   - ☞ Raise or lower the front of the control to adjust the seat cushion angle.
   - ☞ Raise or lower the rear of the control to raise or lower the seat.
   - ☞ Simultaneously raise or lower the front and rear of the control in order to raise or lower the entire seat.
2. **Adjustment of the backrest angle**
   Move the control forwards or backwards to adjust the backrest angle.
3. **Adjustment of lumbar support**
   This function allows you to independently adjust the height and level of lumbar support.

Move the control:
- ☞ Forwards or backwards to increase or reduce the lumbar support.
- ☞ Upwards or downwards to raise or lower the lumbar support zone.

Storing driving positions



System which stores the electrical settings of the driver's seat and door mirrors as well as the head-up display settings. It enables you to store up to two positions using the buttons on the side of the driver's seat.

Storing a position using buttons M / 1 / 2

- ☞ Switch on the ignition.
- ☞ Adjust your seat, the door mirrors and the head-up display.
- ☞ Press button **M**, then press button **1** or **2** within four seconds.
  An audible signal indicates that the position has been stored.

Storing a new position cancels the previous position.

Recalling a stored position

Ignition on or engine running

- ☞ Briefly press button **1** or **2** to recall the corresponding position.

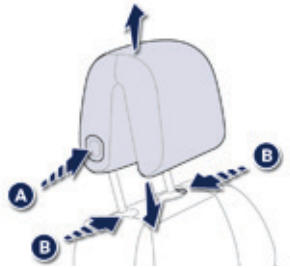
An audible signal indicates the end of the adjustment.
You can interrupt the current movement by pressing button **M**, **1** or **2** or by using one of the seat controls.
A stored position cannot be recalled while driving.
Recalling stored positions is deactivated 45 seconds after switching off the ignition.

Welcome function

The welcome function assists entry and leaving the vehicle.
After switching off the ignition and opening the driver's door, the seat moves back automatically and then stays in this position, ready for the next entry to the vehicle.
When switching on the ignition, the seat moves forward to the stored driving position.
When moving the seat, take care that no person or object hinders the automatic movement of the seat.



This function can be activated or deactivated via the vehicle configuration menu.

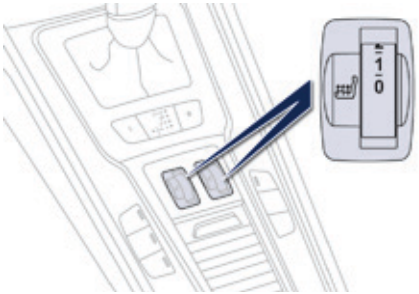


Head restraint height and angle adjustment

- ☞ To lower the head restraint, press the lug **A** and, going beyond the stiff point, guide the head restraint downwards, then release the button at the desired position.
- ☞ To raise the head restraint, guide it upwards to the desired position.
- ☞ To remove the head restraint, press the two lugs **B** and pull the head restraint upwards.
- ☞ To put the head restraint back in place, engage the head restraint stems in the openings keeping them in line with the seat back. Check that it has engaged by pulling it upwards.

! The head restraint is fitted with a locking mechanism which prevents it from lowering; this is a safety device in case of impact.
The adjustment is correct when the upper edge of the head restraint is level with the top of the head.
Never drive with the head restraints removed; they must be in place and adjusted correctly.

Heated seats control



With the engine running, the front seats can be heated separately.

- ☞ Use the adjustment wheel to switch on and select the level of heating required:

  0: Off.
  1: Low.
  2: Medium.
  3: High.

Massage function



This function provides the driver with a back massage. It only operates when the engine is running as well as in STOP mode of the Stop & Start system.

Activation

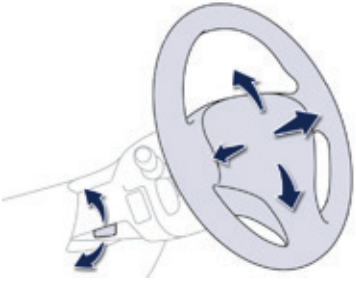
☞ Press this button.

The warning lamp comes on and the massage function is activated for a period of 1 hour. During this time, massage is performed in cycles of 6 minutes (4 minutes of massage followed by 2 minutes break). In total, the system will perform 10 cycles.
After one hour, the function is deactivated, the warning lamp goes off.

Deactivation

You can deactivate the massage function at any time by pressing this button.

Steering wheel adjustment

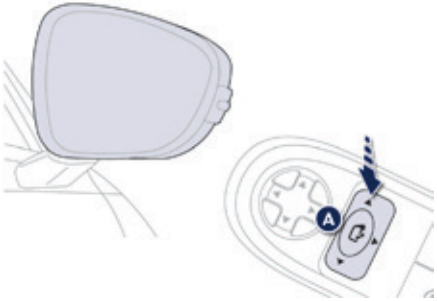


☞ **When stationary**, lower the control lever to release the steering wheel adjustment mechanism.
☞ Adjust the height and reach to suit your driving position.
☞ Pull the control lever to lock the steering wheel adjustment mechanism.

! As a safety precaution, these operations should only be carried out while the vehicle is stationary.

Mirrors

Door mirrors

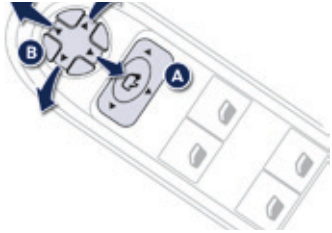


Each fitted with an adjustable mirror glass providing the lateral rearward vision necessary for overtaking or parking.
They can also be folded for parking in confined spaces.

Demisting - Defrosting

Demisting-defrosting of the door mirrors operates with the engine running, by switching on the heated rear screen.

For more information on demisting - defrosting the rear screen, refer to the corresponding section.



Adjustment

- ☞ Move control **A** to the right or to the left to select the corresponding mirror.
- ☞ Move control **B** in all four directions to adjust.
- ☞ Return control **A** to the central position.

! As a safety measure, the mirrors should be adjusted to reduce the "blind spots".

i The objects observed are, in reality, closer than they appear.
Take this into account in order to correctly judge the distance of vehicles approaching from behind.

Folding

- Automatic: lock the vehicle using the remote control or the key.
- Manual: with the ignition on, pull control **A** rearwards.

i If the mirrors are folded using control **A**, they will not unfold when the vehicle is unlocked. Pull again on control **A**.

Unfolding

- Automatic: unlock the vehicle using the remote control or the key.
- Manual: with the ignition on, pull control **A** rearwards.

i The folding and unfolding of the door mirrors using the remote control can be deactivated by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
Fold the mirrors when putting your vehicle through an automatic car wash.

i If necessary, it is possible to fold the mirrors manually.

Automatic tilting in reverse gear

System which provides a view of the ground during parking manoeuvres in reverse gear.



Programming

- ☞ With the engine running, engage reverse gear.
- ☞ Select and adjust the left-hand and right-hand mirrors in succession.

The adjustment is stored immediately.

Switching on

- ☞ With the engine running, engage reverse gear.
- ☞ Move control **A** to the right or to the left to select the corresponding mirror.

The glass of the mirror selected tilts downwards, in accordance with its programming.

Switching off

- ☞ Exit reverse gear and wait ten seconds.

or

- ☞ Return control **A** to the central position.

The mirror glass returns to its initial position.
The mirror glass also returns to its initial position:

- if the speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h),
- if the engine is switched off.

Rear view mirror

Equipped with an anti-dazzle system, which darkens the mirror glass and reduces the nuisance to the driver caused by the sun, headlamps from other vehicles...

Manual model



Adjustment

☞ Adjust the mirror so that the glass is directed correctly in the "day" position.

Day / night position

☞ Pull the lever to change to the "night" anti-dazzle position.

☞ Push the lever to change to the normal "day" position.

Automatic "electrochrome" model



This system automatically and progressively changes between the day and night uses by means of a sensor, which measures the light from the rear of the vehicle.

In order to ensure optimum visibility during your manoeuvres, the mirror lightens automatically when reverse gear is engaged.

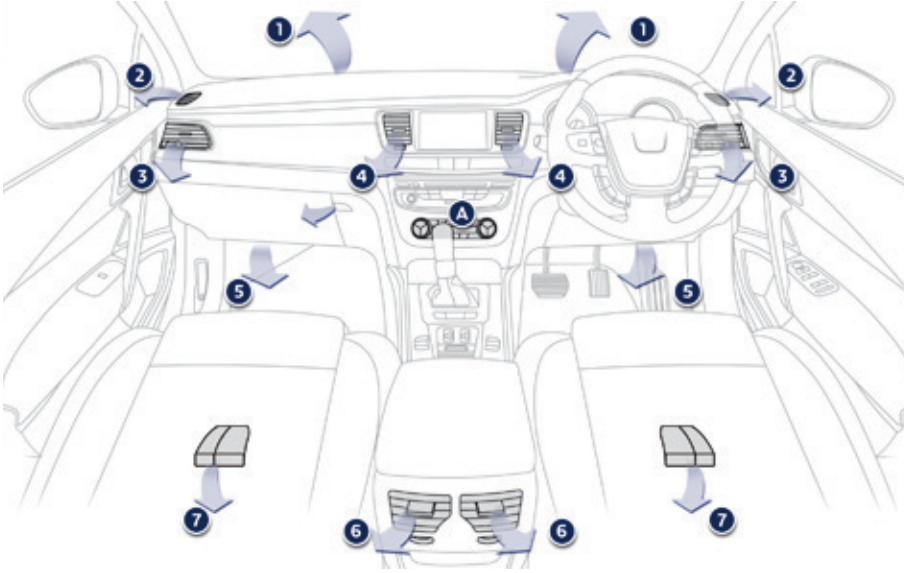
Heating and Ventilation

Air intake

The air circulating in the passenger compartment is filtered and originates either from the outside via the grille located at the base of the windscreen or from the inside in air recirculation mode.

Controls

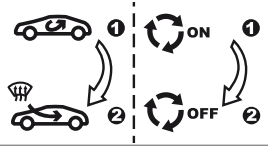
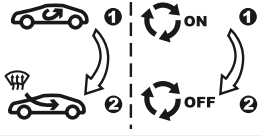
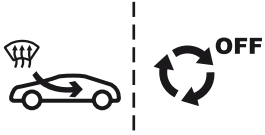
The incoming air follows various routes depending on the controls selected by the driver, the front passenger and rear passengers, according to the level of equipment.
The temperature control enables you to obtain the level of comfort required by mixing the air of the various circuits.
The air distribution control enables you to select the air vents used in the passenger compartment by the combined use of the associated buttons.
The air flow control enables you to increase or reduce the speed of the ventilation fan.
These controls are grouped together on control panel **A** on the centre console.



Air distribution

1. Windscreen demisting/defrosting vents.
2. Front side window demisting/defrosting vents.
3. Side adjustable air vents.
4. Central adjustable air vents.
5. Air outlets to the front footwells.
6. Adjustable air vents for the rear passengers.
7. Air outlets to the rear footwells.

Recommended interior settings

I require...	Heating or Manual air conditioning				
	Air distribution	Air flow	Air recirculation/Intake of exterior air	Temperature	Manual AC
HOT					—
COLD					ON
DEMISTING DEFROSTING					ON

Digital air conditioning: use fully automatic operation in preference, by pressing the **"AUTO"** button.

Recommendations for ventilation and air conditioning

In order for these systems to be fully effective, follow the operation and maintenance guidelines below:

- If the interior temperature remains very high after the vehicle has been parked in the sun for a considerable time, first ventilate the passenger compartment for a few minutes.
  Place the air flow control at a sufficient level to provide an adequate renewal of air in the passenger compartment.
- To obtain an even air distribution, take care not to obstruct the exterior air intake grilles located at the base of the windscreen, the nozzles, the vents and the air outlets, as well as the air extractor located in the boot.
- In normal conditions, use the intake of exterior air as prolonged use of the air recirculation may cause misting of the windows and side windows.
- Do not cover the sunshine sensor, located on the dashboard; this is used for regulation of the automatic air conditioning system.
- Operate the air conditioning system for 5 to 10 minutes, once or twice a month to keep it in good working order.
- Ensure that the passenger compartment filter is in good condition and have the filter elements replaced regularly (refer to the "Checks" section).
  We recommend the use of a combined passenger compartment filter. Thanks to its second special active filter, it contributes to the purification of the air breathed by the occupants and the cleanliness of the passenger compartment (reduction of allergic symptoms, bad odours and greasy deposits).
- The air conditioning uses power from the engine while operating. This results in an increase in the vehicle's fuel consumption.
  When towing at or near maximum capacity or on steep slopes in high ambient temperatures, switching off the air conditioning saves engine power and so improves towing capacity.
  Condensation created by the air conditioning results in a discharge of water under the vehicle when stationary, which is perfectly normal.
- To ensure correct operation of the air conditioning system, you are also advised to have it checked regularly.
- If the system does not produce cold air, do not use it and contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

The air conditioning system does not contain chlorine and does not present any danger to the ozone layer.

Manual air conditioning

The air conditioning can only operate with the engine running.



1. Temperature adjustment



☞ Turn the dial from left (cold) to right (hot) to adjust the temperature to your requirements.

2. Air flow adjustment



☞ Press the **"full fan"** button to increase the air flow.
According to the value selected, the associated line of LEDs fills progressively.



☞ Press the **"empty fan"** button to reduce the air flow.

3. Air distribution adjustment

☞ Press the corresponding button for:



Windscreen and side windows.



Central and side vents.



Footwells.



Depending on your requirements, you can combine two distribution buttons or select the three distribution modes simultaneously.

4. Air intake / Air recirculation

The intake of exterior air prevents the formation of mist on the windscreen and side windows.
The recirculation of interior air isolates the passenger compartment from exterior odours and smoke.
Return to exterior air intake as soon as possible to prevent deterioration of the the air quality and the formation of mist.



☞ Press this button to recirculate the interior air. The indicator lamp comes on to confirm this.



☞ Press the button again to permit the intake of exterior air. The indicator lamp goes off to confirm this.

5. Air conditioning On / Off



The air conditioning is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.

It enables you to:
- lower the temperature, in summer,
- increase the effectiveness of the demisting in winter, above 3°C.

Switching on

☞ Press the **"A/C"** button, its indicator lamp comes on.

The air conditioning does not operate when the air flow adjustment is set to off.

i To obtain cool air sooner, you can use recirculation of the interior air for a few moments. Then return to the intake of exterior air.

Switching off

☞ Press the **"A/C"** button again, its indicator lamp goes off.

Switching off may result in some discomfort (humidity, misting).

6. Automatic visibility programme

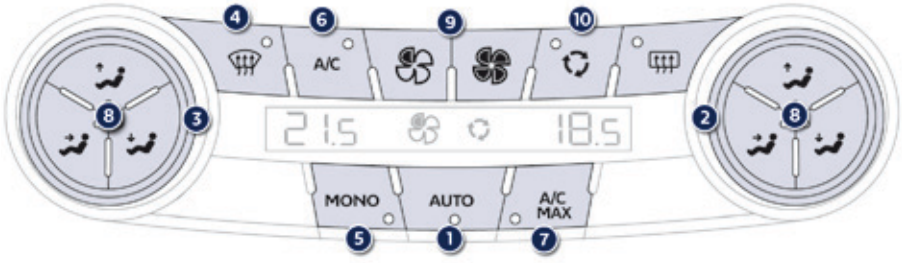


See "Front demisting - Defrosting".

Dual-zone digital air conditioning

The air conditioning can only operate with the engine running.

Automatic operation



1. Automatic comfort programme

AUTO

☞ Press this **"AUTO"** button.
The indicator lamp comes on.

We recommend that you use this mode. It automatically adjusts all settings to provide optimum operation for the comfort level chosen: passenger compartment temperature, air flow, air distribution and air recirculation.
This system is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.

ⓘ When the engine is cold, to prevent too great a distribution of cold air, the air flow will reach its optimum level gradually.
In cold weather, it favours the distribution of warm air to the windscreen, side windows and footwells only.

2 - 3. Driver-passenger side adjustment

The driver and front passenger can each adjust the temperature to their requirements.
The value indicated on the display corresponds to a level of comfort and not to a temperature in degrees Celsius or Fahrenheit.



☞ Turn control **2** or **3** to the left (blue) or to the right (red) respectively to decrease or increase this value.

A setting around the value 21 provides optimum comfort. However, depending on your requirements, a setting between 18 and 24 is normal.
It is recommended that the difference between left and right should not be greater 3.

On entering the vehicle, if the interior temperature is much colder or warmer than the comfort value, there is no need to change the value displayed in order to obtain the comfort required. The system corrects the difference in temperature automatically and as quickly as possible.

4. Automatic visibility programme



See "Front demisting-defrosting".

With Stop & Start, when demisting has been activated, the STOP mode is not available.

5. Mono-zone / Dual-zone



☞ Press this button to equalise the comfort value on the passenger's side with that on the driver's side (mono-zone). The indicator lamp in the button comes on.

6. Air conditioning On / Off



The air conditioning is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.

It allows you:
- in summer, to lower the temperature,
- in winter, above 3°C, to improve demisting performance.

Switching on

☞ Press the **"A/C"** button, the associated green indicator lamp comes on.

The air conditioning does not operate when the air flow control is set to off.

Switching off

☞ Press the **"A/C"** button again, the associated green indicator lamp goes off.

Switching off the air conditioning may result in some discomfort (humidity, misting).

7. Maximum air conditioning



If you want to temporarily refresh the air in the passenger compartment, press this button and **"LO"** is displayed.

To return to the previous settings, press the button again.

Manual operation

If you wish, you can change one of settings provided by the system. The other functions will still be controlled automatically.

☞ Pressing the **"AUTO"** button returns the system to completely automatic operation.

For maximum cooling or heating of the passenger compartment, it is possible to exceed the minimum value 14 or the maximum value 28.

☞ Turn control **2** or **3** to the left until **"LO"** is displayed or to the right until **"HI"** is displayed.

8. Air distribution adjustment

☞ Press the corresponding button for:



Windscreen and side windows.



Centre and side vents.



Footwells.



To suit your requirements, you can combine two distribution buttons or select the three distribution modes simultaneously.

9. Air flow adjustment



☞ Press this **"full fan"** button to increase the air flow.

The air flow symbol, the fan, fills progressively according to the value requested.



☞ Press **"empty fan"** button to reduce the air flow.

Switching the system off



☞ Press this **"empty fan"** air flow button until the fan symbol disappears and **"--"** appears.

This action switches off all of the functions of the air conditioning system.
Temperature related comfort is no longer guaranteed but a slight flow of air, due to the forward movement of the vehicle, can still be felt.

10. Air intake / Air recirculation



☞ Press this button for recirculation of the interior air. The indicator lamp on the button comes on.

Air recirculation enables the passenger compartment to be isolated from exterior odours and smoke. It is activated automatically when operating the screenwash.

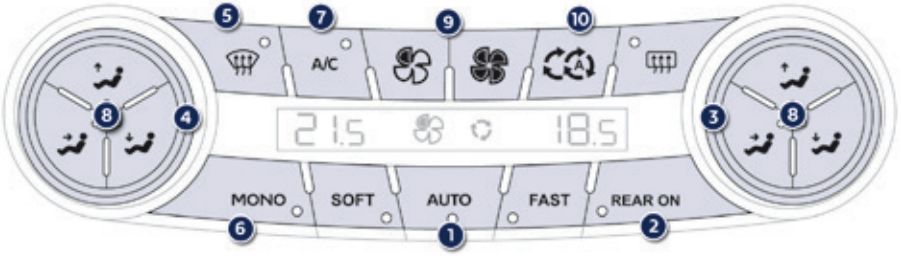
☞ As soon as possible, press this button again to permit the intake of outside air and prevent the formation of condensation. The indicator lamp in the button goes off.

! Avoid driving for long periods with the system off (risk of condensation and deterioration of the air quality).
Pressing the **"full fan"** button reactivates the system with the values in use at the time it was switched off.

Quad-zone digital air conditioning

The air conditioning can only operate with the engine running.

Automatic operation



1. Automatic comfort programme

The Soft/Auto/Fast modes allow the driver and front seat passenger to select their desired comfort settings for the passenger compartment:

SOFT Favours optimum gentle and silent operation by limiting the air flow.

AUTO Offers the best compromise between thermal comfort and silence of operation.

FAST Favours dynamic and effective air flow.

2. Activating/deactivating the rear air conditioning

REAR ON Press this button to deactivate the rear air conditioning and lock the system. A padlock appears in the LCD screen. When the rear system is reactivated, automatic mode is selected with the last temperature settings used.

3 - 4. Driver-passenger side adjustment

The driver and front passenger can each adjust the temperature to their requirements.
The value indicated on the display corresponds to a level of comfort and not to a temperature in degrees Celsius or Fahrenheit.



☞ Turn control **3** or **4** to the left (blue) or to the right (red) respectively to decrease or increase this value.

A setting around the value 21 provides optimum comfort. However, depending on your requirements, a setting between 18 and 24 is normal.
It is recommended that the difference between left and right should not be greater 3.

On entering the vehicle, if the interior temperature is much colder or warmer than the comfort value, there is no need to change the value displayed in order to obtain the comfort required. The system corrects the difference in temperature automatically and as quickly as possible.

5. Automatic visibility programme



See "Front demisting-defrosting".

With Stop & Start, when demisting has been activated, the STOP mode is not available.

6. Mono-zone / Quad-zone



Press this button to apply the driver's comfort setting value to the front and rear passengers (mono-zone). The indicator lamp on the button comes on.

7. Air conditioning On / Off



The air conditioning is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.
It allows you:

- in summer, to lower the temperature,
- in winter, above 3°C, to improve demisting performance.

Switching on

☞ Press the **"A/C"** button, the associated green indicator lamp comes on.

The air conditioning does not operate when the air flow control is set to off.

Switching off

☞ Press the **"A/C"** button again, the associated green indicator lamp goes off.

Switching off the air conditioning may result in some discomfort (humidity, misting).

Manual operation

If you wish, you can change one of settings provided by the system. The other functions will still be controlled automatically.
Press one of the Soft/Auto/Fast buttons to return to fully automatic operation.

For maximum cooling or heating of the passenger compartment, it is possible to exceed the minimum value 14 or the maximum value 28.

☞ Turn the dial **3** or **4** to the left until **"LO"** is displayed or to the right until **"HI"** is displayed.

8. Air distribution adjustment

☞ Press the corresponding button for:



Windscreen and side windows.



Centre and side vents.



Footwells.



To suit your requirements, you can combine two distribution buttons or select the three distribution modes simultaneously.

9. Air flow adjustment



☞ Press this **"full fan"** button to increase the air flow.

The symbol for air flow, the fan, fills progressively according to the value requested.



☞ Press **"empty fan"** button to reduce the air flow.

Switching the system off



☞ Press this **"empty fan"** air flow button until the fan symbol disappears and **"- -"** appears.

This action switches off all of the functions of the air conditioning system.
Temperature related comfort is no longer assured but a slight flow of air, due to the forward movement of the vehicle, can still be felt.
Avoid driving for long periods with the system off (risk of condensation and deterioration of the air quality). Pressing the **"full fan"** button reactivates the system with the values in use at the time it was switched off.

10. Air intake / Air recirculation



Automatic air intake mode
It is activated by default with automatic comfort regulation.

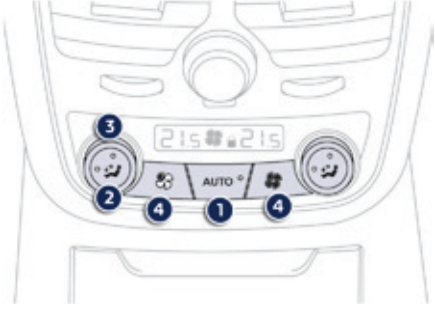
Air recirculation enables the passenger compartment to be isolated from exterior odours and smoke. It is activated automatically when operating the screenwash. It is inactive when the ambient temperature is below 5°C to guard against the risk of misting in the vehicle.

☞ As soon as possible, press this button again to permit the intake of outside air and prevent the formation of condensation. The indicator lamp in the button goes off.

Adjusting the rear passenger comfort level

The rear air conditioning controls only operate if, from the front:

- the **REAR** button is activated,
- the automatic visibility programme is not activated.



1. Automatic comfort programme

AUTO

☞ Press the **"AUTO"** button. The lamp in the button comes on.

We recommend that you use this mode. It automatically adjusts all settings to provide optimum operation for the comfort level chosen: passenger compartment temperature, air flow and air distribution.
This system is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.

2. Air distribution adjustment

Press the corresponding button successively for:

- Footwell and centre vent.
- Centre vent.
- Automatic control of air distribution.

3. Temperature adjustment, left and right

The left and rear passengers can each adjust their temperature setting independently.
The value indicated in the screen is a level of comfort and not a temperature in degrees Celsius or Fahrenheit.

☞ Turn the dial to the left to lower the value and to the right to raise it.

A setting around 21 provides an optimum level of comfort. However, depending on your requirements, a setting between 18 and 24 is normal.
It is recommended that the difference between left and right should not be greater 3.
Ensure that the air grilles and vents on the floor are not obstructed.

4. Air flow adjustment



☞ Press this "full fan" button to increase the air flow.

The air flow symbol, the fan, fills progressively as the fan speed increases.



☞ Press this "empty fan" button to reduce the air flow.

Deactivating the system



☞ Press the "empty fan" air flow button until the fan disappears and **"- -"** appears.

This action stops all of the functions of the air conditioning system.
Thermal comfort is no longer controlled.
However, a slight air flow may still be felt, resulting from the forward movement of the vehicle.

Front demist - defrost

With manual air conditioning



☞ Select this programme to demist or defrost the windscreen and side windows as quickly as possible.

The system automatically manages the air conditioning, air flow and air intake, and provides optimum distribution towards the windscreen and side windows.
Adjust the temperature control to quickly demist /defrost the windows.
To switch it off, press the "visibility" button again, the warning lamp in the button goes off and the system reverts to the previous settings.

With dual-zone and quad-zone digital air conditioning

Automatic visibility programme



☞ Select this programme to demist or defrost the windscreen and side windows as quickly as possible.

The system automatically manages the air conditioning, air flow and air intake, and provides optimum distribution towards the windscreen and side windows.
With the quad-zone digital air conditioning, pressing this button deactivates and locks the rear air conditioning.

☞ To stop the programme, press either the **"visibility"** button again or **"AUTO"**, the warning lamp on the button goes off and the warning lamp in the **"AUTO"** button comes on.

The system reverts to the previous settings.

With Stop & Start, when demisting has been activated, the STOP mode is not available.

Rear screen demist - defrost

The rear screen demist - defrost can only operate when the engine is running.



The control button is located on the air conditioning system control panel.

Switching on

☞ Press this button to demist/defrost the rear screen and, depending on version, the door mirrors. The indicator lamp associated with the button comes on.

Switching off

The demist/defrost switches off automatically to prevent an excessive consumption of current.

☞ It is possible to stop the demist/defrost operation before it is switched off automatically by pressing the button again. The indicator lamp associated with the button goes off.

☞ Switch off the demist/defrost of the rear screen and door mirrors as soon as it is no longer needed as lower current consumption results in reduced fuel consumption.

Programmable Heating / Ventilation



Programmable heating mode

This is an additional and separate system which heats the engine hot water circuit to improve defrosting and to preheat the passenger compartment.



This indicator lamp comes on only when if the system is programmed in programmable heating mode.

Programmable ventilation mode

This mode allows ventilation of the passenger compartment with exterior air to improve the temperature experienced on entering the vehicle in summer.

Programming



With the ignition on, press the left hand steering mounted thumb wheel for access to the main menu.

☞ In the "Main menu", select "Pre-heating / Pre-ventilation".

☞ Select "Activation" and if necessary for programming, "Parameters".

☞ Select "Heating" to preheat the engine or passenger compartment or "Ventilation" to ventilate the passenger compartment.

☞ Select:
- immediate to start the heating or ventilation (once confirmed "OK"),
- the first clock to programme/store your departure time,
- the second clock to programme/store a second departure time.

Depending on the departure time chosen, the system calculates automatically the optimum time to start operating.

i The immediate or programmed activation of ventilation mode depends on the temperatures inside and outside the vehicle.

i Using these two clocks and according to season you can, for example, select one or the other departure time.
A message in the instrument panel screen confirms your choice.

Only one programmed or immediate preheating/preventilation can be activated between two starts of the vehicle.

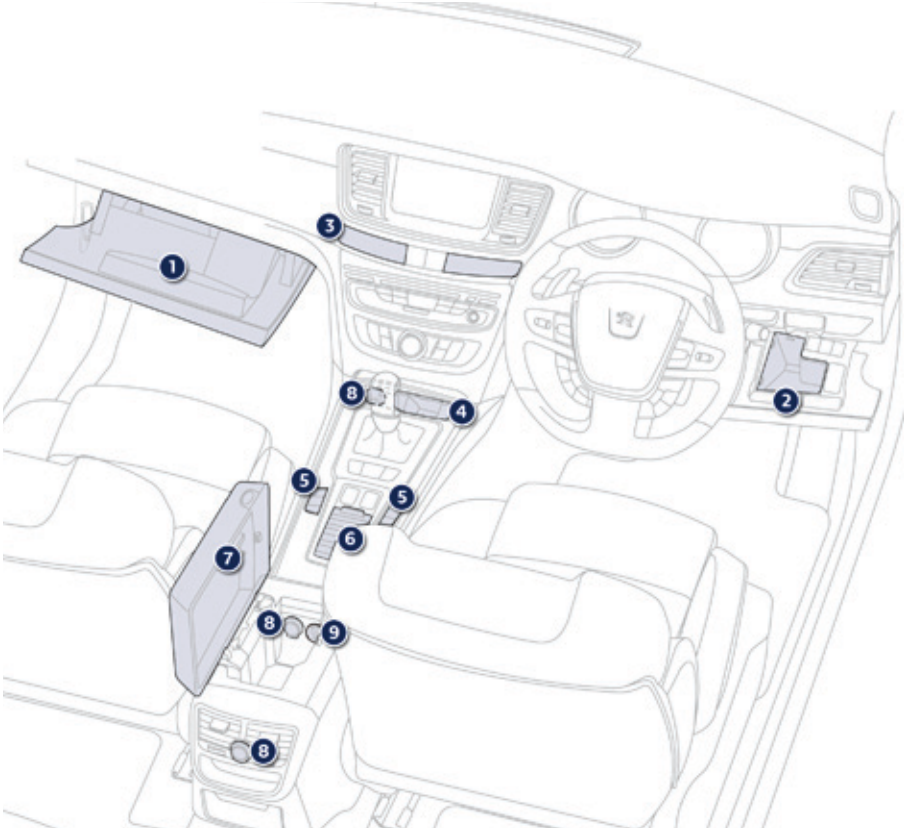
The heating and the ventilation in immediate or programmable mode is not activated when:
- the fuel level is too low,
- the battery is not sufficiently charged.

To programme the heating and the ventilation, it is necessary to first **deactivate** the alarm volumetric and tilt monitoring.
For more information on the alarm, refer to the corresponding section.

Always switch off the programmable heating while refuelling to avoid any risk of fire or explosion.
To avoid the risk of intoxication and asphyxiation, the programmable heating must not be used, even for short periods, in an enclosed area such as a garage or workshop not equipped with exhaust gas extraction.
Do not park the vehicle on an inflammable surface (dry grass, dead leaves, paper...), there is a risk of fire.

Front fittings

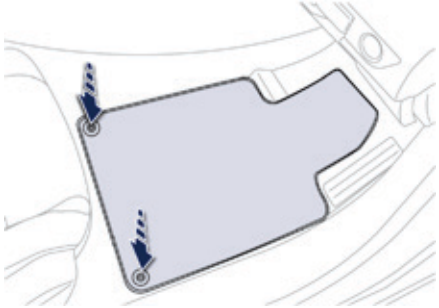
1. **Glove box**
2. **Storage**
3. **Retractable cup holder**
   Press the cover to open the cup holder
4. **Removable ashtray**
   Press the lid to open the ashtray.
   To empty it, pull it out by pulling it upwards.
5. **Controls***
   Massage, Adaptive lighting, Blind spot monitoring system, Alarm, PEUGEOT Connect SOS, PEUGEOT Connect Assistance Call.
6. **Storage with sliding cover**
7. **Front armrest**
8. **12 V accessory socket (120 W)***
   Observe the maximum power rating to avoid damaging your accessory
9. **PEUGEOT Conect USB**



* Depending on version.

Mats

Fitting



When fitting the mat for the first time, on the driver's side use only the fixings provided in the wallet attached.
The other mats are simply placed on the carpet.

Removal

To remove the mat on the driver's side:
- ☞ move the seat as far back as possible,
- ☞ unclip the fixings,
- ☞ remove the mat.

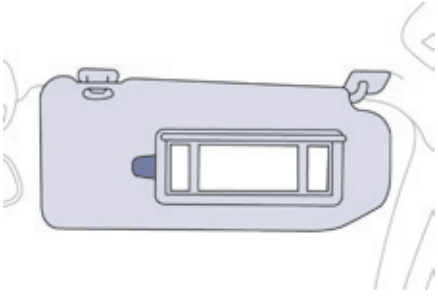
Refitting

To refit the mat on the driver's side:
- ☞ position the mat correctly,
- ☞ refit the fixings by pressing,
- ☞ check that the mat is secured correctly.

! To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:
- only use mats which are suited to the fixings already present in the vehicle; these fixings must be used,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

The use of mats not approved by PEUGEOT may interfere with access to the pedals and hinder the operation of the cruise control / speed limiter.
The mats approved by PEUGEOT have two fixings located below the seat.

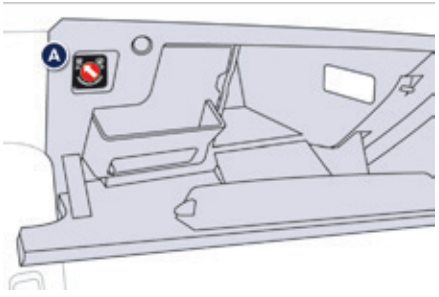
Sun visor



The sun visors have a vanity mirror with flap and a map holder (or ticket holder) for the driver.

☞ With the ignition on, raise the concealing flap; the mirror is illuminated automatically.

Illuminated glove box

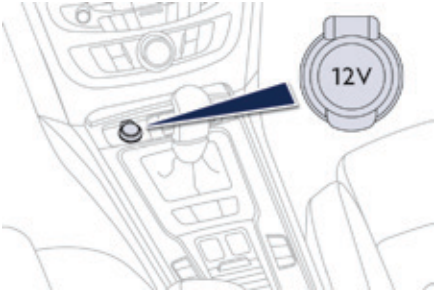


It has dedicated locations for storing a water bottle, the vehicle's handbook pack...
Its lid has locations for storing a pen, a pair of glasses, tokens, maps, a cup...

☞ To open the glove box, raise the handle.

The glove box is illuminated when the lid is opened.
It gives access to the passenger's front airbag deactivation switch **A**.

12 V accessory socket



☞ To connect a 12 V accessory (maximum power: 120 Watts), raise the cap and connect a suitable adaptor.

! Observe the maximum power rating to avoid damaging your accessory.

! The connection of an electrical device not approved by PEUGEOT, such as a USB charger, may adversely affect the operation of vehicle electrical systems, causing faults such as poor telephone reception or interference with displays in the screens.

Courtesy lamps



1. **Front courtesy lamp**
2. **Front map reading lamps**
3. **Rear map reading lamps**
4. **Interior mood LEDs**

Front courtesy lamps

In this position, the courtesy lamp comes on gradually:

- when the vehicle is unlocked,
- when the key is removed from the ignition,
- when opening a door,
- when the remote control locking button is activated, in order to locate your vehicle.

It switches off gradually:
- when the vehicle is locked,
- when the ignition is switched on,
- 30 seconds after the last door is closed.

Permanently off.

Permanent lighting.

With the "permanent lighting" mode, the lighting time varies according to the circumstances:
- with the ignition off, approximately ten minutes,
- in energy economy mode, approximately thirty seconds,
- with the engine running, unlimited.

Front and rear map reading lamps

☞ With the ignition on, press the corresponding switch.

When the front courtesy lamp is on "permanent lighting", the rear map reading lamp comes on as well, unless it is "permanently off".

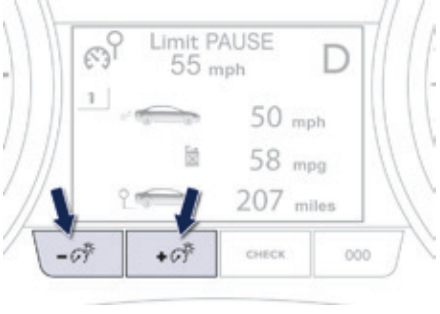
From the front, you can deactivate the rear map reading lamps so as to not disturb sleeping rear passengers, for example. However, the rear passengers can force the illumination of a lamp.

Take care to avoid leaving anything in contact with the courtesy lamps.

Interior mood lighting

The dimmed passenger compartment lighting improves visibility in the vehicle when the light is poor.





Switching on

At night, interior mood light emitting diodes - LEDs come on automatically when the sidelamps are switched on.

Switching off

The interior mood lighting switches off automatically when the sidelamps are switched off.
It can be switched off manually by adjusting the instrument panel lighting dimmer button to the lowest setting.

Sunroof

Your vehicle is fitted with an opening sunroof which increases the light and visibility in the passenger compartment.

Opening



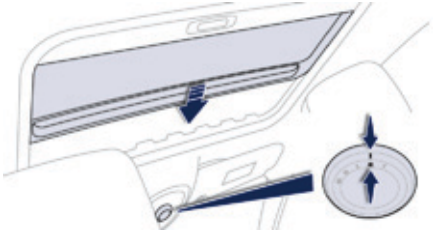
Turn the dial to the left to slide the sunroof (several possible opening settings).

Raising the rear of of the sunroof



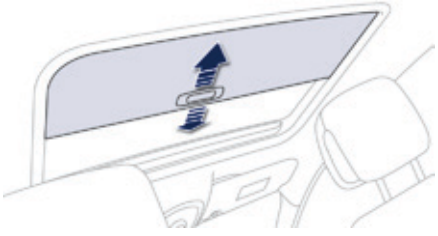
Turn the dial to the right to raise the rear of the sunroof.

Closing



Return the dial to the initial position.
If the position of the glass panel does not agree with the position indicated by the dial, press the ring of the dial to open the sunroof to this position.

Blind



The blind improves thermal and acoustic comfort.
The blind is opened automatically when the sunroof is opened. It must be closed manually after closing the sunroof.

Safety anti-pinch

Am anti-pinch system stops the closing of the roof, whether sliding or from the raised at the rear position. If the sunroof encounters an obstacle it partially opens again.
If the sunroof fails to close at a second attempt, it may be necessary to force the closing of the sunroof using the reinitialisation procedure.

Reinitialising the system

Following reconnection of the battery, or in the event of a malfunction in its operation, it may be necessary to reinitialise the system:

☞ turn the dial to the right to raise the sunroof at the rear,
☞ wait until the sunroof is fully up at the rear,
☞ then immediately press the dial for at least 3 seconds.

If the sunroof opens on its own when closing, as soon as possible after the sunroof stops:

- put the dial in the fully closed position,
- press the dial,
- maintain pressure on the dial until the sunroof closes.

The anti-pinch function is inoperative during these operations.

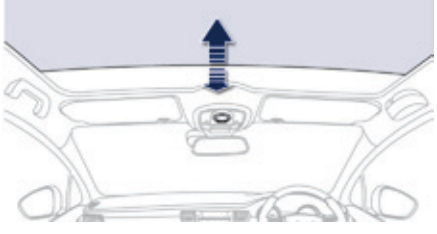
! The driver should ensure that passengers use the sunroof correctly. Be aware of children when operating the sunroof.

Panoramic sunroof (SW and non-hybrid RHX)



Your vehicle is fitted with a tinted glass panoramic sunroof which increases the light and visibility in the passenger compartment. Its electric blind helps control the temperature and noise level in the passenger compartment.

Electric blind



The blind is operated electrically by a rotary control dial.

Opening

Turn the dial to the left (several possible opening settings).

Closing

Return the dial to the initial position.
If the position of the blind does not agree with the position indicated by the dial, press the dial to open the blind to this position.

Safety anti-pinch

If the blind encounters an obstacle during closing, it stops and partially opens again to the 2nd position.
If the blind fails to close at a second attempt, it may be necessary to force the closing of the blind using the reinitialisation procedure.

Reinitialising the system

Following reconnection of the battery, or in the event of a malfunction in its operation, it may be necessary to reinitialise the system:

- ☞ turn the dial to the fully open position,
- ☞ wait until the blind is fully open,
- ☞ then immediately press the dial for at least 3 seconds.

If the blind opens on its own when closing, as soon as possible after the blind stops:

- put the dial in the fully closed position,
- press the dial,
- maintain pressure on the dial until the blind closes.

The anti-pinch function is inoperative during these operations.

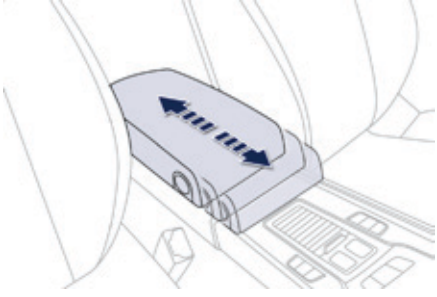
! In the event of contact during operation of the blind, you must reverse its movement. To do this, turn the dial.
When the driver operates the dial, they must ensure that nothing prevents the blind from closing correctly.
The driver must ensure that the passengers use the blind correctly.
Be aware of children during operation of the blind.

Centre console

Front armrest

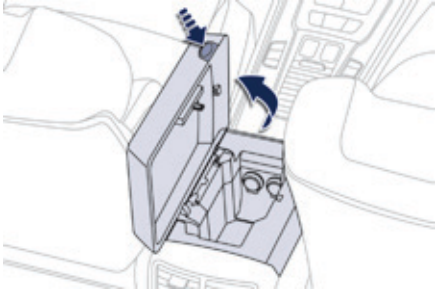
The height and longitudinal position of the armrest cover can be adjusted for greater comfort.

Longitudinal adjustment



☞ Slide the cover fully forwards or rearwards.

Storage

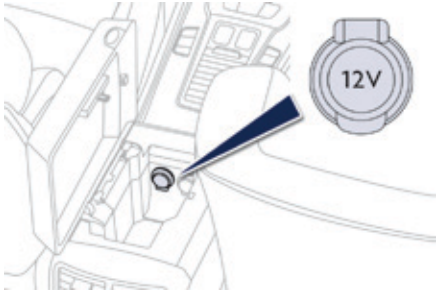


A storage space is arranged below the armrest lid. It gives access to a 12 V socket (maximum power: 120 Watts) as well as a USB port and a Jack auxiliary socket.

☞ Press the opening control.

☞ Raise the cover fully.

12 V accessory socket



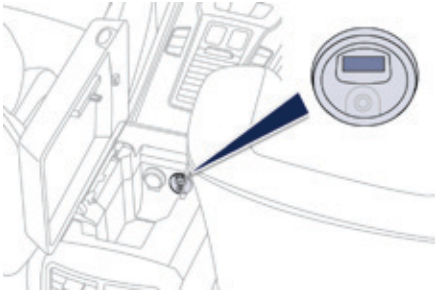
☞ To connect a 12 V accessory (maximum power: 120 Watts), raise the cap and connect a suitable adaptor.

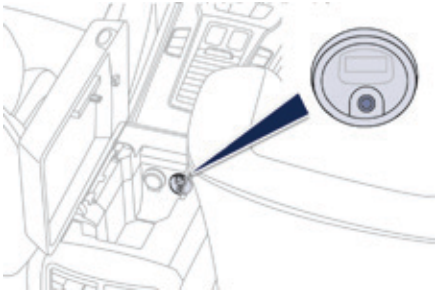
! Observe the maximum power rating to avoid damaging your accessory.

! The connection of an electrical device not approved by PEUGEOT, such as a USB charger, may adversely affect the operation of vehicle electrical systems, causing faults such as poor telephone reception or interference with displays in the screens.

PEUGEOT Connect USB

This connection box comprises a USB port and a Jack auxiliary socket.





USB port

The USB port allows the connection of a portable device, such as a digital audio player of the iPod® type or a USB memory stick.
The USB player reads your audio files, which are transmitted to your audio system and played via the vehicle's speakers.
The management of these files is from the steering mounted controls or the audio system.

When connected to the USB port, the portable device charges automatically.
While charging, a message is displayed if the power consumption of the portable device exceeds the current delivered by the vehicle.

Jack auxiliary socket

The Jack auxiliary socket allows the connection of a portable device, such as a digital audio player, so that your audio files can be heard through the vehicle's speakers.
The management of these files is from the portable device.

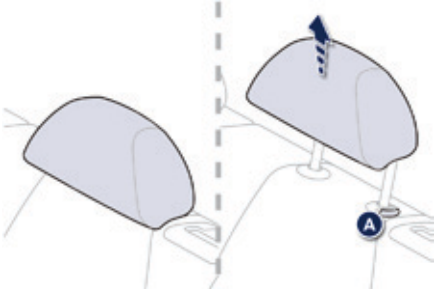
i For more information, refer to the corresponding part of the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.

Rear seats

Bench seat the left-hand (1/3) or right-hand (2/3) section of which can be folded to adapt the boot load space.

Outer rear seat head restraints

These have a high position (comfort and safety), a low position (rear visibility) and can also be removed.



To remove a head restraint:

- pull the head restraint fully upwards,
- then, press the lug **A**.

! Never drive with rear passengers when the head restraints are removed; the head restraints must be in place and in the high position.

Folding the seats from the boot (SW and non-hybrid RXH)

Each section of the bench seat (1/3 or 2/3) has its own control to release the seat back and its seat cushion from the boot.



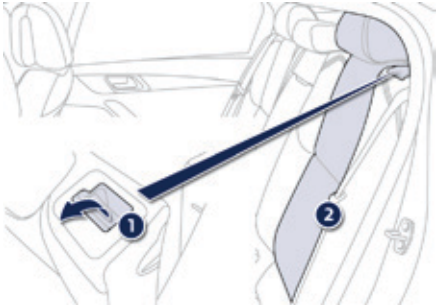
- Check that nothing is preventing the seat back from folding (head restraint, seat belts, ...),
- check also that no object on or under the seat could hinder its movement,



- pull the control from the boot and push the seat backrest.

Folding the seat from the rear

Check that no object, either on or underneath the seat, could hinder its movement.



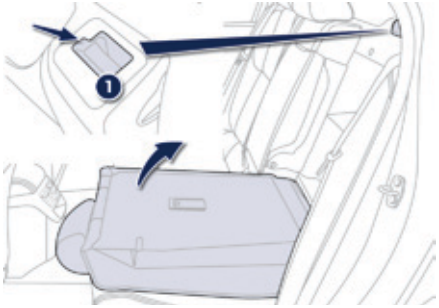
- ☞ Move the corresponding front seat forwards if necessary,
- ☞ check that the seat belt is positioned correctly on the side of the seat back,
- ☞ place the head restraints in the low position or remove them if necessary,



- ☞ pull the control **1** forwards to release the seat backrest **2** then fold it forwards.

Returning the seat back to its original position

When returning the rear seat back to its original position, take care not to trap the seat belts and their buckles.



- ☞ Put the seat back in the upright position and secure it, the seat cushion also returns to its original position,
- ☞ check that the red indicator, located at the control **1**, is no longer visible,
- ☞ refit the head restraints or put them back in place.

Rear fittings

12 V accessory socket



☞ To connect a 12 V accessory (maximum power: 120 Watts), raise the cap and connect a suitable adaptor.

! Observe the maximum power rating to avoid damaging your accessory.

! The connection of an electrical device not approved by PEUGEOT, such as a USB charger, may adversely affect the operation of vehicle electrical systems, causing faults such as poor telephone reception or interference with displays in the screens.

Rear armrest



☞ Lower the rear armrest for a more comfortable position.

It houses a pair of cup holders and also gives access to the ski flap.

Ski flap

It allows long objects to be carried in the vehicle.



Opening

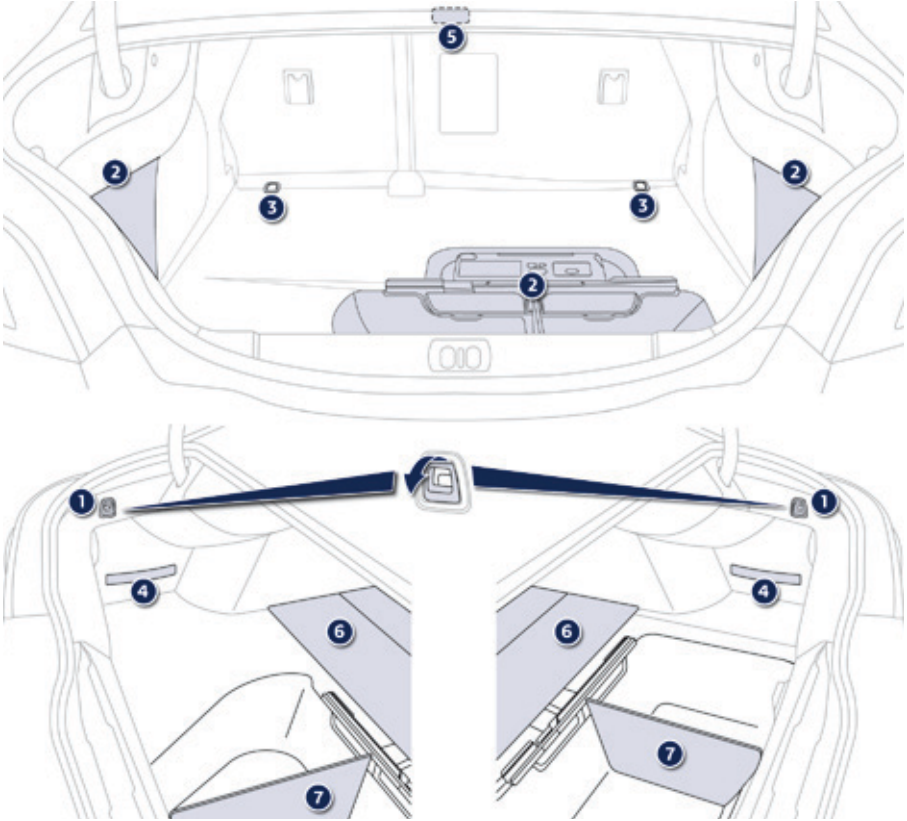
☞ Lower the armrest.
☞ Press the flap opening control.
☞ Lower the flap.
☞ Load the objects from inside the boot.

i Do not leave the flap open when not carrying long objects in the vehicle.

3

Boot fittings (Saloon)

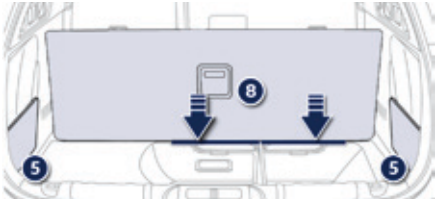
1. **Retractable hooks**
2. **Storage pockets**
   With a towing eye, a wheel chock and a temporary puncture repair kit (depending on the country of sale and equipment).
3. **Stowing rings**
4. **Retaining straps**
5. **Boot lamp**
6. **Boot floor**
   For access to the storage compartments or the spare wheel (depending on the country of sale), raise the floor.
7. **Adjustable divider**

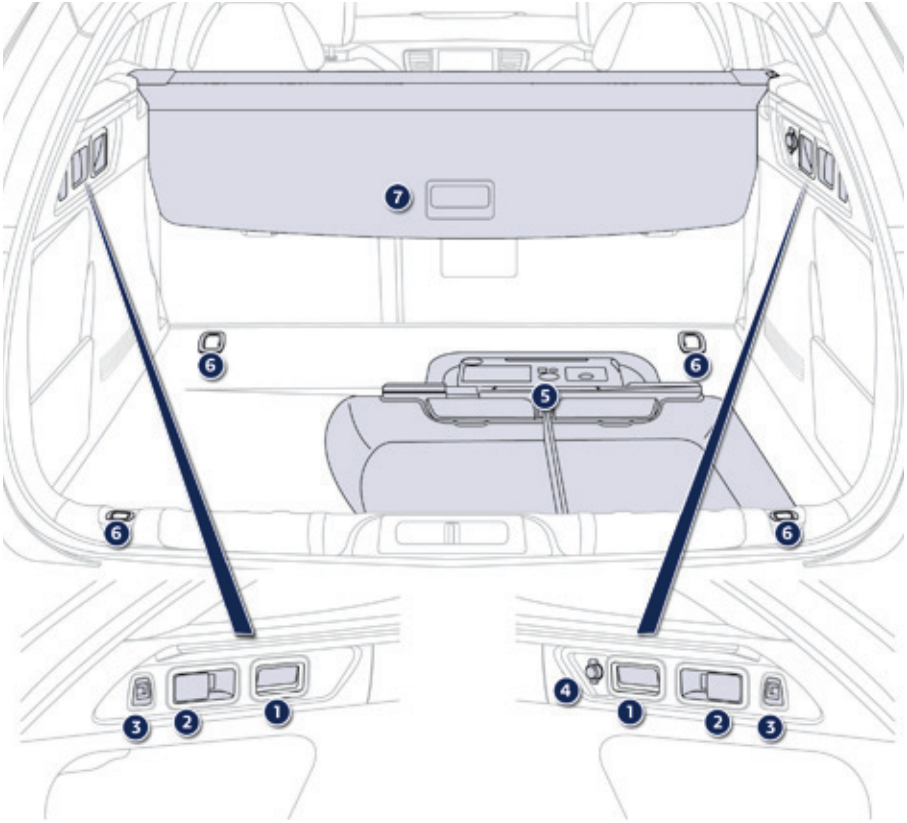


Boot fittings (SW and non-hybrid RHX)

1. **Boot lamps**
2. **Rear seats folding controls**
3. **Retractable hooks**
4. **12 V accessory socket (120 W max)**
5. **Storage pockets**
   With a towing eye, a wheel chock and a temporary puncture repair kit (depending on the country of sale and equipment).
6. **Stowing rings**
7. **Load space cover**
   (see following page)

8. **Boot floor**
   For access to the storage compartments or the spare wheel (depending on the country of sale), position the floor vertically in its guide.





Luggage cover (SW and non-hybrid RXH)

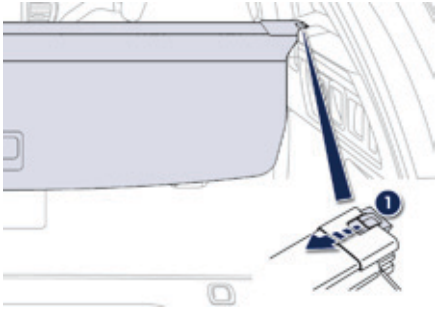
To reel in



☞ Gently push on the (PRESS) handle, the luggage cover reels in automatically.

The moving part **A** can be folded against the rear bench seat backrest.

To remove



☞ Compress the control **1** and lift the luggage cover on the right then on the left to remove it.

To install



☞ Position the left-hand end of the luggage cover roller in its location **B** behind the rear bench seat.

☞ Compress the roller control **1** and put the roller in place in its location **C** on the right.

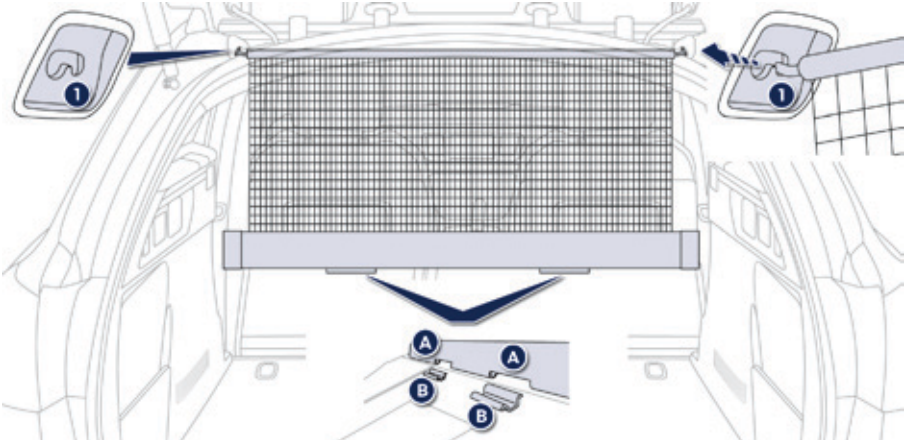
☞ Release the control to secure the luggage cover.

☞ Unreel it to its fastening on the rear pillar.

High load retaining net (SW and non-hybrid RXH)

Hooked onto the special upper and lower fixings, this allows the use of the entire loading volume up to the roof:

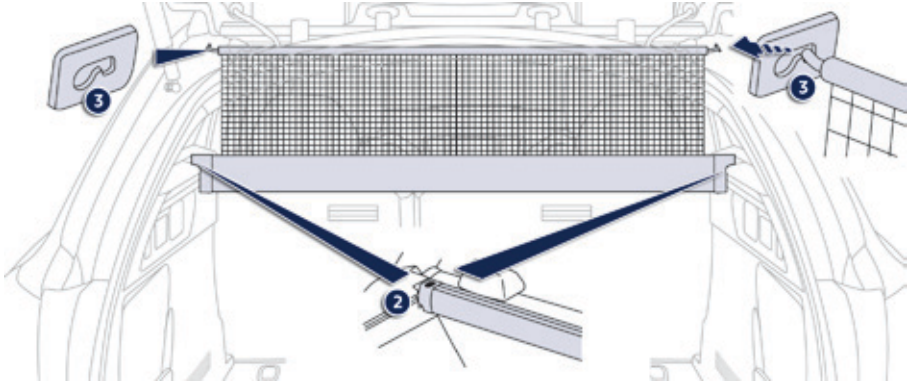
- behind the front seats (row 1) when the rear seats are folded.
- behind the rear seats (row 2).



> Never reposition the rear seats if the net's roller is attached to the backs of the folded seats.

Row 1

- position the net's roller above the two rails (located on the back of the folded rear seats),
- the two grooves **A** must be placed above the two rails **B**. Slide the two rails **B** in the grooves **A** and push the roller (lengthwise) from right to left to secure it,
- check that the net is hooked and tightened correctly,
- fold the rear seats,
- unroll the high load retaining net without stretching it,
- position one of the ends of the net's metal bar in the corresponding upper fixing **1**,
- pull the net's metal bar to position the other end in the other upper fixing **1**.



Row 2

- ☞ reel in then remove the load space cover,
- ☞ position the left hand end of roller **2** in the load space cover support,
- ☞ position the right hand end of roller **2** in the load space cover support, then lock the position (red indicator),
- ☞ from the rear bench seat, unroll the high load retaining net by pushing to disengage the retaining hooks,
- ☞ position one of the ends of the net's metal bar in the corresponding upper fixing **3**,
- ☞ pull on the net's metal bar to position the other end in the other upper fixing **3**,
- ☞ check that the net is hooked and tensioned correctly.

Lighting controls

Selection and operation of the various front and rear lamps providing the vehicle's lighting and signalling.

Main lighting

There are various lamps on the vehicle:

- sidelamps, to be seen,
- dipped beam headlamps to see without dazzling other drivers,
- main beam headlamps to see clearly when the road is clear,
- directional headlamps for improved visibility when cornering.

Additional lighting

Other lamps are installed to fulfil the requirements of particular driving conditions:

- rear foglamps to better signal the presence of the vehicle in foggy conditions,
- front foglamps for better visibility in foggy conditions and to improve lighting at intersections and when parking,
- daytime running lamps at the front for better visibility of the vehicle by day.
- additional headlamps for better lighting of the inside of corners.

Lighting function settings

You can activate or deactivate the following lighting functions:

- guide-me-home lighting,
- main additional lighting,
- secondary additional lighting,
- welcome lighting,
- automatic illumination of headlamps,
- adaptive lighting.

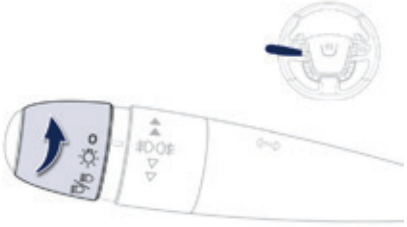
4

In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), the presence of misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal; it disappears after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

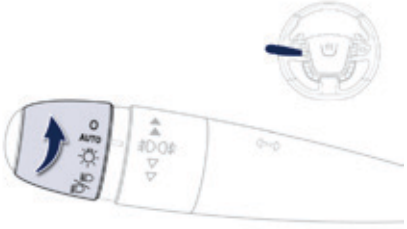
Selection ring for main lighting mode

Turn the ring to align the desired symbol with the marking.

Model without AUTO lighting

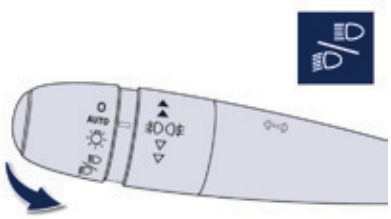


Model with AUTO lighting



O	Lighting off (ignition off) / Front daytime running lamps (engine running).
AUTO	Automatic illumination of headlamps.
	Sidelamps only.
	Dipped or main beam headlamps.

Dipping the headlamps



Pull the stalk to switch the lighting between dipped / main beam headlamps.

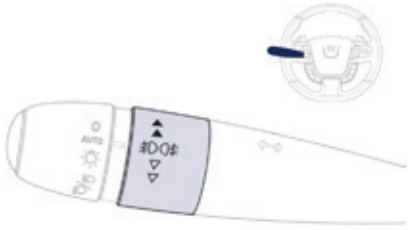
In the lighting off and sidelamps modes, the driver can switch on the main beam headlamps temporarily ("headlamp flash") by maintaining a pull on the stalk.

Display

Illumination of the corresponding indicator lamp in the instrument panel confirms the lighting switched on.

Foglamp selection ring

The foglamps operate with dipped and main beam headlamps.



Front and rear foglamps

Rotate and release the ring:

- ☞ forwards a first time to switch on the front foglamps,
- ☞ forwards a second time to switch on the rear foglamps,
- ☞ rearwards a first time to switch off the rear foglamps,
- ☞ rearwards a second time to switch of the front fog lamps.

When the headlamps switch off with automatic illumination of headlamps (AUTO model) or when the dipped beam headlamps are switched off manually, the foglamps and sidelamps remain on.

☞ Turn the ring rearwards to switch off the foglamps, the sidelamps will then switch off.

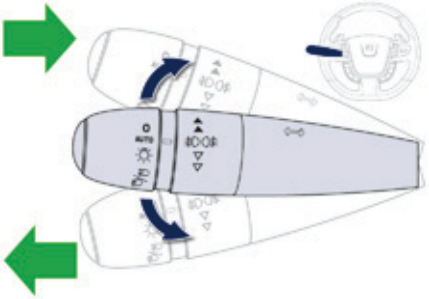
! In good or rainy weather, both day and night, the front foglamps and the rear foglamps are prohibited. In these situations, the power of their beams may dazzle other drivers. They should only be used in fog or snow.
In these weather conditions, it is your responsibility to switch on the foglamps and dipped headlamps manually as the sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light.
Do not forget to switch off the front foglamps and the rear foglamps when they are no longer needed.

Lighting left on audible signal

An audible signal when a front door is opened warns the driver that the vehicle's exterior lighting is on, with the ignition off and in manual lighting mode.
In this case, switching off the lighting stops the audible signal.
With the ignition off, if the dipped headlamps remain on, the vehicle goes into "ECO" mode to avoid discharging the battery.

The lighting goes off when you switch off the ignition, but you can always switch it on again using the lighting control stalk.

Direction indicators



- ☞ Lower the lighting control stalk fully when moving to the left.
- ☞ Raise the lighting control stalk fully when moving to the right.

> **i** If you forget to cancel the direction indicators for more than twenty seconds, the volume of the audible signal will increase if the speed is above 40 mph (60 km/h).

Three flashes

Move the stalk briefly upwards or downwards, without going beyond the point of resistance; the corresponding direction indicators will flash 3 times.

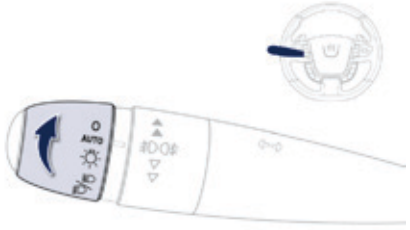
Daytime running lamps



They come on automatically when the engine is started making the vehicle more visible to other road users.

Automatic illumination of headlamps

The sidelamps and dipped beam headlamps are switched on automatically, without any action on the part of the driver, when a low level of external light is detected or in certain cases of activation of the windscreen wipers.
As soon as the brightness returns to a sufficient level or after the windscreen wipers are switched off, the lamps are switched off automatically.



Activation

☞ Turn the ring to the **"AUTO"** position.
The automatic illumination of headlamps is accompanied by a message in the instrument panel screen.

Deactivation

☞ Turn the ring to another position.
Deactivation is accompanied by a message in the instrument panel screen.

Association with automatic guide-me-home lighting

Association with automatic illumination of headlamps provides the guide-me-home lighting with the following additional options:

- selection of the lighting duration of 15, 30 or 60 seconds,
- automatic activation of guide-me-home lighting when the automatic illumination of headlamps is in operation.

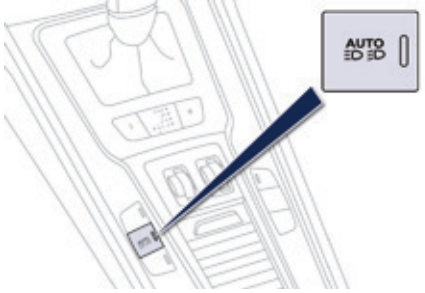
Operating fault

SERVICE In the event of a fault with the sunshine sensor, the lighting comes on, this warning lamp is displayed in the instrument panel and/or a message appears in the instrument panel screen, accompanied by an audible signal.
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! In fog or snow, the sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light. In this case, the lighting will not come on automatically.
Do not cover the sunshine sensor, coupled with the rain sensor and located in the centre of the windscreen behind the rear view mirror; the associated functions would no longer be controlled.

Adaptive lighting

System which automatically changes between dipped and main beam according to the driving conditions, using a sensor in the rear view mirror.
The system is active from 15 mph (25 km/h) and is deactivated below 9 mph (15 km/h).



Switching on

☞ Put the lighting control stalk on the "AUTO" or "Dipped/main beam headlamps" position.



☞ Press this button, the indicator lamp comes on.

Switching off

The driver can take over at any time, if the circumstances dictate:



☞ Press this button, the indicator lamp goes off,

or

☞ Dipping the headlamps manually using the lighting control stalk, whether in the "AUTO" or "Dipped/main beam headlamps" position.

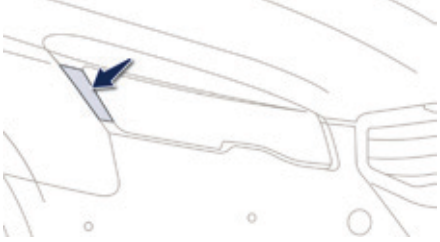
Flashing the headlamps does not deactivate the system.
The state of the system is stored in memory when switching off the ignition.
This automatic headlamp dipping system is a driving aid. The driver remains responsible for the vehicle's lighting and its correct use for the prevailing conditions of light, visibility and traffic.

The system may suffer interference or not work correctly:
- under conditions of poor visibility (for example, snowfall, heavy rain or thick fog, ...),
- if the windscreen is dirty, misted or obscured (by a sticker, ...) in front of the sensor,
- if the vehicle is facing highly reflective signs.

The system is not able to detect:
- road users that do not have their own lighting, such as pedestrians,
- road users whose lighting is obscured, such as vehicles running behind a safety barrier (on a motorway, for example),
- road users at the top or bottom of a steep slope, on twisty roads, on crossroads.

Cornering lighting

Additional headlamps



With dipped or main beam on, this system uses LEDs (light-emitting diodes) to illuminate the inside of a bend.
The speed of the vehicle must be below 75 mph (120 km/h).
This function is a available only with "full-LED" headlamps.

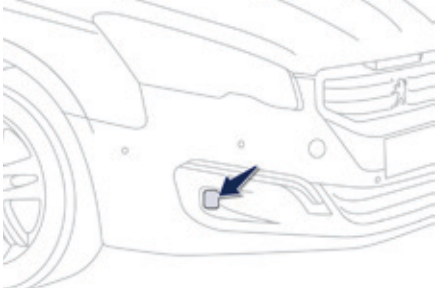
Operation

This system operates from a certain angle of rotation of the steering wheel.

System inactive

The system does not operate:
- below a certain angle of rotation of the steering wheel,
- above 75 mph (120 km/h),
- when reverse gear is engaged.

Secondary additional headlamps



With the dipped or main beam headlamps on, this function makes use of the beam from a front foglamp to illuminate the inside of a bend, when the vehicle speed is below 25 mph (approximately 40 km/h).
This additional lighting is particularly useful in town, at intersections, on very winding roads, when parking, ...

Operation

This system operates:
- when the direction indicators are switched on (the foglamp on the same side is switched on),
  or
- from a certain angle of rotation of the steering wheel.

System inactive

The system does not operate:
- below a certain angle of rotation of the steering wheel,
- when the direction indicators are turned off.

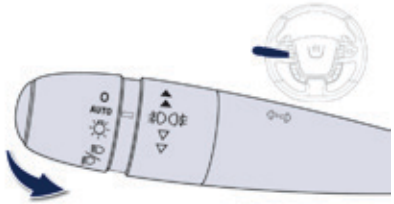
Programming

The system is activated or deactivated in the **Main menu**, select "**Vehicle parameters**", then "**Lighting**", then activate/deactivate.
The system is activated by default.

Guide-me-home lighting

Manual guide-me-home lighting

Temporarily keeping the dipped beam headlamps on after the ignition has been switched off makes the driver's exit easier when the light is poor.



Switching on

- ☞ Within 30 seconds or a minute after switching of the ignition (according to the lighting duration programmed in the main menu of the instrument panel), "flash" the headlamps using the lighting stalk.
- ☞ A further "headlamp flash" switches the function off.

Switching off

The manual guide-me-home lighting switches off automatically after about 30 seconds.

Programming



The duration of the guide-me-home lighting is is set in the **Main menu** of instrument panel screen. Select "**Vehicle parameters**" then "**Lighting**", then change the lighting duration.

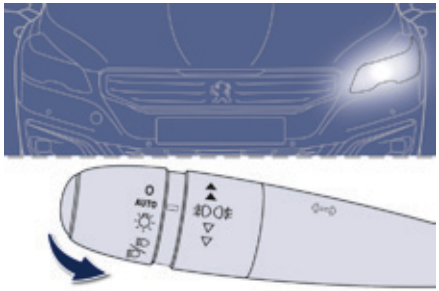
Automatic guide-me-home lighting

When the automatic illumination of headlamps function is activated, under low ambient light the dipped beam headlamps come on automatically when the ignition is switched off.



The duration of the guide-me-home lighting is is set in the **Main menu** of instrument panel screen. Select "**Vehicle parameters**" then "**Lighting**", then change the lighting duration.

Parking lamps



Side markers for the vehicle by illumination of the sidelamps on the traffic side only.

☞ Within one minute of switching off the ignition, operate the lighting control stalk up or down depending on the traffic side (for example: when parking on the left; lighting control stalk upwards; the right hand sidelamps are on).

This is confirmed by an audible signal and illumination of the corresponding direction indicator warning lamp in the instrument panel.

To switch off the parking lamps, return the lighting control stalk to the middle position or switch on the ignition.

Exterior welcome lighting

Remote switching on of the lighting makes your approach to the vehicle easier in poor light. The lighting comes on or not depending on the the level of ambient light detected by the sunshine sensor.

Switching on

☞ Press the open padlock on the remote control.

The dipped beam headlamps and the sidelamps come on; your vehicle is also unlocked.

Switching off



The exterior welcome lighting switches off automatically after a set time, when the ignition is switched on or on locking the vehicle.

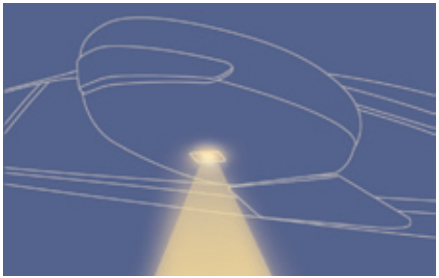
Programming



The activation/deactivation and lighting duration are set in the **Main menu** of instrument panel screen. Select "**Vehicle parameters**" then "**Lighting**", then change the lighting duration.

Door mirror spotlamps

To make your approach to the vehicle easier, these illuminate:



- the zones facing the driver's and passenger's doors,
- the zones forward of the door mirrors and rearward of the front doors.

Switching on

The spotlamps come on:

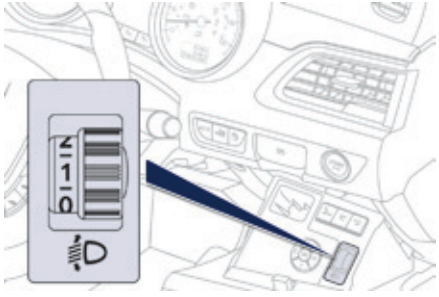
- when you unlock the vehicle,
- when you remove the key from the ignition,
- when you open a door,
- when you use the remote control.

Switching off

They are timed to go off automatically.

Headlamp beam height adjustment

Manual adjustment of halogen headlamps

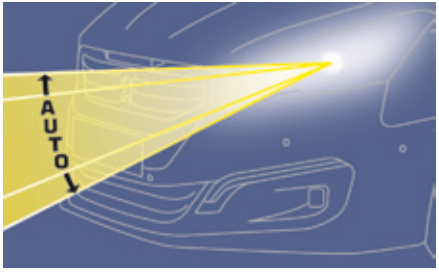


To avoid causing a nuisance to other road users, the beams of the halogen headlamps should be adjusted according to the load in the vehicle.

0 Driver or driver + front passenger.
- Driver + front passenger + rear passengers.
1 5 people.
- 5 people + a load in the boot.
2 Driver + a load in the boot.

The initial setting is position **"0"**.

Automatic adjustment of "full-LED" headlamps



In order to avoid causing a nuisance to other road users, this system corrects the height of the "full LED" headlamps beam automatically, according to the load in the vehicle.

SERVICE If a fault occurs, this warning lamp is displayed in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the instrument panel screen.

The system then places your headlamps in the lowest position.

If a fault occurs, do not touch the "full LED" light sources. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Travelling abroad

The design of the dipped beam headlamps allows, without modification, driving in a country that drives on the other side of the road to the country in which your vehicle was sold.

Wiper controls

The vehicle's front and rear wipers are designed to improve the driver's visibility progressively according to the climatic conditions.

Programming

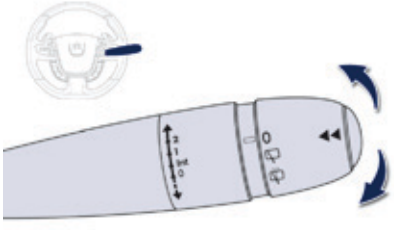
Various automatic wiper control modes are also available according to the following options:

- automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers,
- rear wiping on engaging reverse gear.

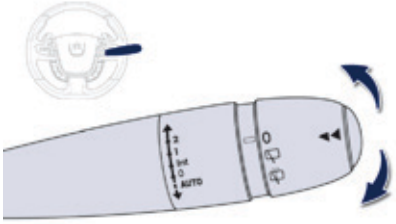
Manual controls

The wipers are controlled directly by the driver.

Model with manual wiping (intermittent)



Model with AUTO wiping



Windscreen wipers

Wiping speed:

2 fast (heavy rain),

1 normal (moderate rain),

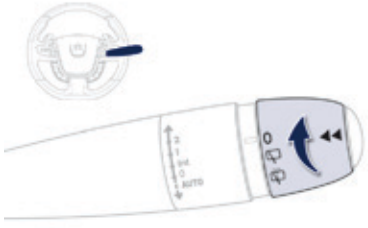
I intermittent (proportional to the speed of the vehicle),

0 park,

↓ single wipe (press down and release),

AUTO ↓ automatic (press down and release),
single wipe (pull the stalk briefly towards you).

Rear wiper



Rear wiper selection ring:

park,

intermittent wipe,

wash-wipe (set duration).

Reverse gear

When reverse gear is engaged, the rear wiper will come into operation if the windscreen wipers are operating.

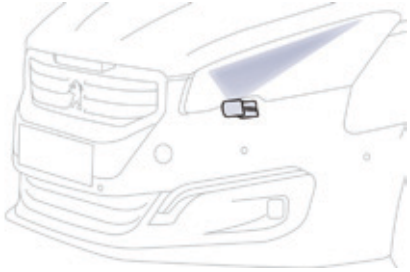
Programming



The function is activated or deactivated via the instrument panel screen configuration menu.
This function is activated by default.

! If a significant accumulation of snow or ice is present, or when using a bicycle carrier on the boot, deactivate the automatic rear wiper via the instrument panel screen configuration menu.

Windscreen and headlamp wash



☞ Pull the windscreen wiper stalk towards you for a few seconds. The windscreen wash then the windscreen wipers operate for a fixed period.

The headlamp washers only operate when **the dipped beam headlamps are on** and the vehicle is moving.

Screenwash/headlamp wash level low

SERVICE

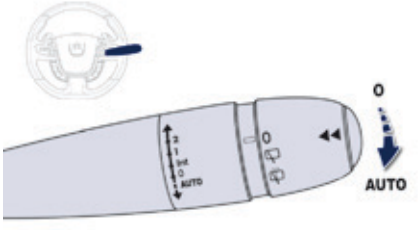
In the case of vehicles fitted with headlamp washers, when the fluid reservoir low level is reached this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the instrument panel screen.

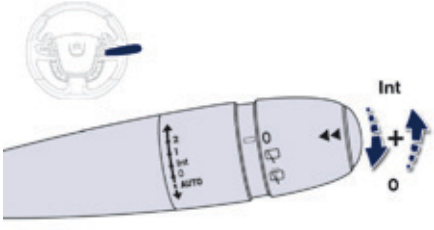
The warning lamp comes on when the ignition is switched on, or every time the stalk is operated, until the reservoir is refilled.

Next time you stop, refill the screenwash / headlamp wash reservoir.

Automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers

The windscreen wipers operate automatically, without any action on the part of the driver, if rain is detected (sensor behind the rear view mirror), adapting their speed to the intensity of the rainfall.





Switching on

AUTO

Briefly push the control stalk downwards.

A wiping cycle confirms that the instruction has been accepted.

This warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel and a message is displayed.

Switching off

AUTO

Briefly push the control stalk downwards again, or place the control stalk in another position (Int, 1 or 2).

This warning lamp goes off in the instrument panel and a message is displayed.

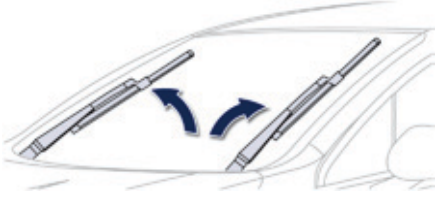
The automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers must be reactivated by pushing the control stalk downwards, if the ignition has been off for more than one minute.

Operating fault

If a fault occurs with the automatic rain sensitive wipers, the wipers will operate in intermittent mode.
Have it checked by PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Do not cover the rain sensor, linked with the sunshine sensor and located in the centre of the windscreen behind the rear view mirror.
Switch off the automatic rain sensitive wipers when using an automatic car wash.
In winter, it is advisable to wait until the windscreen is completely clear of ice before activating the automatic rain sensitive wipers.

Special position of the windscreen wipers



This position permits release of the windscreen wiper blades.
It is used for cleaning or replacement of the wiper blades. It can also be useful, in winter, to release the wiper blades from the windscreen.

☞ Any action on the wiper stalk within one minute after switching off the ignition, places the wiper blades vertically on the screen.
☞ To park the wiper blades again, switch on the ignition and operate the wiper stalk.

i To maintain the effectiveness of the wiper blades, it is advisable to:
- handle them with care,
- clean them regularly using soapy water,
- avoid using them to retain cardboard on the windscreen,
- replace them at the first signs of wear.

General safety recommendations

Labels are applied at various points on your vehicle. They carry safety warnings as well as vehicle identification information. Do not remove them: they form an integral part of your vehicle.

For any work on your vehicle, use a qualified workshop that has the technical information, skills and equipment required, all of which a PEUGEOT dealer is able to provide.

We draw your attention to the following points:

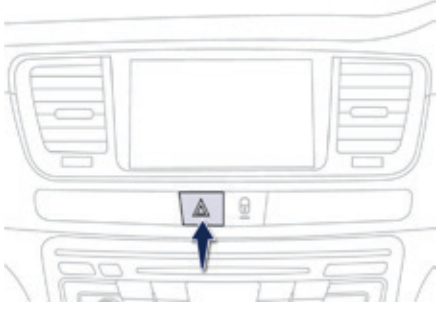
- The fitting of electrical equipment or accessories not listed by PEUGEOT may cause faults and failures with the electrical system of your vehicle. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer for information on the range of recommended accessories.
- As a safety measure, access to the diagnostic socket, used for the vehicle's electronic systems, is reserved strictly for PEUGEOT dealers or qualified workshops, equipped with the special diagnostic tool required (risk of malfunctions of the vehicle's electronic systems that could cause breakdowns or serious accidents). The manufacturer cannot be held responsible if this advice is not followed.
- Any modification or adaptation not intended or authorised by Automobiles PEUGEOT or carried out without meeting the technical requirements defined by the manufacturer would lead to the suspension of the legal and contractual warranties.

Installation of accessory radio communication transmitters

Before installing a radio communication transmitter, you must contact a PEUGEOT dealer for the specification of transmitters which can be fitted (frequency, maximum power, aerial position, specific installation requirements), in line with the Vehicle Electromagnetic Compatibility Directive (2004/104/EC).

Depending on the legislation in force in the country, certain safety equipment may be compulsory: high visibility safety vests, warning triangles, breathalyzers, spare bulbs, spare fuses, fire extinguisher, first aid kit, mud flaps at the rear of the vehicle.
The fitting of electrical equipment or accessories which are not recommended by PEUGEOT may result in a failure of your vehicle's electronic system and excessive electrical consumption.
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer for information on the range of recommended equipment and accessories.

Hazard warning lamps



Press the button, all of the direction indicators start flashing.
They can operate with the ignition off.

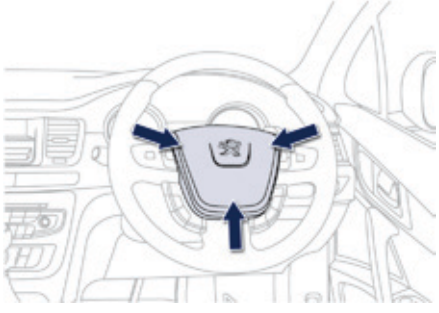
Automatic operation of hazard warning lamps

When braking in an emergency, depending on the rate of deceleration, as well as when the ABS regulation is invoked or in the event of an impact, the hazard warning lamps come on automatically.
They switch off automatically the first time you accelerate.

☞ You can also switch them off by pressing the button.

Horn

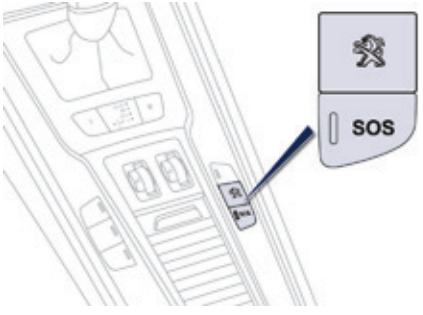
Audible warning system to alert other road users to an imminent danger.



☞ Press the central part of the multifunction steering wheel.

Use the horn moderately and only in the circumstances allowed by the traffic regulations in the country in which you are driving.

Emergency or assistance call



This system allows you to make an emergency or assistance call to the emergency services or to the dedicated PEUGEOT service.

For more information on the use of this function, refer to the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.

Electronic stability control (ESC)

Electronic stability control (ESC) incorporating the following systems:

- anti-lock braking system (ABS) and electronic brake force distribution (EBFD),
- emergency braking assistance (EBA),
- wheel anti-slip regulation (ASR) or traction control,
- dynamic stability control (DSC).

Definitions

Anti-lock braking system (ABS) and electronic brake force distribution (EBFD)

This system improves the stability and manoeuvrability of your vehicle when braking and contributes towards improved control on corners, in particular on poor or slippery road surfaces.
The ABS prevents wheel lock in the event of emergency braking.
The EBFD manages the braking pressure wheel by wheel.

Emergency braking assistance (EBA)

In an emergency, this system enables you to reach the optimum braking pressure more quickly and therefore reduce the stopping distance.
It is triggered according to the speed at which the brake pedal is pressed. This is felt by a reduction in the resistance of the pedal and an increase in the effectiveness of the braking.

Anti-slip regulation (ASR)

The ASR system (also known as Traction Control) optimises traction in order to limit wheel slip by acting on the brakes of the driving wheels and on the engine. It also improves the directional stability of the vehicle on acceleration.

Dynamic stability control (DSC)

If there is a difference between the path followed by the vehicle and that required by the driver, the DSC monitors each wheel and automatically acts on the brake of one or more wheels and on the engine to return the vehicle to the required path, within the limits of the laws of physics.

Snow driving assistance (Intelligent Traction Control)

Your vehicle has a system to help driving on snow: **Intelligent Traction Control**.
This automatic system continuously checks for situations of difficult surface adhesion that could make it difficult to move off or make progress on deep fresh snow or compacted snow.
In these situations, **Intelligent Traction Control** limits the amount of wheel slip to provide the best traction and trajectory control.
In extremely severe conditions (deep snow, mud…), it can be useful to temporarily deactivate the **wheel anti-slip regulation** system to allow a degree of wheel spin and so recover grip.
It is recommended that the system be reactivated as soon as possible.
Snow tyres are strongly recommended on surfaces offering low levels of adhesion.

Anti-lock braking system (ABS) and electronic brake force distribution (EBFD)

Operation



The fixed illumination of this warning lamp indicates that there is a fault with the ABS.

The vehicle retains conventional braking. Drive carefully at moderate speed.



When this warning lamp comes on, coupled with the **STOP** and ABS warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message, it indicates that there is a fault with the electronic brake force distribution (EBFD).

You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so.
In both cases, have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

When changing wheels (tyres and rims), make sure that these are approved for your vehicle.
Normal operation of the ABS may make itself felt by slight vibrations of the brake pedal.

In emergency braking, press very firmly without releasing the pressure.

Anti-slip regulation (ASR)



Activation

This system is activated automatically each time the vehicle is started.
It comes into operation in the event of a problem of grip.

This is indicated by the flashing of this warning lamp in the instrument panel.

Deactivation

In exceptional conditions (starting a vehicle which is bogged down, stuck in snow, on soft ground...), it may be advisable to deactivate the ASR system, so that the wheels can turn freely and regain grip.



☞ Press the **"ASR OFF"** button.

The indicator lamp in the button comes on and the following message appears in the instrument panel screen "ASR deactivated"*: the ASR system no longer acts on the operation of the engine.

Reactivation

The system is reactivated automatically each time the ignition is switched back on or from 12 mph (20 km/h).

☞ Press the **"ASR OFF"** button again to reactivate it manually.

Operating fault

If this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the instrument panel screen, this indicates a fault with the system.

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

* Depending on version.

Seat belts

Front seat belts



The front seat belts are fitted with a pretensioning and force limiting system.
This system improves safety in the front seats in the event of a front or side impact.
Depending on the severity of the impact, the pretensioning system instantly tightens the seat belts against the body of the occupants.
The pretensioning seat belts are active when the ignition is on.
The force limiter reduces the pressure of the seat belt on the chest of the occupant, so improving their protection.

Rear seat belts



The rear seats are each fitted with a seat belt, three-point anchorages with inertia reel and force limiter (except for the centre rear seat).

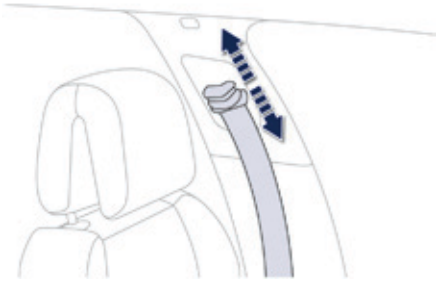


Fastening

- ☞ Pull the strap, then insert the tongue in the buckle.
- ☞ Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

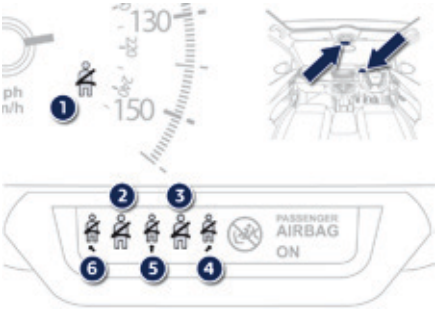
Unfastening

- ☞ Press the red button on the buckle.
- ☞ Guide the seat belt as it reels in.



Front seat belt height adjustment

☞ To adjust the anchorage point, squeeze the control and slide it until you find a notch.



Seat belt not fastened / unfastened warning lamps

1. Front and/or rear seat belts not fastened / unfastened warning lamp in the instrument panel.
2. Front left seat belt warning lamp.
3. Front right seat belt warning lamp.
4. Rear right seat belt warning lamp.
5. Rear centre seat belt warning lamp.
6. Rear left seat belt warning lamp.

From approximately 12 mph (20 km/h), the warning lamp(s) flash for two minutes accompanied by an audible signal. Once these two minutes have elapsed, the warning lamp(s) remain on until the driver or one or more passengers fasten their seat belt.

Front and rear seat belt warning lamps

On switching on the ignition, warning lamp **1** comes on in the instrument panel and the corresponding warning lamp (**2** to **6**) comes on in red in the passenger's seat belt and front airbag warning lamp display if the corresponding seat belt is not fastened or is unfastened.

Advice

The driver must ensure that passengers use the seat belts correctly and that they are all fastened before setting off.
Wherever you are seated in the vehicle, always fasten your seat belt, even for short journeys.
Do not interchange the seat belt buckles as they will not fulfil their role fully.
The seat belts are fitted with an inertia reel permitting automatic adjustment of the length of the strap to your size. The seat belt is stowed automatically when not in use.
Before and after use, ensure that the seat belt is reeled in correctly.
The lower part of the strap must be positioned as low as possible on the pelvis. The upper part must be positioned in the hollow of the shoulder.
The inertia reels are fitted with an automatic locking device which comes into operation in the event of a collision, emergency braking or if the vehicle rolls over. You can release the device by pulling the strap firmly and then releasing it so that it reels in slightly.

In order to be effective, a seat belt must:
- be tightened as close to the body as possible,
- be pulled in front of you with a smooth movement, checking that it does not twist,
- be used to restrain only one person,
- not bear any trace of cuts or fraying,
- not be converted or modified to avoid affecting its performance.

In accordance with current safety regulations, for all repairs on your vehicle's seat belts, go to a qualified workshop with the skills and equipment needed, which a PEUGEOT dealer is able to provide.
Have your seat belts checked regularly by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop, particularly if the straps show signs of damage.
Clean the seat belt straps with soapy water or a textile cleaning product, sold by PEUGEOT dealers.
After folding or moving a seat or rear bench seat, ensure that the seat belt is positioned and reeled in correctly.

Recommendations for children

Use a suitable child seat if the passenger is less than 12 years old or shorter than one and a half metres.
Never use the same seat belt to secure more than one person.
Never allow a child to travel on your lap.
For more information on child seats, refer to the corresponding section.

In the event of an impact

Depending on the nature and seriousness of the impact, the pretensioning device may be deployed before and independently of the airbags.
Deployment of the pretensioners is accompanied by a slight discharge of harmless smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system.
In all cases, the airbag warning lamp comes on.
Following an impact, have the seat belts system checked, and if necessary replaced, by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

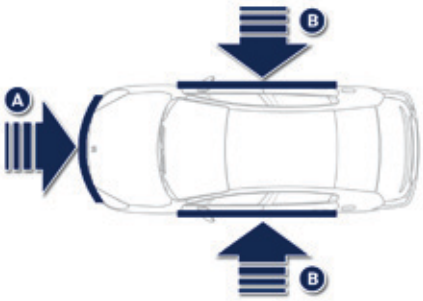
Airbags

General information

System designed to contribute towards improving the safety of the occupants (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of violent collisions. The airbags supplement the action of the seat belts fitted with force limiters (all except the centre rear passenger belt).
If a collision occurs, the electronic detectors record and analyse the front and side impacts sustained in the impact detection zones:

- in the case of a serious impact, the airbags are deployed instantly and contribute towards better protection of the occupants of the vehicle (with the exception of the rear centre passenger); immediately after the impact, the airbags deflate rapidly so that they do not hinder visibility or the exit of the occupants,
- in the case of a minor or rear impact or in certain roll-over conditions, the airbags may not be deployed; the seat belt alone contributes towards ensuring your protection in these situations.

The airbags do not operate when the ignition is switched off.
This equipment will only deploy once. If a second impact occurs (during the same or a subsequent accident), the airbag will not be deployed again.

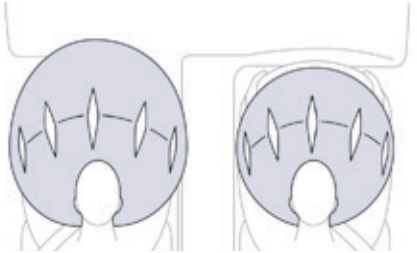


Impact detection zones

A. Front impact zone.
B. Side impact zone.

Deployment of one or more of the airbags is accompanied by a slight emission of smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system. This smoke is not harmful, but sensitive individuals may experience slight irritation.
The noise of detonation associated with the deployment of one or more airbags may result in a slight loss of hearing for a short time.

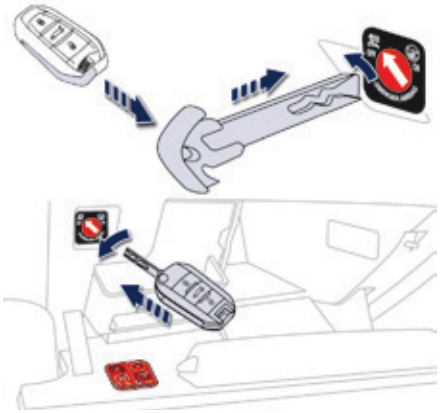
Front airbags



System which protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious front impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the head and thorax.
The driver's airbag is fitted in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is fitted in the dashboard above the glove box.

Deployment

The airbags are deployed, except the passenger's front airbag if it is deactivated, in the event of a serious front impact to all or part of the front impact zone **A**, in the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the front to the rear of the vehicle.
The front airbag inflates between the thorax and head of the front occupant of the vehicle and the steering wheel, driver's side, and the dashboard, passenger's side to cushion their forward movement.



Deactivation

Only the passenger's front airbag can be deactivated:

- ☞ insert the key in the passenger airbag deactivation switch,
- ☞ turn it to the **"OFF"** position,
- ☞ then, remove the key keeping the switch in the new position.

According to version, this warning lamp comes on either in the instrument panel or in the seat belt and passenger's front airbag warning lamp display when the ignition is on and until the airbag is reactivated.

! To assure the safety of your child, the passenger's front airbag must be deactivated when you install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger seat.
Otherwise, the child would risk being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were deployed.

Reactivation

When you remove the child seat, **with the ignition off**, turn the switch to the **"ON"** position to reactivate the airbag and so assure the safety of your front passenger in the event of an impact.

With the ignition on, this warning lamp comes on in the seat belt and passenger's front airbag warning lamp display for approximately one minute, if the passenger's front airbag is activated.

Operating fault

If this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible warning and a message in the instrument panel screen, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked. The airbags may no longer be deployed in the event of a serious impact.

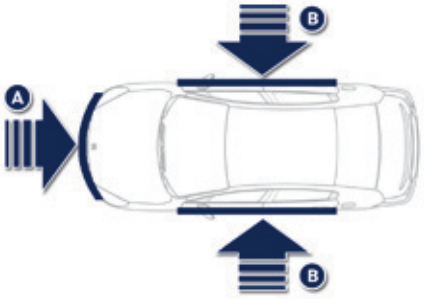
Lateral airbags



System which protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious side impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the chest, between the hip and the shoulder.
Each lateral airbag is fitted in the seat backrest frame, door side.

Deployment

A lateral airbag is deployed unilaterally in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.
The lateral airbag inflates between the hip and shoulder of the front occupant of the vehicle and the corresponding door trim panel.



Impact detection zones

A. Front impact zone.
B. Side impact zone.

Curtain airbags

System which protects the driver and passengers (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of a serious side impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the side of the head.
Each curtain airbag is built into the pillars and the upper passenger compartment area.

Deployment

The curtain airbag is deployed at the same time as the corresponding lateral airbag in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.
The curtain airbag inflates between the front or rear occupant of the vehicle and the windows.

Operating fault

If this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the instrument panel screen, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked. The airbags may no longer be deployed in the event of a serious impact.

! In the event of a minor impact or bump on the side of the vehicle or if the vehicle rolls over, the airbag may not be deployed.
In the event of a rear or front collision, the lateral and curtain airbags are not deployed.

! Advice

For the airbags to be fully effective, observe the safety recommendations below:

Sit in a normal upright position.
Wear a correctly adjusted seat belt.
Do not leave anything between the occupants and the airbags (a child, pet, object...), nor fix or attach anything close to the inflation trajectory of the airbags; this could cause injuries during their deployment.
Never modify the original definition of your vehicle, particularly in the area directly around the airbags.
After an accident or if the vehicle has been stolen or broken into, have the airbag systems checked.
All work on the airbag system must be carried out by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
Even if all of the precautions mentioned are observed, a risk of injury or of minor burns to the head, chest or arms when an airbag is deployed cannot be ruled out. The bag inflates almost instantly (within a few milliseconds) then deflates within the same time discharging the hot gas via openings provided for this purpose.

Front airbags

Do not drive holding the steering wheel by its spokes or resting your hands on the centre part of the wheel.
Passengers must not place their feet on the dashboard.
Do not smoke as deployment of the airbags can cause burns or the risk of injury from a cigarette or pipe.
Never remove or pierce the steering wheel or hit it violently.
Do not fit or attach anything to the steering wheel or dashboard, this could cause injuries with deployment of the airbags.

Lateral airbags

Use only approved covers on the seats, compatible with the deployment the lateral airbags. For information on the range of seat covers suitable for your vehicle, you can contact a PEUGEOT dealer.
For more information on accessories, refer to the corresponding section.
Do not fix or attach anything to the seat backs (clothing...). This could cause injury to the chest or arms if the lateral airbag is deployed.
Do not sit with the upper part of the body any nearer to the door than necessary.

Curtain airbags

Do not fix or attach anything to the roof. This could cause injury to the head if the curtain airbag is deployed.
If fitted on your vehicle, do not remove the grab handles installed on the roof, they play a part in securing the curtain airbags.

General points relating to child seats

Although one of PEUGEOT main criteria when designing your vehicle, the safety of your children also depends on you.

For maximum safety, please observe the following recommendations:

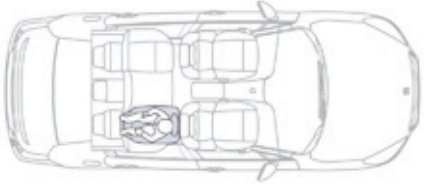
- in accordance with European regulations, **all children under the age of 12 or less than one and a half metres tall must travel in approved child seats suited to their weight**, on seats fitted with a seat belt or ISOFIX mountings*,
- **statistically, the safest seats in your vehicle for carrying children are the rear seats,**
- **a child weighing less than 9 kg must travel in the rearward facing position both in the front and in the rear.**

PEUGEOT recommends that children should travel in the **outer rear seats** of your vehicle:

- **rearward facing** up to the age of 3,
- **forward facing** over the age of 3.

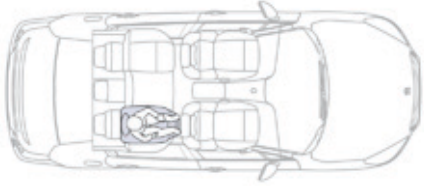
* The regulations on carrying children are specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in your country.

Child seat at the rear



Rearward facing

When a rearward facing child seat is installed **on a rear passenger seat**, move the vehicle's front seat forward and straighten the backrest so that the rearward facing child seat does not touch the vehicle's front seat.



Forward facing

When a forward facing child seat is installed **on a rear passenger seat**, move the vehicle's front seat forward and straighten the backrest so that the legs of the child in the forward facing child seat do not touch the vehicle's front seat.

Ensure that the seat belt is correctly tensioned.
For child seats with a support leg, ensure that this is in firm contact with the floor. If necessary, adjust the front seat of the vehicle.

Centre rear seat

A child seat with a support leg must never be installed on the **centre rear passenger seat**.

The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the protection of the child in the event of an accident.

Child seat at the front*



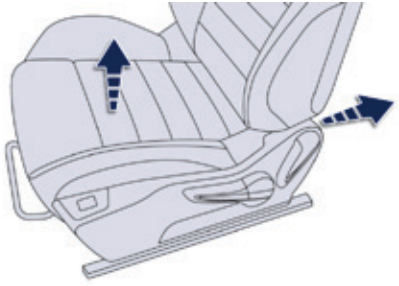
Rearward facing

When a rearward facing child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, adjust the seat to the fully back and highest position, with the backrest straightened.
The passenger's front airbag must be deactivated. Otherwise, **the child risks being seriously injured or killed if the airbag is deployed**.



Forward facing

When a forward facing child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, adjust the vehicle's seat to the fully back and highest position with seat backrest straightened and leave the passenger's front airbag activated.



Passenger seat in the fully back and highest position.

i Ensure that the seat belt is correctly tensioned.
For child seats with a support leg, ensure that the support leg is in firm and stable contact with the floor. If necessary, adjust the passenger seat.

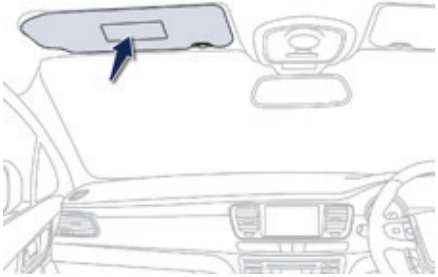
* Refer to the legislation in force in your country before carrying your child in this seating position.

Deactivating the passenger's front airbag

! Never install a rearward facing child restraint system on a seat protected by an active front airbag. This could cause the death of the child or serious injury.

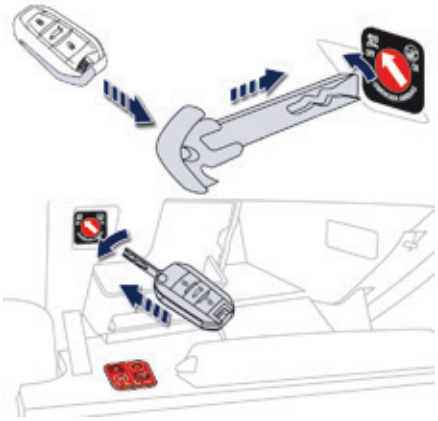
The warning label present on both sides of the passenger's sun visor repeats this advice. In line with current legislation, the following tables contain this warning in all of the languages required.







Passenger airbag OFF



i For information on deactivating the passenger's front airbag, refer to the "Airbags" section.

AR	لا يجب أبدا تركيب نظام لإجلاس الطفل الوجه باتجاه الوراء على مقعد سيارة مجهز بوسادة أمان هوائية أمامية مفعلة، فقد يؤدي هذا إلى التسبب بموت الطفل أو بإصابات خطيرة لديه.
BG	НИКОГА НЕ инсталирайте детско столче на седалка с АКТИВИРАНА предна ВЪЗДУШНА ВЪЗГЛАВНИЦА. Това може да причини СМЪРТ или СЕРИОЗНО НАРАНЯВАНЕ на детето.
CS	NIKDY neumisťujte dětské zádržné zařízení orientované směrem dozadu na sedadlo chráněné AKTIVOVANÝM čelním AIRBAGEM. Hrozí nebezpečí SMRTI DÍTĚTE nebo VÁŽNÉHO ZRANĚNÍ.
DA	Brug ALDRIG en bagudvendt barnestol på et sæde, der er beskyttet af en AKTIV AIRBAG. BARNET risikerer at blive ALVORLIGT KVÆSTET eller DRÆBT.
DE	Montieren Sie auf einem Sitz mit AKTIVIERTEM Front-Airbag NIEMALS einen Kindersitz oder eine Babyschale entgegen der Fahrtrichtung, das Kind könnte schwere oder sogar tödliche Verletzungen erleiden.
EL	Μη χρησιμοποιείτε ΠΟΤΕ παιδικό κάθισμα με την πλάτη του προς το εμπρός μέρος του αυτοκινήτου, σε μια θέση που προστατεύεται από ΜΕΤΩΠΙΚΟ αερόσακο που είναι ΕΝΕΡΓΟΣ. Αυτό μπορεί να έχει σαν συνέπεια το ΘΑΝΑΤΟ ή το ΣΟΒΑΡΟ ΤΡΑΥΜΑΤΙΣΜΟ του ΠΑΙΔΙΟΥ
EN	NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur
ES	NO INSTALAR NUNCA un sistema de retención para niños de espaldas al sentido de la marcha en un asiento protegido mediante un AIRBAG frontal ACTIVADO, ya que podría causar lesiones GRAVES o incluso la MUERTE del niño.
ET	Ärge MITTE KUNAGI paigaldage "seljaga sõidusuunas" lapseistet juhi kõrvalistmele, mille ESITURVAPADI on AKTIVEERITUD. Turvapadja avanemine võib last TÕSISELT või ELUOHTLIKULT vigastada.
FI	ÄLÄ KOSKAAN aseta lapsen turvaistuinta selkä ajosuuntaan istuimelle, jonka edessä suojana on käyttöön aktivoitu TURVATYYNY. Sen laukeaminen voi aiheuttaa LAPSEN KUOLEMAN tai VAKAVAN LOUKKAANTUMISEN.
FR	NE JAMAIS installer de système de retenue pour enfants faisant face vers l'arrière sur un siège protégé par un COUSSIN GONFLABLE frontal ACTIVÉ. Cela peut provoquer la MORT de l'ENFANT ou le BLESSER GRAVEMENT
HR	NIKADA ne postavljati dječju sjedalicu leđima u smjeru vožnje na sjedalo zaštićeno UKLJUČENIM prednjim ZRAČNIM JASTUKOM. To bi moglo uzrokovati SMRT ili TEŠKU OZLJEDU djeteta.
HU	SOHA ne használjon menetiránynak háttal beszerelt gyermekülést AKTIVÁLT (BEKAPCSOLT) FRONTLÉGZSÁKKAL védett ülésen. Ez a gyermek HALÁLÁT vagy SÚLYOS SÉRÜLÉSÉT okozhatja.
IT	NON installare MAI seggiolini per bambini posizionati in senso contrario a quello di marcia su un sedile protetto da un AIRBAG frontale ATTIVATO. Ciò potrebbe provocare la MORTE o FERITE GRAVI al bambino.

LT	NIEKADA nejrenkite vaiko prilaikymo priemonės su atgal atgręžtu vaiku ant sėdynės, kuri saugoma VEIKIANČIOS priekinės ORO PAGALVĖS. Išsiskleidus oro pagalvei vaikas gali būti MIRTINAI arba SUNKIAI TRAUMUOTAS.
LV	NEKAD NEuzstādiet uz aizmuguri vērstu bērnu sēdeklīti priekšējā pasažiera sēdvietā, kurā ir AKTIVIZĒTS priekšējais DROŠĪBAS GAISA SPILVENS. Tas var izraisīt BĒRNA NĀVI vai radīt NOPIETNUS IEVAINOJUMUS.
MT	Qatt m'ghandek thalli tifel/tifla marbut f'siggu dahru lejn l-Airbag attiva, ghaliex tista' tikkawza korriment serju jew anke mewt lit-tifel/tifla
NL	Plaats NOOIT een kinderzitje met de rug in de rijrichting op een zitplaats waarvan de AIRBAG is INGESCHAKELD. Bij het afgaan van de airbag kan het KIND LEVENSGEVAARLIJK GEWOND RAKEN
NO	Installer ALDRI et barnesete med ryggen mot kjøreretningen i et sete som er beskyttet med en frontal AKTIVERT KOLLISJONSPUTE, BARNET risikerer å bli DREPT eller HARDT SKADET.
PL	NIGDY nie instalować fotelika dziecięcego w pozycji "tyłem do kierunku jazdy" na siedzeniu wyposażonym w CZOŁOWĄ PODUSZKĘ POWIETRZNĄ w stanie AKTYWNYM. Może to doprowadzić do ŚMIERCI DZIECKA lub spowodować u niego POWAŻNE OBRAŻENIA CIAŁA.
PT	NUNCA instale um sistema de retenção para crianças de costas para a estrada num banco protegido por um AIRBAG frontal ACTIVADO. Esta instalação poderá provocar FERIMENTOS GRAVES ou a MORTE da CRIANÇA.
RO	Nu instalati NICIODATA un sistem de retinere pentru copii, dispus cu spatele in directia de mers, pe un loc din vehicul protejat cu AIRBAG frontal ACTIVAT. Aceasta ar putea provoca MOARTEA COPILULUI sau RANIREA lui GRAVA.
RU	ВО ВСЕХ СЛУЧАЯХ ЗАПРЕЩАЕТСЯ использовать обращенное назад детское удерживающее устройство на сиденье, защищенном ФУНКЦИОНИРУЮЩЕЙ ПОДУШКОЙ БЕЗОПАСНОСТИ, установленной перед этим сиденьем. Это может привести к ГИБЕЛИ РЕБЕНКА или НАНЕСЕНИЮ ЕМУ СЕРЬЕЗНЫХ ТЕЛЕСНЫХ ПОВРЕЖДЕНИЙ
SK	NIKDY neinštalujte detské zádržné zariadenie orientované smerom dozadu na sedadlo chránené AKTIVOVANÝM čelným AIRBAGOM. Mohlo by dôjsť k SMRTEĽNÉMU alebo VÁŽNEMU PORANENIU DIEŤAŤA.
SL	NIKOLI ne nameščajte otroškega sedeža s hrbtom v smeri vožnje, če je VARNOSTNA BLAZINA pred sprednjim sopotnikovim sedežem AKTIVIRANA. Takšna namestitev lahko povzroči SMRT OTROKA ali HUDE POŠKODBE.
SR	NIKADA ne koristite dečje sedište koje se okreće unazad na sedištu zaštićenim AKTIVNIM VAZDUŠNIM JASTUKOM ispred njega, jer mogu nastupiti SMRT ili OZBILJNA POVREDA DETETA.
SV	Passagerarkrockkudden fram MÅSTE vara avaktiverad om en bakåtvänd bilbarnstol installeras på denna plats. Annars riskerar barnet att DÖDAS eller SKADAS ALLVARLIGT.
TR	KESİNLKLE HAVA YASTIĞI AKTİF olan ön koltuğa yüzü arkaya dönük bir çocuk koltuğu yerleştirmeyiniz. Bu ÇOCUĞUN ÖLMESİNE veya ÇOK AĞIR YARALANMASINA sebep olabilir.

Child seats recommended by PEUGEOT

PEUGEOT offers a range of recommended child seats which are secured using a **three point seat belt**.

Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg		Group 1: from 9 to 18 kg	
	**L1** "RÖMER/BRITAX Baby-Safe Plus". Installed in the rearward facing position.		**L2** "RÖMER Duo Plus ISOFIX".
Groups 2 and 3: from 15 to 36 kg			
	**L5** "KLIPPAN Optima". From the age of approximately 6 years (22 kg), the booster is used on its own.		**L6** "RÖMER KIDFIX" Can be secured using the vehicle's ISOFIX mountings. The child is restrained by the seat belt.

Installing child seats attached using the seat belt

In accordance with European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing child seats secured using a seat belt and universally approved **(a)** in accordance with the weight of the child and the seat in the vehicle.

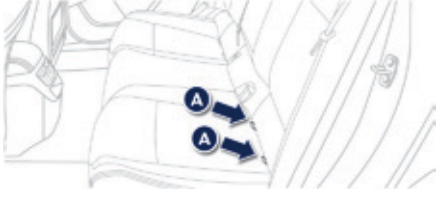
Weight of the child and indicative age				
Seat	**Under 13 kg** (groups 0 **(b)** and 0+) Up to approx 1 year	**From 9 to 18 kg** (group 1) 1 to 3 years approx	**From 15 to 25 kg** (group 2) 3 to 6 years approx	**From 22 to 36 kg** (group 3) 6 to 10 years approx
Front passenger seat **(c)** with height adjuster 	**U (R)**	**U (R)**	**U (R)**	**U (R)**
Front passenger seat **(c)** without height adjuster	**U**	**U**	**U**	**U**
Saloon				
Outer rear seats 	**U**	**U**	**U**	**U**
Centre rear seat 	**X**	**X**	**X**	**X**
SW and non-hybrid RHX				
Outer rear seats 	**U**	**U**	**U**	**U**
Centre rear seat 	**X**	**X**	**X**	**X**

a: universal child seat, child seat that can be installed in all vehicles using a seat belt.
b: group 0, from birth to 10 kg. Shells seats and baby carriers cannot be installed in the front passenger seat. When installed in the 2nd row, they may prevent the use of the other seats.
c: consult the legislation in force in your country before installing your child on this seat.
U: seat suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using a seat belt and universally approved, rearward facing and/or forward facing.
U (R): idem **U**, with the vehicle's seat adjusted to the highest position and as far back as possible.
X: seat position not suitable for installation of a child seat for the weight group indicated.

! Remove and stow the head restraint before installing a child seat with a backrest on a passenger seat. Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

"ISOFIX" mountings

Your vehicle has been approved in accordance with the **latest** ISOFIX **regulations**.
The seats, represented below, are fitted with regulation ISOFIX mountings.



There are three rings for each seat.

- Two rings **A**, located between the vehicle seat back and cushion, indicated by a label.
- A ring **B**, behind the seat, referred to as the **TOP TETHER** for fixing the upper strap.

The TOP TETHER is used to secure the upper strap of child seats that have one.
This arrangement reduces forward tipping of the child seat in the event of a front impact.



Saloon



SW and non-hybrid RHX

This ISOFIX mounting system provides fast, reliable and safe fitting of the child seat in your vehicle.
The **ISOFIX child seats** are fitted with two latches which are easily secured on the two rings **A**.
Some also have an **upper strap** which is attached to ring **B**.

To attach this strap, raise the vehicle seat's head restraint then pass the hook between its rods. Then fix the hook on ring **B** and tighten the upper strap.

! The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's protection in the event of an accident.

! Follow strictly the instructions for fitting child seats contained in their manufacturer's installation guide.

For information regarding the ISOFIX child seats which can be installed in your vehicle, refer to the table showing the locations for installing ISOFIX child seats.

ISOFIX child seats recommended by PEUGEOT

PEUGEOT offers a range of ISOFIX child seats listed and type approved for your vehicle.
Refer also to the child seat manufacturer's fitting instructions for information on installing and removing the seat.

"RÖMER Duo Plus ISOFIX" (size category: **B1**)	
Group 1: from 9 to 18 kg	
	Is installed only in the forward facing position. Is attached to the anchorage rings **A** and the upper anchorage ring **B**, referred to as the TOP TETHER, using an upper strap. Three seat body angles: sitting, reclining, lying down. We recommend the lying down position. This child seat can also be used on seats not equipped with ISOFIX mountings. In this case, it must be secured to the vehicle's seat by the three-point seat belt. Adjust the position of the vehicle's front seat so that the child's feet are not touching the backrest.

Baby P2C Mini and its ISOFIX base (size categories: **C, D, E**)
Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg
 Installed rearward facing using an ISOFIX base which is attached to the anchorage rings **A**. The base has a support leg, adjustable for height, which sits on the vehicle's floor. This seat can also be secured with a seat belt. In this case only the seat shell is used.

"Baby P2C Midi" and its ISOFIX base (size categories: **D, C, A, B, B1**)
Group 1: from 9 to 18 kg
 Installed rearward facing using an ISOFIX base which is attached to the anchorage rings **A**. The base has a support leg, adjustable for height, which sits on the vehicle's floor. This child seat can also be used forward facing. This seat can **not** be secured with a seat belt. We recommend that you use the seat in the rearward facing position up to the age of 3 years.

Follow the instructions for fitting child seats contained in the seat manufacturer's installation guide.
The ISOFIX BABY P2C base must be installed in a way that the ISOFIX latches 3, 4 and 5 are visible; the support leg must have 6 holes visible.

Locations for installing ISOFIX child seats

In accordance with European Regulations, this table indicates the options for installing ISOFIX child seats on seats in the vehicle fitted with ISOFIX mountings.
In the case of universal and semi-universal ISOFIX child seats, the ISOFIX size category, determined by a letter from **A** to **G**, is indicated on the child seat next to the ISOFIX logo.

	Weight of the child / indicative age									
	Less than 10 kg (group 0) Up to approx. 6 months		**Less than 10 kg (group 0) Less than 13 kg (group 0+)** Up to approx. 1 year			**From 9 to 18 kg (group 1)** From approx. 1 to 3 years				
Type of ISOFIX child seat	**Cot**		**rearward facing**			**rearward facing**		**forward facing**		
ISOFIX size category	**F**	**G**	**C**	**D**	**E**	**C**	**D**	**A**	**B**	**B1**
Front passenger seat 	Not Isofix									
Saloon										
Outer rear seats 	**X**		**IL-SU**			**IL-SU**		**IUF IL-SU**		
Centre rear seat 	Not Isofix									
SW and non-hybrid RXH										
Outer rear seats 	**X**		**IL-SU**			**IL-SU**		**IUF IL-SU**		
Centre rear seat 	Not Isofix									

IUF: seat suitable for the installation of an **I**sofix **U**niversal seat, **F**orward facing secured using the upper strap.
IL-SU: seat suitable for the installation of an **I**sofix **S**emi-**U**niversal seat either:
- rearward facing fitted with an upper strap or a support leg,
- forward facing fitted with a support leg,
- a shell seat fitted with an upper strap or a support leg.

For advice on securing of the upper strap, refer to the "Isofix mountings" section.
X: seat not suitable for the installation of a child seat or shell for the weight group indicated.

Recommendations

Child seats

The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's protection in the event of an accident.
Check that there is no seat belt or seat belt buckle under the child seat as this could destabilise it.
Remember to fasten the seat belts or the child seat harnesses **keeping the slack** in relation to the child's body **to a minimum**, even for short journeys.
For the installation of a child seat using a seat belt, ensure that this is well tensioned on the child seat and that it is holding the child seat firmly against the seat of your vehicle. If your front passenger seat is adjustable, move it forward if necessary.
At the rear seats, always leave sufficient space between the front seat and:

- a rearward facing child seat,
- the feet of a child seated in a forward facing child seat.

For this, move the front seat forward and if necessary straighten its backrest.

For optimum installation of the forward facing child seat, ensure that the back of the child seat is as close as possible to the backrest of the vehicle's seat, or in contact if possible.
The head restraint must be removed before installing a child seat with a backrest on the passenger seat.
Ensure that the head restraint is stowed or attached securely so that it is not thrown around the vehicle in the event of sharp braking.
Refit the head restraint as soon as the child seat is removed.

Children at the front

The legislation on carrying a child on the front passenger seat is specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in the country in which you are driving.
Deactivate the passenger's front airbag when a rearward facing child seat is installed on the front passenger seat. Otherwise, the child would risk being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were deployed.

Installing a booster cushion

The chest part of the seat belt must be positioned on the child's shoulder without touching the neck.
Ensure that the lap part of the seat belt passes correctly over the child's thighs.
PEUGEOT recommends the use of a booster seat which has a back, fitted with a seat belt guide at shoulder level.

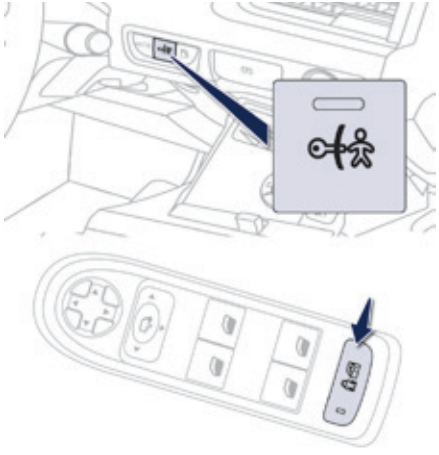
As a safety precaution, do not leave:

- one or more children alone and unsupervised in a vehicle,
- a child or an animal in a vehicle which is exposed to the sun, with the windows closed,
- the keys within reach of children inside the vehicle.

To prevent accidental opening of the doors, use the child lock.
Take care not to open the rear windows by more than one third.
To protect young children from the rays of the sun, fit side blinds on the rear windows.

Electric child lock

Remote control system to prevent opening of the rear doors using their interior controls and use of the rear electric windows.



Switching on

☞ With the ignition on, press this button.

The indicator lamp in the button comes on, accompanied by a message to confirm that the child lock is on.

This indicator lamp remains on until the child lock is switched off.

It is still possible to open the doors from the outside and operate the rear electric windows from the driver's control panel.

Switching off

☞ With the ignition on, press this button again.

The indicator lamp in the button goes off, accompanied by a message to confirm that the child lock is off.

This indicator lamp remains off while the child lock is switched off.

! Any other status of the indicator lamp indicates a fault with the electric child lock.
Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! This system is independent and in no circumstances does it take the place of the central locking control.
Check the state of the child lock each time you switch on the ignition.
Always remove the key from the ignition when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.
In the event of a serious impact, the electric child lock is switched off automatically to permit the exit of the rear passengers.

Driving recommendations

Observe the driving regulations and remain vigilant whatever the traffic conditions.
Pay close attention to the traffic and keep your hands on the wheel so that you are ready to react at any time to any eventuality.
On a long journey, a break every two hours is strongly recommended.
In difficult weather, drive smoothly, anticipate the need to brake and increase the distance from other vehicles.

Driving on flooded roads

We strongly advise against driving on flooded roads, as this could cause serious damage to the engine or gearbox, as well as to the electrical systems of your vehicle.

If you are obliged to drive through water:



- check that the depth of water does not exceed 15 cm, taking account of waves that might be generated by other users,
- deactivate the Stop & Start system,
- drive as slowly as possible without stalling. In all cases, do not exceed 6 mph (10 km/h),
- do not stop and do not switch off the engine.

On leaving the flooded road, as soon as circumstances allow, make several light brake applications to dry the brake discs and pads.
If in doubt on the state of your vehicle, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Important!

! Never drive with the parking brake applied - Risk of overheating and damage to the braking system!
Do not park or run the engine when stationary in areas where inflammable substances and materials (dry grass, dead leaves...) might come into contact with the hot exhaust system - Risk of fire!

! Never leave a vehicle unsupervised with the engine running. If you have to leave your vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake and put the gearbox into neutral or position **N** or **P**, depending on the type of gearbox.

When towing

Distribution of loads

☞ Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heaviest items are as close as possible to the axle and the nose weight approaches the maximum permitted without exceeding it.

Air density decreases with altitude, thus reducing engine performance. Above 1 000 metres, the maximum towed load must be reduced by 10 % for every 1 000 metres of altitude.

i For more information on weights (and the towed loads which apply to your vehicle) refer to the corresponding section.

Side wind

☞ Take into account the increased sensitivity to side wind.

Cooling

Towing a trailer on a slope increases the temperature of the coolant.

As the fan is electrically controlled, its cooling capacity is not dependent on the engine speed.

☞ To lower the engine speed, reduce your speed.

The maximum towed load on a long incline depends on the gradient and the ambient temperature.

In all cases, keep a check on the coolant temperature.



☞ If the warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp come on, stop the vehicle and switch off the engine as soon as possible.

Braking

Towing a trailer increases the braking distance.

To avoid overheating of the brakes, the use of engine braking is recommended.

Tyres

☞ Check the tyre pressures of the towing vehicle and of the trailer, observing the recommended pressures.

Lighting

☞ Check the electrical lighting and signalling on the trailer and the hadlamp beam height of your vehicle.

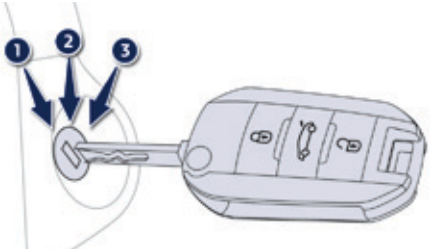
For more information on adjusting the headlamp beam height, refer to the corresponding section.

i The rear parking sensors will be deactivated automatically if a genuine PEUGEOT towbar is used.

Starting-switching off the engine using the remote control key

Place the gear lever in neutral.

Ignition switch



1. **Stop** position.
2. **Ignition on** position.
3. **Starting** position.

To ensure the correct operation and the durability of the engine and gearbox, when the ambient temperature is below -23° C the engine should be left running at idle for four minutes before moving off.

Starting

The parking brake must be applied.



With a **manual gearbox**, place the gear lever in neutral then fully depress the clutch pedal.

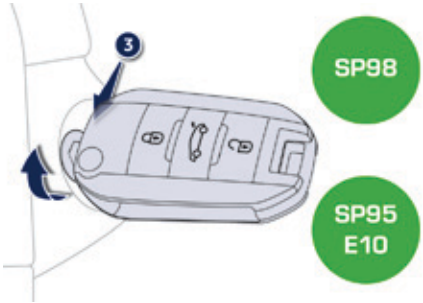


With an **automatic gearbox**, place the gear lever in position **N** or **P** then press the brake pedal firmly.

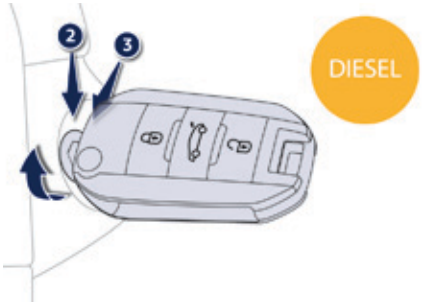


☞ Insert the key in the ignition switch. The system recognises the starting code.
☞ Unlock the steering column by simultaneously turning the steering wheel and the key.

i In certain circumstances, you may have to apply some force to turn the wheels (if the wheels are against a kerb, for example).



☞ With a petrol engine, operate the starter motor by turning the key to position **3** until the engine starts, without pressing the accelerator. Once the engine starts, release the key.



☞ With a Diesel engine, turn the key to position **2**, ignition on, to operate the engine pre-heating.

☞ Wait until this warning lamp goes off in the instrument panel then operate the starter motor by turning the key to position **3** until the engine starts, without pressing the accelerator. Once the engine starts, release the key.

In wintry conditions, the pre-heater warning lamp will stay on for a longer period.
When the engine is hot, the warning lamp does not come on.

If the engine does not start straight away, switch off the ignition.
Wait a few moments before trying again. If the engine does not start after a few attempts, do not keep trying: you risk damaging the starter motor and the engine.
Call on a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

In temperate conditions, do not leave the engine running to warm up, but set off straight away and drive at moderate speed.

Never leave the engine running in an enclosed area without adequate ventilation: internal combustion engines emit toxic exhaust gases, such as carbon monoxide. Danger of intoxication and death.
In very severe wintry conditions (temperatures below -23°C), to ensure the correct operation and the durability of the mechanical components of your vehicle, the engine and gearbox, it is necessary to leave the engine running for 4 minutes before moving off.

Switching off

- ☞ Immobilise the vehicle.
- ☞ Turn the key fully towards you to position **1 (Stop)**.
- ☞ Remove the key from the ignition switch.
- ☞ To lock the steering column, turn the steering wheel until it locks.

To facilitate unlocking of the steering wheel, it is recommended that you place the wheels in the straight ahead position before switching off the engine.

- ☞ Check that the parking brake is correctly applied, particularly when parking on a slope.



- With a manual parking brake, the lever must be pulled up.



- With an electric parking brake, the indicator lamp in the control lever must be on.

Never switch off the ignition until the vehicle has been brought to a complete stop.

When leaving the vehicle, remove the key and lock the doors.

Switching off the engine leads to a loss of braking assistance.

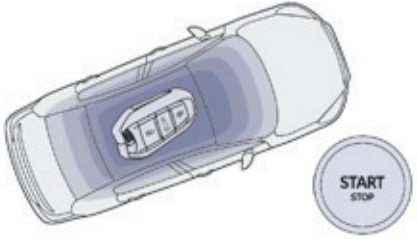
Avoid attaching heavy objects to the key, which would weigh down on its blade in the ignition switch and could cause a malfunction.

Key left in the ignition switch

There is an audible signal on opening the driver's door if the key has been left in the ignition switch.

Starting-switching off the engine using the electronic key

Starting



☞ With the electronic key inside the vehicle, press the brake pedal on vehicles with automatic gearbox, or depress the clutch pedal fully on vehicles with a manual gearbox, then maintain pressure until the engine starts.

START STOP

☞ Press the "**START/STOP**" button.

☞ The steering column is unlocked and the engine starts more or less immediately.

! For Diesel vehicles, in very cold weather the engine will not start until the pre-heater warning lamp has gone off.
If this warning lap comes on after pressing the "**START/STOP**" button, you should maintain pressure on the brake or clutch pedal until the warning lamp goes off and not press the "**START/STOP**" button, until the engine starts.

i If one of the starting conditions is not met, a reminder message appears in the instrument panel screen. In some circumstances, it is necessary to turn the steering wheel slightly while pressing the "START/STOP" button to assist unlocking of the steering; a message warns you when this is needed.

Switching off

☞ Immobilise the vehicle.

START STOP

☞ With the electronic key inside the vehicle, press the "**START/STOP**" button.

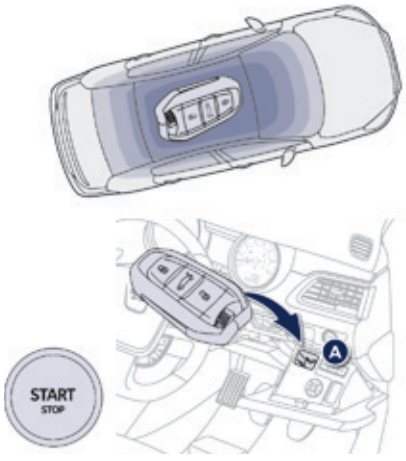
The engine stops and the steering column is locked.

i If the vehicle is not immobilised, the engine will not stop.

Ignition on (accessory) position

With the electronic key inside the vehicle, press the "START/STOP" button, with no action on the pedals, to switch the ignition on or off and so allow the use of the ancillary equipment.

i If you use the accessory position for too long, the system will automatically go into energy economy mode to avoid discharging the battery.



Back-up starting using the electronic key

When the electronic key is in the recognition zone but your vehicle does not start after pressing the "START/STOP" button:

- ☞ Open the housing below the "START/STOP" button.
- ☞ Insert the electronic key in the housing **A**.
- ☞ Press the "START/STOP" button.

i Once the engine has started, you can remove the electronic key and close the housing.



Emergency switch-off using the electronic key

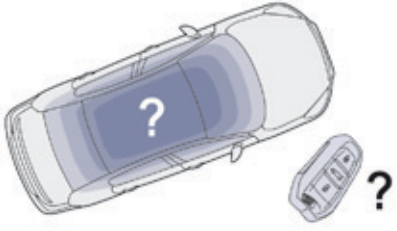
In the event of an emergency only, the engine can be switched off without conditions. To do this, press and hold the "START/STOP" button for about 3 seconds.

In this case the steering column locks as soon as the vehicle stops.

If the electronic key is no longer in the recognition zone when you request switching off the engine, a message appears in the instrument panel.

- ☞ Press and hold the "START/STOP" button for about 3 seconds if you want to force switching off the engine (note that restarting will not be possible without the key).

! The electronic key must always remain inside the vehicle while in use.



Electronic key not recognised

If the electronic key is not in the recognition zone when you close a door or (later) switch off the engine, a message appears in the instrument panel.



- ☞ Press and hold the "START/STOP" button for about 3 seconds if you want to force the engine to stop.

Anti-theft protection

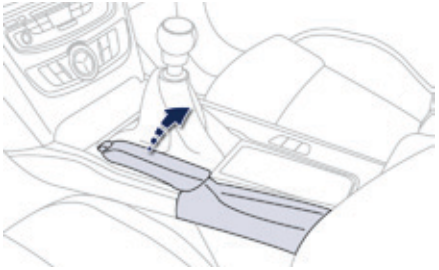
Electronic engine immobiliser

The keys contain an electronic chip which has a secret code. When the ignition is switched on, this code must be recognised in order for starting to be possible.
This electronic engine immobiliser locks the engine management system a few minutes after the ignition is switched off and prevents starting of the engine by anyone who does not have the key.

In the event of a malfunction, you are informed by a message in the instrument panel screen. In this case, your vehicle does not start; contact a PEUGEOT dealer as soon as possible.

! For reasons of safety and theft protection, do not leave your electronic key in the vehicle, even when you are close to it. It is recommended that you keep it on your person.

Manual parking brake



Application

☞ With your foot on the brake pedal, pull the parking brake lever up to immobilise your vehicle.

Release

☞ With your foot on the brake pedal, pull the parking brake lever up gently, press the release button then lower the lever fully.

When the vehicle is being driven, if this warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp come on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message, indicating that the parking brake is still on or has not been fully released.

! When parking on a slope, direct your wheels against the kerb, apply the parking brake, engage a gear with a manual gearbox or position **P** with an automatic gearbox and switch off the ignition.

i Pressing the brake pedal makes it easier to apply or release the manual parking brake.

Electric parking brake



The electric parking brake combines 2 operating modes:

- **Automatic Application/Release**
  Application is automatic when the engine stops, release is automatic on use of the accelerator (this mode is activated by default),
- **Manual Application/Release**
  Manual application of the parking brake is by pulling control lever **A**.
  Manual release is by pushing and releasing the control lever, while pressing the brake pedal.

When the driver's door is opened, there is an audible signal and a message is displayed if the brake is not applied.

Programming the mode

Depending on the country of sale of the vehicle, the automatic application when the engine is switched off and the automatic release when you press the accelerator can be deactivated.



Activation / deactivation is done via the menu in the instrument panel screen.

The parking brake is then applied and released manually.



If this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, the automatic mode is deactivated.

! It is recommended that you do not apply the parking brake in very cold conditions (ice) and during towing (breakdown, caravan...). Deactivate the automatic functions and release the parking brake manually.

Manual application

With the vehicle stationary, to apply the parking brake whether the engine is running or off, **pull** control lever **A**.

The application of the parking brake is confirmed by:



- lighting of the braking warning lamp and of the **P** warning lamp in the control lever **A**,



- display of the message "Parking brake on".

When the driver's door is opened with the engine running, there is an audible signal and a message is displayed if the parking brake has not been applied, unless the gear lever is in position **P** (Park) in the case of an automatic gearbox.

! Before leaving the vehicle, check that parking brake warning lamps in the instrument panel and the control lever **A** are on, not flashing.

Manual release



With the ignition on or the engine running, to release the parking brake, **press** the **brake pedal**, **pull** then release control lever **A**.
The full release of the parking brake is confirmed by:

- the braking warning lamp and the **P** warning lamp in the control lever **A** going off,
- display of the message "Parking brake off".

If you pull the control lever **A** without pressing the brake pedal, the parking brake will not be released and a message appears in the instrument panel.

Maximum application

If necessary, you can make a **maximum application** of the parking brake. It is obtained by means of a **long pull** on control lever **A**, until you see the message "Parking brake applied fully" and an audible signal is heard.
Maximum application is essential:

- in the case of a vehicle towing a caravan or a trailer, if the automatic functions are activated but you are applying the parking brake manually,
- when the slope you are parked on may vary (e.g. on a ferry, on a lorry, during towing).

In the case of towing, a loaded vehicle or parking on a gradient, make a maximum application of the parking brake then turn the front wheels towards the pavement and engage a gear when you park.
After a maximum application, the release time will be longer.

Automatic application, engine off

With the vehicle stationary, the parking brake **is automatically applied when the engine is switched off.**
The application of the parking brake is confirmed by:

- illumination of the braking warning lamp and of the **P** warning lamp in the control lever **A**,
- display of the message "Parking brake on".

Before leaving the vehicle, check that parking brake warning lamps in the instrument panel and in the control lever **A** are on fixed (not flashing).
Never leave a child alone inside the vehicle with the ignition on, as they could release the parking brake.

Automatic release

The electric parking brake **releases automatically and progressively** when you press the accelerator:

- ☞ **Manual gearbox:** press down fully on the clutch pedal, engage first gear or reverse, press on the accelerator pedal and move off.
- ☞ **Automatic gearbox:** select position **D**, **M** or **R** then press on the accelerator pedal.

Full release of the parking brake is confirmed by:



- the braking warning lamp and the **P** warning lamp in the control lever **A** going off,



- display of the message "Parking brake off".

! When stationary, with the engine running, do not press the accelerator pedal unnecessarily, as you may release the parking brake.

Immobilising the vehicle, engine running

With the engine running and the vehicle stationary, in order to immobilise the vehicle it is essential to **manually** apply the parking brake by **pulling** control lever **A**.
The application of the parking brake is confirmed by:



- illumination of the braking warning lamp and of the **P** warning lamp in the control lever **A**,



- display of the message "Parking brake on".

When the driver's door is opened, a loud beep is heard and a message is displayed if the parking brake has not been applied, unless the gear lever is in position **P** (Park) in the case of an automatic gearbox.

! Before leaving the vehicle, check that parking brake warning lamps in the instrument panel and the control lever **A** are on fixed, not flashing.

Particular situations

In certain situations (e.g. starting the engine), the parking brake can automatically alter its force. This is normal operation.
To advance your vehicle a few centimetres without starting the engine, but with the ignition on, press on the brake pedal and release the parking brake **by pushing** then **releasing** control lever **A**. The full release of the parking brake is confirmed by the warning lamps in the control lever **A** and in the instrument panel going off and display of the message "Parking brake off".
If a parking brake fault occurs **while applied** or if the battery runs flat, an emergency release is always possible.
In order to ensure correct operation and so your safety, the number of successive application/release operations of the parking brake is limited to eight.
In the event of abuse, you are alerted by a message "Parking brake faulty" and a warning lamp flashes.

Emergency braking



In the event of a failure of the main service brake, a continuous pull on the control lever **A** will stop the vehicle.
The dynamic stability control provides stability during emergency braking.
If the emergency braking malfunctions, the message "Parking brake control faulty" will be displayed.

If a failure of the DSC system is signalled by the lighting of this warning lamp, then braking stability is not guaranteed.
In this event, stability must be assured by the driver by repeating alternate "pull-release" actions on the control lever **A**.

! The emergency braking must only be used in exceptional circumstances.

! In the event of a battery failure, the parking brake can no longer be operated.
As a safety measure, if the parking brake is not applied, immobilise the vehicle by engaging a gear or by placing a chock against one of the wheels.
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Operating faults

If the electric parking brake fault warning lamp comes on together with one or more of the warning lamps presented in these tables, place the vehicle in a safe condition (on level ground, gear engaged) and contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.

Situations	Consequences
Display of the message "**Parking brake fault**" and of the following warning lamps: 	- The automatic functions are deactivated. - Hill start assist is not available. - The electric parking brake can only be used manually.
Display of the message "**Parking brake fault**" and of the following warning lamps: 	- Manual release of the electric parking brake is only available by pressing the accelerator pedal and releasing the control lever. - Hill start assist is not available. - The automatic functions and the manual application are still available.

Situations	Consequences
Display of the message "**Parking brake fault**" and of the following warning lamps:  and possibly  flashing.	- The automatic functions are deactivated. - Hill start assist is not available. To apply the electric parking brake: ☞ immobilise the vehicle and switch off the ignition. ☞ pull the control for at least 5 seconds or until application is complete. ☞ switch on the ignition and check that the electric parking brake warning lamps come on. The application is slower than during normal operation. To release the electric parking brake: ☞ switch on the ignition. ☞ push the control lever and hold it for approximately 3 seconds then release it. If the braking warning lamp is flashing or if the warning lamps do not come on with the ignition on, these procedures will not work. Place the vehicle on level ground and have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
Display of the message "**Parking brake fault**" and of the following warning lamps:  and possibly  flashing.	- Only the automatic application on switching off the engine and automatic release on acceleration functions are available. - The manual application/release of the electric parking brake and the emergency braking are not available.
Display of the message "**Battery charge fault**". 	- You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Switch off and immobilise your vehicle (if necessary, place the a chock under a wheel). - Apply the electric parking brake before switching off the engine.

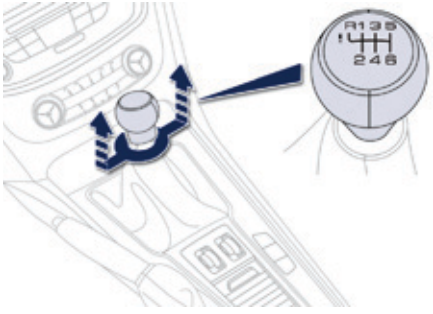
6-speed manual gearbox

Engaging 5th or 6th gear

☞ Move the lever fully to the right to engage 5th or 6th gear.

! Failure to observe this procedure may cause permanent damage to the gearbox (engaging 3rd or 4th gear by mistake).

Engaging reverse gear



☞ Raise the ring under the knob and move the gear lever to the left then forwards.

! Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.

i As a safety precaution and to facilitate starting of the engine:
- always select neutral,
- press the clutch pedal.

! When traversing a flooded road or a ford, drive at walking pace.

Gear shift indicator*

System which reduces fuel consumption by recommending the most appropriate gear.

Operation

Depending on the driving situation and your vehicle's equipment, the system may advise you to skip one (or more) gear(s). You can follow this instruction without engaging the intermediate gears.
The gear engagement recommendations must not be considered compulsory. In fact, the configuration of the road, the amount of traffic and safety remain determining factors when choosing the best gear. Therefore, the driver remains responsible for deciding whether or not to follow the advice given by the system.
This function cannot be deactivated.

On BlueHDi Diesel 150 versions with manual gearbox, the system may suggest changing into neutral so that the engine can go into standby (STOP mode with Stop & Start), in certain driving conditions. In this case, **N** is displayed in the instrument panel.

With an automatic gearbox, the system is only active in manual mode.

Example:



- You are in third gear.



- You press the accelerator pedal.



- The system may suggest that you engage a higher gear.

The information appears in the instrument panel in the form of an arrow.

On vehicle fitted with a manual gearbox, the arrow may be accompanied by the gear recommended.

The system adapts its gear change recommendation according to the driving conditions (slope, load, ...) and the demands of the driver (power, acceleration, braking, ...).
The system never suggests:
- engaging first gear,
- engaging reverse gear.

* Depending on engine.

"Porsche Tiptronic System" automatic gearbox

Six speed automatic gearbox which offers a choice between the comfort of fully automatic operation, enhanced by sport and snow programmes, or manual gear changing.
Four driving modes are offered:

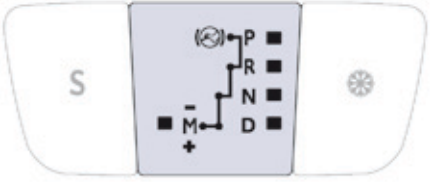
- **automatic** operation for electronic management of the gears by the gearbox,
- **sport** programme for a more dynamic style of driving,
- **snow** programme to improve driving when traction is poor,
- **manual** operation for sequential changing of the gears by the driver.

Gear lever



1. **"S" (sport)** programme switch.
2. "❄" **(snow)** programme switch.

Gear selection gate



P. Park.
- Immobilisation of the vehicle, parking brake on or off.
- Starting the engine.

R. Reverse.
- Reversing manoeuvres, vehicle stationary, engine at idle.

N. Neutral.
- Immobilisation of the vehicle, parking brake on.
- Starting the engine.

D. Automatic operation.

M.+ / - Manual operation with sequential changing of the six gears.

☞ Pull backwards to change up through the gears.

or

☞ Push forwards to change down through the gears.

Steering mounted controls



+. Control paddle to change up, to the right of the steering wheel.

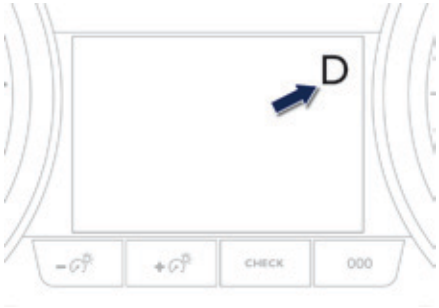
☞ Press the back of **"+"** steering mounted paddle to change up.

-. Control paddle to change down, to the left of the steering wheel.

☞ Press the back of the **"-"** steering mounted paddle to change down.

The steering mounted control paddles cannot be used to select neutral or to select or come out of reverse.

Displays in the instrument panel



When you move the lever in the gate to select a position, the corresponding indicator comes on in the instrument panel.

P. Park
R. Reverse
N. Neutral
D. Drive (Automatic driving)
S. **Sport** programme
❄. **Snow** programme
1 to 6. Gear engaged during manual operation
-. Invalid value during manual operation

Moving off

☞ With your foot on the brake, select position **P** or **N**.
☞ Start the engine.

If this procedure is not followed, there is an audible signal, accompanied by a message in the instrument panel screen.

☞ With the engine running, press the brake pedal.
☞ Release the parking brake, unless it is programmed to automatic mode.
☞ Select position **R**, **D** or **M**.
☞ Gradually release the brake pedal.

The vehicle moves off immediately.

i If position **N** is engaged inadvertently while driving, allow the engine to return to idle then engage position **D** to accelerate.

! When the engine is running at idle, with the brakes released, if position **R**, **D** or **M** is selected, the vehicle moves even without the accelerator being pressed.
When the engine is running, never leave children in the vehicle without supervision.
When carrying out maintenance with the engine running, apply the parking brake and select position **P**.

Automatic operation

☞ Select position **D** for **automatic** changing of the six gears.

The gearbox then operates in auto-adaptive mode, without any intervention on the part of the driver. It continuously selects the most suitable gear according to the style of driving, the profile of the road and the load in the vehicle.

For maximum acceleration without touching the lever, press the accelerator pedal down fully (kick down). The gearbox changes down automatically or maintains the gear selected until the maximum engine speed is reached.

On braking, the gearbox changes down automatically to provide efficient engine braking.

If you release the accelerator sharply, the gearbox will not change to a higher gear for safety reasons.

! Never select position **N** while the vehicle is moving.
Never select positions **P** or **R** unless the vehicle is completely stationary.

Sport and snow programmes

These two special programmes supplement the automatic operation in very specific conditions of use.

Sport "S"

☞ Press the **"S"** switch, after starting the engine.

The gearbox automatically favours a dynamic style of driving.



S appears in the instrument panel.

Snow "❄"

☞ Press the "❄" switch, after starting the engine.

The gearbox adapts to driving on slippery roads.

This programme improves starting and drive when traction is poor.



❄ appears in the instrument panel.

Return to automatic operation

☞ At any time, press the button selected (**S** or "❄") again at any time to quit the programme engaged and return to auto-adaptive mode.

Creep function (moving without using the accelerator)

This function provides great flexibility in manoeuvring the vehicle at low speed (when parking, in traffic jams, …).

With the engine at idle, parking brake released and position **D**, **M** or **R** selected, the **vehicle moves** as soon as you take your foot off the brake pedal (even without pressing the accelerator).

For your safety, this function will be activated only if you press the brake pedal when changing from forward drive to reverse.

It is deactivated on opening the driver's door. Closing the door then pressing the brake or accelerator pedal, reactivates the function.

! Never leave children inside the vehicle without supervision when the engine is running.

Manual operation

- ☞ Select position **M** for **sequential** changing of the six gears.
- ☞ Pull the lever towards the **+** sign to change up a gear.
- ☞ Push the lever towards the **-** sign to change down a gear.

It is only possible to change from one gear to another if the vehicle speed and engine speed permit; otherwise, the gearbox will operate temporarily in automatic mode.



D disappears and the gears engaged appear in succession in the instrument panel.

If the engine speed is too low or too high, the gear selected flashes for a few seconds, then the actual gear engaged is displayed.
It is possible to change from position **D** (automatic) to position **M** (manual) at any time.
When the vehicle is stationary or moving very slowly, the gearbox selects gear **M1** automatically.
The sport and snow programmes do not operate in manual mode.

Invalid value during manual operation



This symbol is displayed if a gear is not engaged correctly (selector between two positions).

Stopping the vehicle

Before switching off the engine, you can engage position **P** or **N** to place the gearbox in neutral.
In both cases, apply the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle, unless it is programmed to automatic mode.

If the lever is not in position **P**, when the driver's door is opened or approximately 45 seconds after the ignition is switched off, there is an audible signal and a message appears.

☞ Return the lever to position **P**; the audible signal stops and the message disappears.

Operating fault

SERVICE When the ignition is on, a message appears in the instrument panel screen to indicate a gearbox fault.
In this case, the gearbox switches to back-up mode and is locked in 3rd gear. You may feel a substantial knock when changing from **P** to **R** and from **N** to **R**. This will not cause any damage to the gearbox.
Do not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h), local speed restrictions permitting.
Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

You risk damaging the gearbox:

- if you press the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time,
- if you force the lever from position **P** to another position when the battery is flat.

To reduce fuel consumption when stationary for long periods with the engine running (traffic jam...), position the gear lever at **N** and apply the parking brake, unless it is programmed in automatic mode.

Stop & Start

The Stop & Start system puts the engine temporarily into standby - STOP mode - during stops in the traffic (red lights, traffic jams, or other...). The engine restarts automatically - START mode - as soon as you want to move off. The restart takes place instantly, quickly and silently.
Perfect for urban use, the Stop & Start system reduces fuel consumption and exhaust emissions as well as the noise level when stationary.

Operation

Going into engine STOP mode

ECO The **"ECO"** indicator lamp comes on in the instrument panel and the engine goes into standby:

- **with a manual gearbox,** at speeds below 12 mph (20 km/h), or vehicle stationary with the e-THP 165 version, when you put the gear lever into neutral and release the clutch pedal,
- **with an automatic gearbox,** vehicle stationary, when you press the brake pedal or you put the gear selector in position **N**.

If your vehicle is fitted with the system, a time counter calculates the sum of the periods in STOP mode during a journey. It rests itself to zero every time the ignition is switched on with the key.

For your comfort, during parking maoeuvres, STOP mode is not available for a few seconds after coming out of reverse gear.
STOP mode does not affect the functionality of the vehicle, such as for example, braking, power steering...

Never refuel with the engine in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition with the key.

Special cases: STOP mode not available

STOP mode is not invoked when:
- the driver's door is open,
- the driver's seat belt is not fastened,
- the vehicle has not exceeded 6 mph (10 km/h) since the last engine start using the key,
- the vehicle is stopped on a steep slope (up or down),
- the electric parking brake is applied or being applied,
- the engine is needed to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment,
- demisting is selected,
- some special conditions (battery charge, engine temperature, braking assistance, ambient temperature...) where the engine is needed to assure control of a system.

ECO In this case, the **"ECO"** indicator lamp flashes for a few seconds then goes off.

This operation is perfectly normal.

Going into engine START mode

ECO The **"ECO"** indicator lamp goes off and the engine starts automatically:

- **with a manual gearbox**, when you fully depress the clutch pedal,
- **with an automatic gearbox:**
  - gear selector in position **D** or **M**, when you release the brake pedal,
  - or gear selector in position **N** and brake pedal released, when you put the gear selector in position **D** or **M**,
  - or when you engage reverse gear.

Special cases: START invoked automatically

START mode is invoked automatically when:
- the driver's door is open,
- the driver's seat belt is not fastened,
- the speed of the vehicle exceeds 18 mph (25 km/h) with a manual gearbox (2 mph (3 km/h) with the THP 165 version), or 2 mph (3 km/h) with an automatic gearbox,
- the electric parking brake is being applied,
- some special conditions (battery charge, engine temperature, braking assistance, ambient temperature...) where the engine is needed for control of a system.

ECO In this case the **"ECO"** indicator lamp flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.

This operation is perfectly normal.

Deactivation



At any time, press the **"ECO OFF"** switch to deactivate the system.
This is confirmed by the indicator lamp in the switch coming on accompanied by a message in the screen.

If the system has been deactivated in STOP mode, the engine restarts immediately.

Reactivation

Press the **"ECO OFF"** switch again.
The system is active again; this is confirmed by the indicator lamp in the switch going off and a message in the screen.

The system is reactivated automatically at every new start using the key.

Operating fault



In the event of a fault with the system, the indicator lamp in the **"ECO OFF"** switch flashes then comes on continuously.
Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
In the event of a fault in STOP mode, the vehicle may stall: all the instrument panel warning lamps come on. It is then necessary to switch off the ignition and start the engine again using the key.

Hill start assist

System which keeps your vehicle immobilised temporarily (approximately 2 seconds) when starting on a gradient, the time it takes to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal.

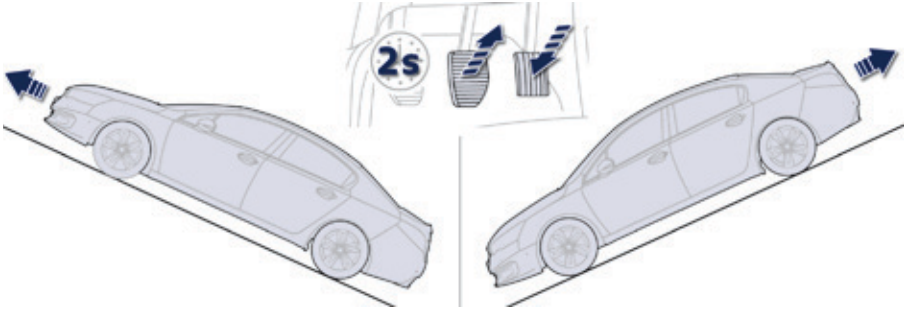
This system only operates when:

- the vehicle is completely stationary, with your foot on the brake pedal,
- certain gradient conditions are met,
- with the driver's door closed.

The hill start assist system cannot be deactivated.

! Do not leave the vehicle while it is being held in the hill start assist phase.
If you need to leave the vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake manually then ensure that the parking brake warning lamp and the warning lamp **P** in the lever of the electric parking brake control are on fixed (not flashing).

Operation



On an ascending slope, with the vehicle stationary, the vehicle is held for a momentarily when you release the brake pedal:

- provided you are in first gear or neutral with a manual gearbox,
- provided you are in position **D** or **M** with an automatic gearbox.

On a descending slope, with the vehicle stationary and reverse gear engaged, the vehicle is held momentarily when you release the brake pedal.

Operating fault

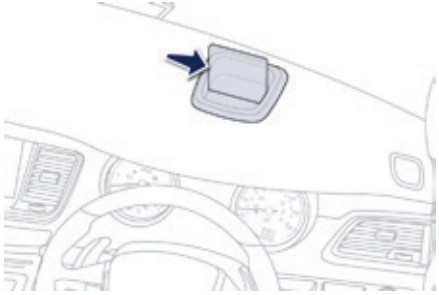


If a fault in the system occurs, these warning lamps come on. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

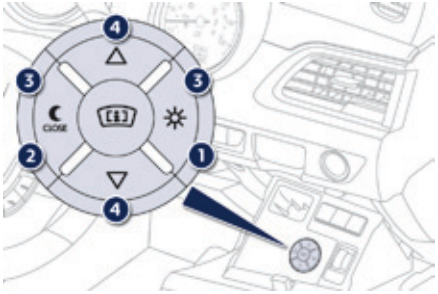
Head-up display

System which projects various information onto a smoked blade in the driver's field of vision, so that they do not have to take their eyes off the road.

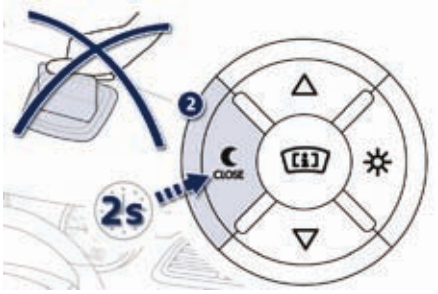
This system operates when the engine is running and the settings are stored when the ignition is switched off.



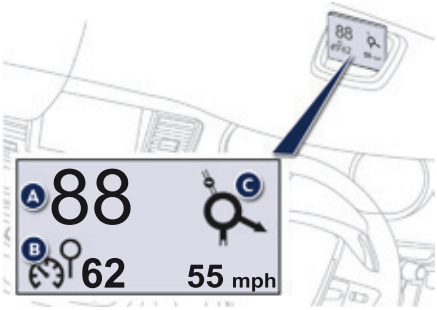
Buttons



1. Head-up display on.
2. Head-up display off (long press).
3. Brightness adjustment.
4. Display height adjustment.



Displays during operation

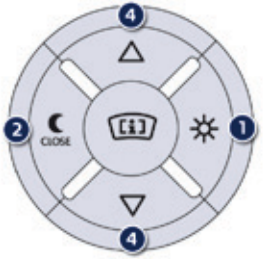


Once the system has been activated, the following information is grouped together in the head-up display:

A. The speed of your vehicle.
B. Cruise control/speed limiter information.
C. Navigation information (depending on version).

For more information on the navigation system, refer to the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.

Activation / Deactivation



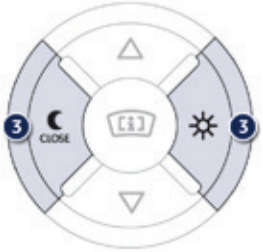
- With the engine running, press button **1** to activate the system and deploy the blade
- Press and hold button **2** to deactivate the system and retract the blade.

The activated/deactivated state is saved and restored on restarting the engine.

Height adjustment

- With the engine running, adjust the display to the desired height using buttons **4**:
  - up to move the display up,
  - down to move the display down.

Brightness adjustment



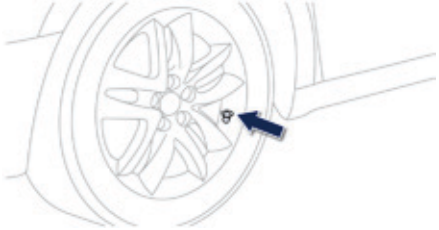
- With the engine running, adjust the brightness of the information displayed using buttons **3**:
  - the "sun" to increase the brightness,
  - the "moon" to decrease the brightness.

! We recommend that adjustments are made using these buttons only when the vehicle is stationary.
When stationary or while driving, no objects should be placed around the blade (or in its recess) so as to not impede deployment of the blade and its correct operation.

i In certain extreme weather conditions (rain and/or snow, bright sunshine, ...) the head-up display may not be legible or may suffer temporary interference.
Some sunglasses may hamper reading of the information.
To clean the blade, use a clean, soft cloth (such as a spectacles cloth or microfibre cloth). Do not use a dry or abrasive cloth or detergent or solvent products as these could scratch the blade or damage the non-reflective coating.

Tyre under-inflation detection

System which automatically checks the pressures of the tyres while driving.
The system continuously monitors the pressures of the four tyres, as soon as the vehicle is moving.



A pressure sensor is located in the valve of each tyre (except the spare wheel).
The system triggers an alert if a drop in pressure is detected in one or more tyres.

The tyre under-inflation detection system is an aid to driving which does not replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

This system does not avoid the need to check the tyre pressures regularly (including the spare wheel) and before a long journey.
Driving with under-inflated tyres adversely affects road holding, extends braking distances and causes premature tyre wear, particularly under arduous conditions (vehicle loaded, high speed, long journey).

Driving with under-inflated tyres increases fuel consumption.

The tyre pressures for your vehicle can be found on the tyre pressure label.
The tyre pressures must be checked when the tyres cold (vehicle stopped for 1 hour or after driving for less then 6 miles (10 km) at moderate speed).
Otherwise, add 0.3 bar to the values indicated on the label.
For more information on identification markings, including the tyre pressure label, refer to the corresponding section.

Under-inflation alert

The alert is given by the fixed illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal, and depending on equipment, the display of a message.

In the event of a problem on one of the tyres, the symbol or the message appears, according to equipment, to identify it.

- ☞ Reduce speed, avoid sudden steering movements or harsh brake applications.
- ☞ Stop as soon as it is safe to do so.

- ☞ If you have a compressor (the one in the temporary puncture repair kit for example), check the four tyre pressures when cold.
  If it is not possible to check the tyre pressures at the time, drive carefully at reduced speed.
  or
- ☞ In the event of a puncture, use the temporary puncture repair kit or the spare wheel (according to equipment).

! The loss of pressure detected does not always lead to visible deformation of the tyre.
Do not rely on just a visual check.

i The alert is maintained until the tyre or tyres concerned is reinflated, repaired or replaced.
The spare wheel (space-saver type or a steel rim) does not have a sensor.

Operating fault

SERVICE

The flashing and then fixed illumination of the under-inflation warning lamp accompanied by the illumination of the service warning lamp indicates a fault with the system.
In this case, monitoring of the tyre pressures is not assured.

This alert is also displayed when one or more wheels is not fitted with a sensor (for example, a space-saver or steel spare wheel).

i Go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked or, following the repair of a puncture, to have the original wheel, equipped with a sensor, refitted.

! Any tyre repair or replacement on a wheel fitted with this system must be carried out by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
If after changing a tyre, a wheel is not detected by your vehicle (fitting snow tyres for example), you must have the system reinitialised by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Speed limiter

System which prevents the vehicle from exceeding the speed programmed by the driver.
When the programmed speed limit is reached, pressing the accelerator pedal no longer has any effect unless it is pressed firmly, which allows you to temporarily exceed the programmed speed.
To return to the programmed speed, simply slow down to a speed below the programmed speed by releasing the accelerator.

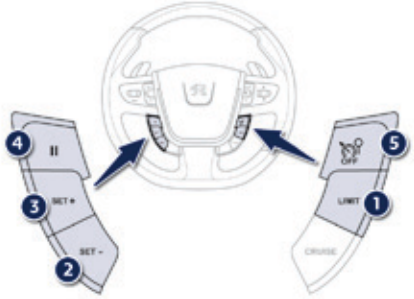
The speed limiter is **switched on** manually: it requires a programmed speed of at least 20 mph (30 km/h).

The speed limiter is **switched off** by manual operation of the control.

The programmed speed remains in the memory when the ignition is switched off.

The speed limiter cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need to observe speed limits, nor can it replace the need for vigilance and responsibility on the part of the driver.

Steering mounted controls



1. Speed limiter mode selection button
2. Programmed value decrease button
3. Programmed value increase button
4. Suspend/restore speed limiter (pause)
5. Speed limiter off button

Displays in the instrument panel



The programmed information is grouped together in the instrument panel screen.

This information also appears in the head-up display.
For more information, refer to the "Head-up display" section.



A. Speed limiter on / pause indication
B. Speed limiter mode selection indication
C. Programmed speed value

Programming

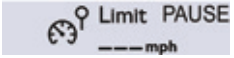


☞ Press **1**, the speed limiter mode is activated but remains paused.

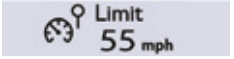
You do not have to switch the speed limiter on in order to set the speed.

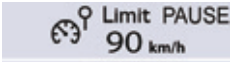
☞ Set the speed value by pressing button **2** or **3** (e.g.: 55 mph (90 km/h)).

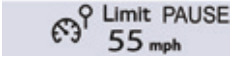












You can then change the programmed speed using buttons **2** and **3**:

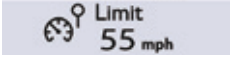
- by + or - 1 mph (km/h) = short press,
- by + or - 5 mph (km/h) = long press,
- in steps of + or - 5 mph (km/h) = maintained press.

☞ Switch the speed limiter on by pressing button **4**.

☞ Suspend the speed limiter by pressing button **4**: the screen confirms the suspension with "Pause".

☞ Switch the speed limiter back on by pressing button **4** again.





Exceeding the programmed speed

Pressing the accelerator pedal to exceed the programmed speed will not have any effect unless you press the pedal **firmly** past the **point of resistance**.

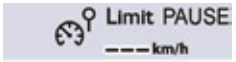
The speed limiter is deactivated temporarily and the programmed speed, which is still displayed, flashes.

Returning to the programmed speed, by means of intentional or unintentional deceleration of the vehicle, automatically cancels the flashing of the programmed speed.

Off / Return to normal driving

☞ Press **5**, the speed limiter is deactivated.

Operating fault





In the event of a speed limiter fault, the speed is cleared resulting in flashing of the dashes. Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! On a steep descent or in the event of sharp acceleration, the speed limiter will not be able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed.
The use of mats not approved by PEUGEOT may adversely affect the normal operation of the accelerator pedal and impede the operation of the speed limiter.
Mats approved by PEUGEOT have a third fixing in the area of the pedals to avoid any risk of interference with the pedals.

Cruise control

System which automatically maintains the speed of the vehicle at the value programmed by the driver, without any action on the accelerator pedal.
The cruise control is **switched on** manually: it requires a minimum vehicle speed of 25 mph (40 km/h) and the engagement of:

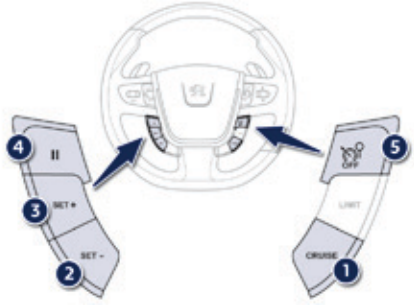
- 4th gear or higher with a manual gearbox,
- 2nd gear or higher with an automatic gearbox,
- position **D** with an automatic gearbox.

The cruise control is **switched off** manually or by pressing the brake or clutch pedal or on triggering of the ESC system for safety reasons.

It is possible to exceed the programmed speed temporarily by pressing the accelerator pedal. To return to the programmed speed, simply release the accelerator pedal.

Switching off the ignition cancels any programmed speed value.

Steering mounted controls



1. Cruise control mode selection button
2. Speed programming / programmed value decrease button
3. Speed programming / programmed value increase button
4. Cruise control suspension / resume button (pause)
5. Cruise control off button

The cruise control cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need to observe speed limits, nor can it replace the need for vigilance and responsibility on the part of the driver.

Displays in the instrument panel



The programmed information is grouped together in the instrument panel screen.

This information also appears in the head-up display.
For more information, refer to the "Head-up display" section.



A. Cruise control on / pause indication
B. Cruise control mode selection indication
C. Programmed speed value

Programming



- ☞ Press **1**, the cruise control is activated but remains paused.
- ☞ Set the programmed speed by accelerating to the required speed, then press button **2** or **3** (e.g.: 70 mph (110 km/h)).

You can then change the programmed speed using buttons **2** and **3**:

- by + or - 1 mph (km/h) = short press,
- by + or - 5 mph (km/h) = long press,
- in steps of + or - 5 mph (km/h) = maintained press.

- ☞ Pause the cruise control by pressing button **4**: the screen confirms the suspension with with "Pause".
- ☞ Switch the cruise control back on by pressing button **4** again.

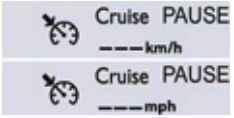
Exceeding the programmed speed

Intentional or unintentional exceeding of the programmed speed results in flashing of this speed on the display.

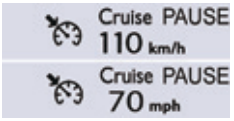
Return to the programmed speed, by means of intentional or unintentional deceleration of the vehicle, automatically cancels the flashing of the speed.

Off / Return to normal driving

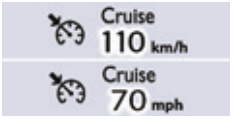
- ☞ Press **5**; cruise control mode is deactivated The screen returns to the distance recorder.



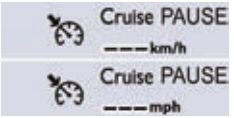








Operating fault



In the event of a cruise control fault, the speed is cleared resulting in flashing of the dashes. Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! When the cruise control is switched on, be careful if you maintain the pressure on one of the programmed speed changing buttons: this may result in a very rapid change in the speed of your vehicle.

Do not use the cruise control on slippery roads or in heavy traffic.

On a steep descent, the cruise control will not be able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed.

To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:

- ensure that the mat is positioned correctly,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

Memorising speeds

This memorising of speeds applies to both the speed limiter and the cruise control.

Operation



You can memorise up to 5 speeds in the system.
By default, some speeds are already memorised.

- Go to the "**Main menu**" in the instrument panel screen by pressing the **"CONFIG"** button.
- Select the "**Vehicle parameters**" menu and confirm.
- Select the "**Driving assistance**" line and conform.
- Select the "**Speeds memorised**" line and confirm.
- Select "**Activation**" to use the memorised speeds.
- Select the speed **M1** to **M5** that you want to use.
- Move the cursor to the desired value then press "**CONFIG**" to modify it.
- Select "**OK**" and confirm to save the modifications.

! As a safety measure, the driver must carry out these operations when stationary, using the instrument panel screen.
These operations are only possible when stationary.

Selection

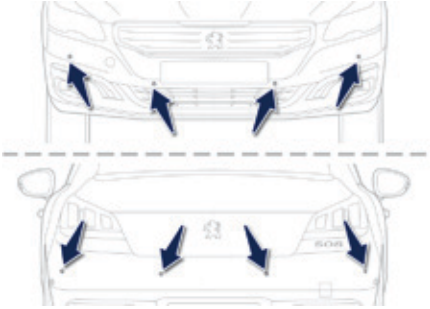


To select a memorised speed:

- press and hold the "**+**" or "**-**" button; the system stops at the nearest memorised speed,
- press and hold again the "**+**" or "**-**" button to select another memorised speed.

A reminder of the speed and the state of the system (on / off) is displayed in the instrument panel.

Parking sensors

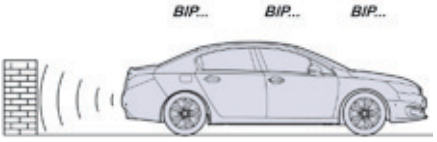


This system indicates the proximity of an obstacle (person, vehicle, tree, gate, etc.) which comes within the field of detection of sensors located in the bumper.
Certain types of obstacle (stake, roadworks cone, etc.) detected initially will no longer be detected at the end of the manoeuvre, if they are located in blind spots in the sensors' field of detection.

! This system cannot in any circumstances replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

Rear parking sensors

The system is switched on by engaging reverse gear.
This is confirmed by an audible signal.
The system is switched off when you come out of reverse gear.



Audible assistance

The proximity information is given by an intermittent audible signal, the frequency of which increases as the vehicle approaches the obstacle.
The sound emitted by the speaker (right or left) indicates the side on which the obstacle is located.
When the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle becomes less than approximately thirty centimetres, the audible signal becomes continuous.



Visual assistance

This supplements the audible signal by displaying bars in the screen which move progressively nearer to the vehicle.
When the obstacle is very close, the "Danger" symbol is displayed in the screen.

Front parking sensors

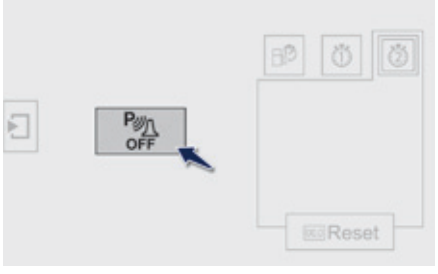
In addition to the rear parking sensors, the front parking sensors are triggered when an obstacle is detected in front and the speed of the vehicle is still below 6 mph (10 km/h).
The front parking sensors are interrupted if the vehicle stops for more than three seconds in forward gear, if no further obstacles are detected or when the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).

The sound emitted by the speaker (front or rear) indicates whether the obstacle is in front or behind.

Deactivation / Activation of the front and rear parking sensors



With audio system or for HYbrid4 version



With touch screen

The function is deactivated by pressing this button. The indicator lamp in the button comes on.
Pressing this button again reactivates the function. The indicator lamp in the button goes off.

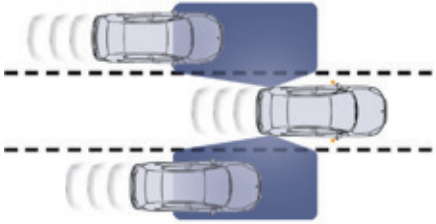
The function will be deactivated automatically if a trailer is being towed or a bicycle carrier is fitted (vehicle fitted with a towbar or bicycle carrier recommended by PEUGEOT).

Operating fault

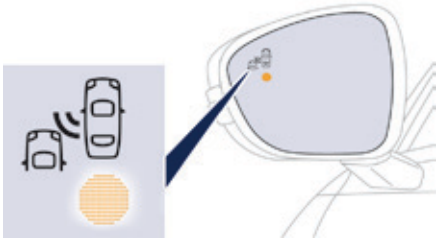
SERVICE In the event of a malfunction of the system, when reverse gear is engaged this warning lamp is displayed in the instrument panel and/or a message appears in the screen, accompanied by an audible signal (short beep).
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

In bad weather or in winter, ensure that the sensors are not covered with mud, ice or snow. When reverse gear is engaged, an audible signal (long beep) indicates that the sensors may be dirty. Certain sound sources (motorcycle, lorry, pneumatic drill, etc.) may trigger the audible signals of the parking sensor system.

Blind spot monitoring system



This driving assistance system warns the driver of the presence of another vehicle in the blind spot angle of their vehicle (areas masked from the driver's field of vision), as soon as this presents a potential danger.



A warning lamp appears in the door mirror on the side in question:

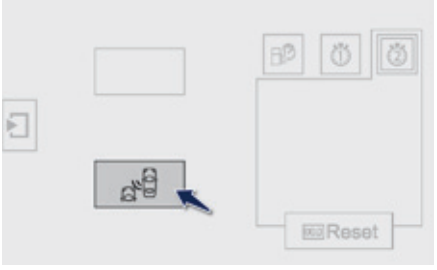
- immediately, when being overtaken,
- after a delay of about one second, when overtaking a vehicle slowly.

! This system is designed to improve safety when driving and is in no circumstances a substitute for the use of the interior rear view mirror and door mirrors. It is the driver's responsibility to constantly check the traffic, to assess the distances and relative speeds of other vehicles and to predict their movements before deciding whether to change lane.
The blind spot sensor system can never replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

Operation



With audio system or for HYbrid4 version

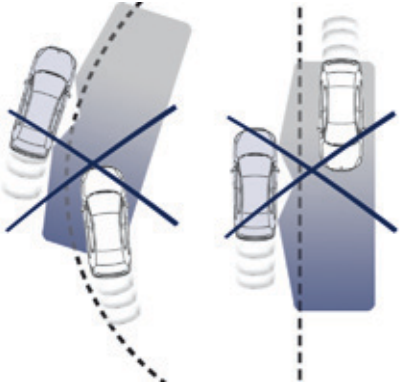


With touch screen

☞ On switching on the ignition, or engine running, press this button to activate the function; the warning lamp comes on.

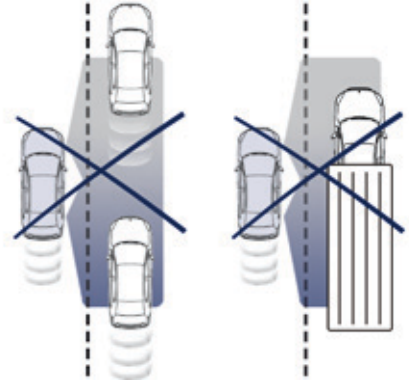
Sensors fitted in the front and rear bumpers monitor the blind spots.
The alert is given by a warning lamp which comes on in the door mirror on the side in question as soon as a vehicle - car, lorry, cycle - is detected.
For this, the following conditions must be met:

- all the vehicles must be moving in the same direction,
- the speed of your vehicle is between 7 and 75 mph (12 and 140 km/h),
- when you overtake a vehicle with a speed difference of less than 6 mph (10 km/h),
- when a vehicle overtakes you with a speed difference of less than 15 mph (25 km/h),
- the traffic must be flowing normally,
- in the case of an overtaking manoeuvre, if this is prolonged and the vehicle being overtaken remains in the blind spot,
- you are driving on a straight or slightly curved road,
- your vehicle is not pulling a trailer, a caravan...



No alert will be given in the following situations:

- in the presence of immobile objects (parked vehicles, barriers, street lamps, road signs...),
- with vehicles moving in the opposite direction,
- driving on a sinuous road or a sharp corner,



- when overtaking (or being overtaken by) a very long vehicle (lorry, coach...) which is at the same time detected at the rear in the blind spot angle and present in the driver's forward field of vision,
- in very heavy traffic: vehicles detected in front and behind are confused with a lorry or a stationary object,
- when overtaking quickly.

☞ To deactivate the system, press this button again; the warning lamp goes off.

The state of the system remains in memory on switching off the ignition.

The system is automatically deactivated when towing with a towbar approved by PEUGEOT.

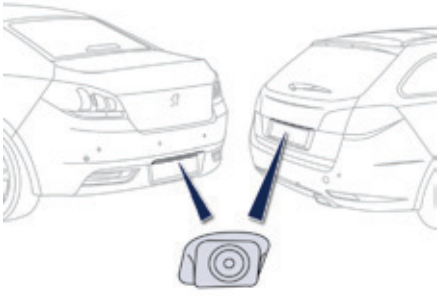
Operating fault

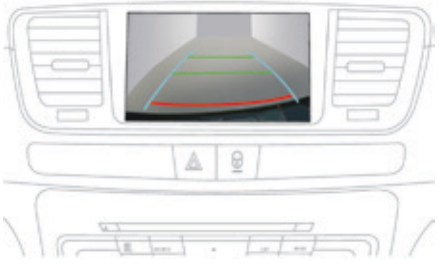
In the event of a fault, the warning lamp in the button flashes then goes off.

Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

The system may suffer temporary interference in certain weather conditions (rain, hail...).
In particular, driving on a wet surface or moving from a dry area to a wet area can cause false alerts (for example, the presence of a fog of water droplets in the blind spot angle is interpreted as a vehicle).
In bad or wintry weather, ensure that the sensors are not covered by mud, ice or snow.
Take care not to cover the warning zone in the door mirrors or the detection zones on the front and rear bumpers with adhesive labels or other objects; they may hamper the correct operation of the system.

Reversing camera





The reversing camera is activated automatically when reverse gear is engaged.
Depending on version, the image is displayed in the touch screen or the instrument panel.

The reversing camera function completes the parking assistance.

The reversing camera cannot in any circumstances be a substitute for the vigilance and responsibility of the driver.

It is normal to be able to see part of the number plate at the bottom of the screen.

The superimposed representation of guide lines helps with the manoeuvre.
They are represented by lines marked "on the ground" and do not allow the position of the vehicle to be determined relative to tall obstacles (for example: other vehicles, ...).

The blue lines represent the general direction of the vehicle (the difference corresponds to the width of your vehicle without the mirrors).
The red lines represent a distance of about 30 cm beyond the edge of your vehicle's rear bumper.
The green lines represent distances of about 1 and 2 metres beyond the edge of your vehicle's rear bumper.

Opening the boot causes the display to disappear.

Clean the reversing camera regularly using a soft, dry cloth.

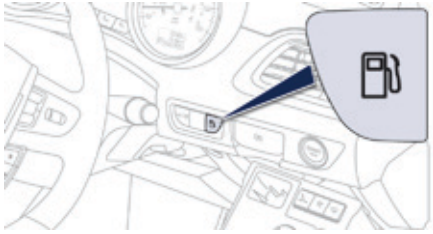
High pressure jet washing

When washing your vehicle, do not direct the lance within 30 cm of the camera lens.

Fuel

Fuel tank

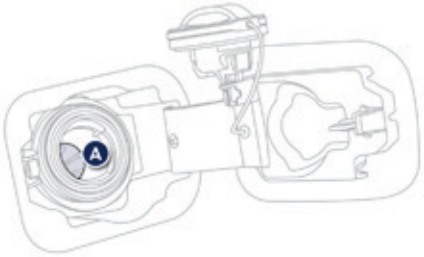
Capacity of the tank: approximately 72 litres (or 55 litres according to version).



Opening

- Press the switch.
  This control remains active for a few minutes after switching off the ignition. If necessary, switch the ignition on again to reactivate it.

! With Stop & Start, never refuel with the system in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition with the key, or the START/STOP button if your vehicle has Keyless Entry and Starting.



Refuelling

Additions of fuel must be of at least 5 litres to be registered by the fuel gauge.
Opening the filler cap may result in an inrush of air. This vacuum is entirely normal and results from the sealing of the fuel system.

- ☞ Take care to select the pump that delivers the correct fuel type for your vehicle's engine (reminder on a label on the inside of the filler flap).
- ☞ Open the filler cap by turning it a 1/4 turn to the left.
- ☞ Remove the filler cap and hang it on its carrier (on the filler flap).
- ☞ Introduce the nozzle and push it in fully (pushing on the the metal non-return valve **A**).
- ☞ Fill the tank. Do not continue past the third cut-off of the nozzle, as this may cause malfunctions.
- ☞ Refit the filler cap turning it a 1/4 turn to the right.
- ☞ Push the filler flap to close it.

Your vehicle is fitted with a catalytic converter, a device which helps to reduce the level of harmful emissions in the exhaust gases.
For petrol engines, you must use unleaded fuel only.
The filler neck is narrower, admitting petrol nozzles only.

! **If you have put in the wrong fuel for your vehicle, you must have have the tank drained and refilled with the correct fuel before starting the engine.**

Low fuel level

When the low fuel level in the tank is reached, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible warning and a message in the instrument panel screen.

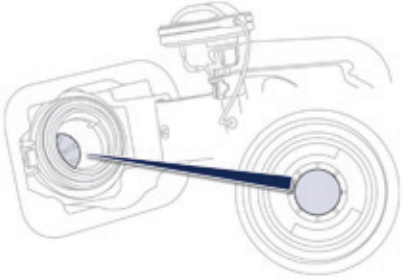
When it first comes on, around 7 litres of fuel remain in the tank.
You must refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out.

Fuel supply cut-off

Your vehicle is equipped with a safety device which cuts off the fuel supply in the event of a collision.

Diesel misfuel prevention

Mechanical device which prevents filling the tank of a Diesel vehicle with petrol. It avoids the risk of engine damage that can result from filling with the wrong fuel.
Located in the filler neck, the misfuel prevention device appears when the filler cap is removed.



When a petrol filler nozzle is introduced into the fuel filler neck of your Diesel vehicle, it comes into contact with the flap. The system remains closed and prevents filling.
Do not persist, but introduce a Diesel filler nozzle.

i It is still possible to use a fuel can to fill the tank but this must be done slowly. In order to ensure a good flow of fuel, do not place the nozzle of the fuel can in direct contact with the flap of the misfuel prevention device.

Travelling abroad

As Diesel fuel pump nozzles may be different in other countries, the presence of the misfuel prevention device may make refuelling impossible.
Not all Diesel vehicles are fitted with misfuel protection, so before travelling abroad, we recommend that you check with the PEUGEOT dealer network, whether your vehicle is suitable for the fuel pumps in the country in which you want to travel.

Fuel used for petrol engines

The petrol engines are compatible with E10 type petrol biofuels (containing 10 % ethanol), conforming to European standards EN 228 and EN 15376.
E85 type fuels (containing up to 85 % ethanol) are reserved exclusively for vehicles marketed for the use of this type of fuel (BioFlex vehicles). The quality of the ethanol must comply with European standard EN 15293.

Fuel used for Diesel engines

The Diesel engines are compatible with biofuels available at the pumps which meet current and future European standards:

- Diesel fuel that meets standard EN 590 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214,
- Diesel fuel that meets standard EN16734 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 10 % Fatty Acid Methyl Ester),
- Paraffinic Diesel fuel that meets standard EN15940 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 7 % Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).

The use of B20 or B30 fuel meeting standard EN16709 is possible in your Diesel engines. However, this use, even occasional, requires strict application of the special servicing conditions referred to as "Arduous conditions". For more information, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
The use of any other type of (bio)fuel (vegetable or animal oils, pure or diluted, domestic fuel...) is strictly prohibited (risk of damage to the engine and fuel system).
Only the use of Diesel fuel additives that meet the standard B715000 is authorised.



Snow chains

In wintry conditions, snow chains improve traction as well as the behaviour of the vehicle when braking.

The snow chains must be fitted only to the front wheels. They must never be fitted to "space-saver" type spare wheels.

Take account of the legislation in force in your country on the use of snow chains and the maximum running speed authorised.

Use only the chains designed to be fitted to the type of wheel fitted to your vehicle:

Original tyre size	Type of chain
215/60R16 215/55R17 225/55 R17	Maximum link size: 9 mm
135/80R18 235/45R18 235/40R19 245/45 R18	Cannot be fitted with chains

Advice on installation

- If you have to fit the chains during a journey, stop the vehicle on a flat surface on the side of the road.
- Apply the parking brake and position any wheel chocks to prevent movement of your vehicle.
- Fit the chains following the instructions provided by the manufacturer.
- Move off gently and drive for a few moments, without exceeding 30 mph (50 km/h).
- Stop your vehicle and check that the snow chains are correctly tightened.

Avoid driving with snow chains on roads that have been cleared of snow, to avoid damaging your vehicle's tyres and the road surface. If your vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, check that no part of the chain or its fixings is in contact with the wheel rim.

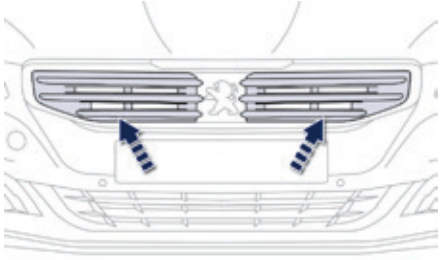
It is strongly recommended that before you leave, you practise fitting the snow chains on a level and dry surface.

For more information on snow chains, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Very cold climate screen

Removable protective screen which prevents the accumulation of snow at the radiator cooling fan.

! Before fitting or removing the screen, ensure that the engine is off and the cooling fan has stopped. It is recommended that the screen be fitted and removed by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.



Fitting

☞ Offer up the screen to the front of the top section of the front bumper upper grille.
☞ Press on the screen to engage its fixing clips.

Removal

☞ Use a screwdriver as a lever to unclip each retaining clip in turn.

! Do not forget to remove the very cold climate screen:
- when the ambient temperature exceeds 10° C (for example: in summer, ...),
- when towing,
- at speeds above 75 mph (120 km/h).

Towing a trailer



Your vehicle is primarily designed for transporting people and luggage, but it may also be used for towing a trailer.

We recommend the use of genuine PEUGEOT towbars and their harnesses that have been tested and approved from the design stage of your vehicle, and that the fitting of the towbar is entrusted to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
If the towbar is not fitted by a PEUGEOT dealer, it must still be fitted in accordance with the vehicle manufacturer's instructions.

Blanking cover



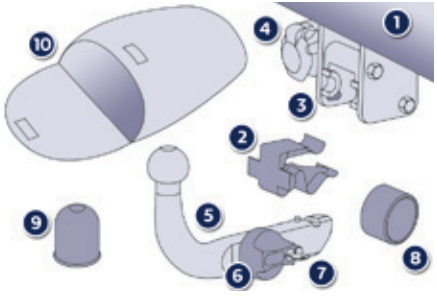
When towing, you must remove the blanking cover if your vehicle has one.
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop for this.

For more information on weights (and the towed loads which apply to your vehicle) refer to the corresponding section.

Driving with a trailer places greater demands on the towing vehicle and the driver must take particular care.
For more advice on driving when towing, refer to the corresponding section.

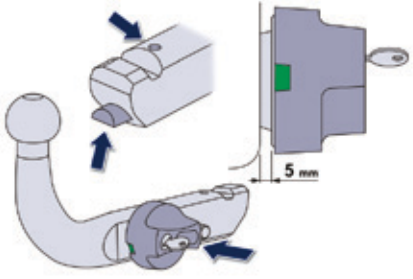
Towbar with quickly detachable towball

Presentation



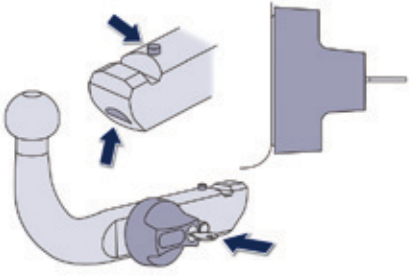
This towbar allows the towball to be fitted and removed quickly and easily without the use of tools. Installed behind the rear bumper, the towbar is invisible after removing the towball and folding the trailer harness socket carrier.

1. Carrier.
2. Protective blanking plug.
3. Security ring.
4. Folding trailer harness socket.
5. Detachable towball.
6. Locking / unlocking wheel.
7. Security key lock.
8. Locking wheel protector.
9. Ball protector.
10. Storage bag.



A. Locked position

The locking wheel is not in contact with the towball (gap of about 5 mm).
The green mark is visible.
The lock for the locking wheel is facing rearward.
The bolt is visible and extends beyond the towball.



B. Unlocked position

The locking wheel is in contact with the towball.
Then green mark is hidden.
The lock for the locking wheel is facing forward.
The peg is not visible.

Observe the legislation in force in the country in which you are driving.

For information on the maximum trailer weight and the recommended nose weight, refer to the "Technical data" section.
For information on safely towing a trailer, refer to the "Towing a trailer" section.

Before each use

Check that the towball is correctly fitted by verifying the following points:

- the towball is correctly locked in place (position **A**),
- the security key lock is on and the key removed; the locking wheel can no longer be operated,
- the towball must no longer move at all in its carrier; try to shake it by hand.

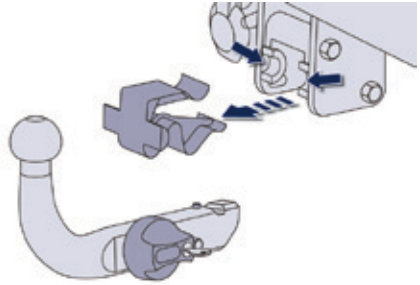
During use

Never unlock the towball when a trailer or load carrier is fitted.
Never exceed the maximum authorised weight for the vehicle plus trailer (Gross Train Weight - GTW).
Before driving, check the adjustment of the headlamp beam height.
For more information on adjusting the headlamps, refer to the corresponding section.

After use

For journeys made without a trailer or load carrier, the trailer harness socket must be folded away, the towball removed and the protective blanking plug inserted in the carrier. This measure applies particularly if the towball could hinder visibility of the number plate or lighting.

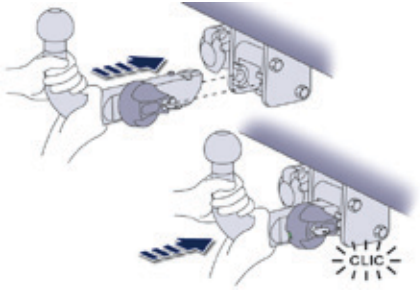
Fitting the towball



Remove the protective blanking plug from the carrier and check the condition of the fixing system. If necessary, clean the carrier with a brush or clean cloth.

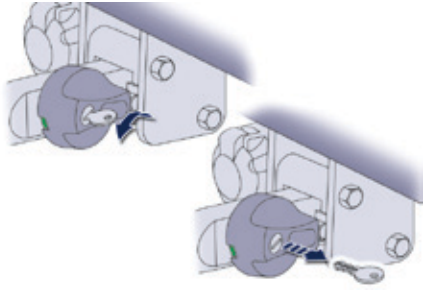
Take the towball from the storage bag.
Remove the protective cover from the ball and the protective cap from the locking wheel.
Stow the plug, cover and cap in the storage bag.

Check that the towball is unlocked (position **B**).
If not, insert the key in the lock and turn the key clockwise to unlock the mechanism.
Then press the locking wheel and turn it fully clockwise.



Take the towball in both hands; insert the end of the towball into the carrier, then, to ensure that it has correctly locked in place, pull firmly down on the ball end of the towball.

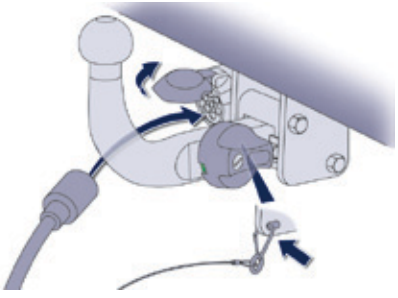
The locking wheel automatically turns a quarter of a turn anti-clockwise, making a perceptible click; take care to keep your hands clear.



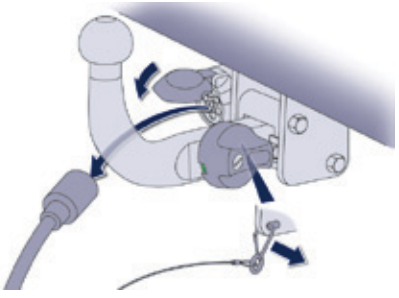
Check that the towball has correctly locked in place (position **A**).
Turn the key anti-clockwise to lock the towball fixing mechanism.
Always remove the key and keep it in a safe place.

! If the key cannot be turned or removed, this means that the towball is not fitted correctly; start the procedure again.
If one of the locking conditions is not met, start the procedure again.
In all cases, if the marking remains red, do not use the towbar and contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

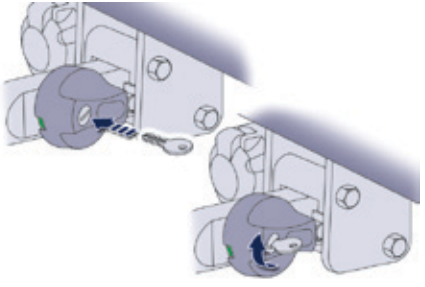
Removing the towball



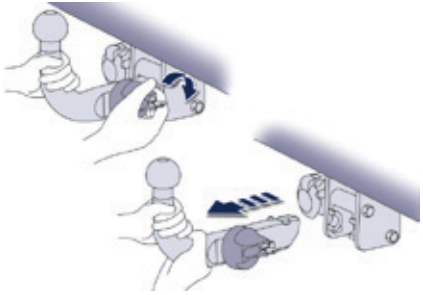
Attach the trailer to the towball.
Attach the cable on the trailer to the security ring located on the carrier.
Lower the trailer harness socket carrier by pulling down on the ring visible below the bumper.
Remove the protective cover from the socket and connect the trailer wiring harness.



Disconnect the trailer harness from the socket on the carrier.
Detach the cable on the trailer from the security ring on the carrier.
Unhook the trailer from the towball.
Return the trailer harness connector carrier to the folded position.

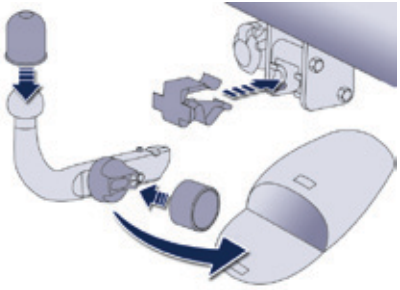


Insert the key into the lock.
Turn the key clockwise to unlock the towball fixing mechanism.



Grasp the towball firmly with one hand; with the other hand, press and turn the locking wheel clockwise as far as it will go.
Extract the towball from the bracket.

! Be ready for the weight of the towball (around 3.5 kg). Risk of injury!



Refit the protective cover for the ball and the protective cover for the locking wheel.
Stow the towball in its bag.
Refit the protective blanking plug to the carrier.

Maintenance

Correct operation is only possible if the towball and its carrier remain clean.
Before cleaning the vehicle with a high pressure jet wash, the towbar harness socket carrier must be folded away, the towball removed and the protective blanking plug inserted in the carrier.

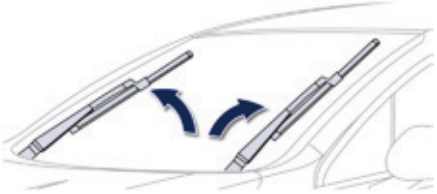
For any work on the towbar, go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Stowing the towball

It is recommended that the removable towball be safely stowed, preferably in a storage space below the boot floor.
Attach the towball using the bag tie cord.

! Never leave the removable towball unsecured in the boot. In the event of sudden braking, a towball left loose in the boot could present a danger to passengers in the vehicle.
Furthermore, the towball and the boot risk being damaged.

Changing a wiper blade



Before removing a front wiper blade

- ☞ Within one minute after switching off the ignition, operate the wiper stalk to position the wiper blades vertically on the windscreen.

Removing

- ☞ Raise the corresponding wiper arm.
- ☞ Unclip the wiper blade and remove it.

Fitting

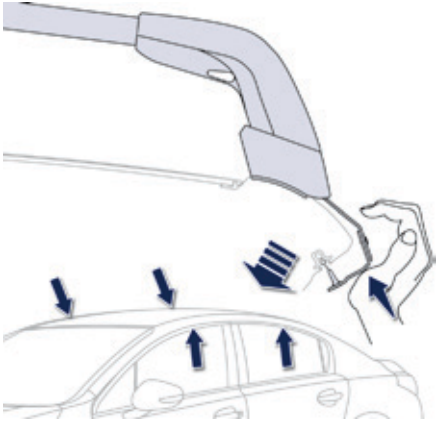
- ☞ Put the corresponding new wiper blade in place and clip it.
- ☞ Fold down the wiper arm carefully.

After fitting a front wiper blade

- ☞ Switch on the ignition.
- ☞ Operate the wiper stalk again to park the wiper blades.

Fitting roof bars

When fitting transverse roof bars, take care to position them correctly.



Saloon

- There are retaining pins in the door apertures.



SW and non-hybrid RHX

- There are markings on each of the longitudinal bars.

! Use accessories recommended by PEUGEOT observing the manufacturer's recommendations and fitting instructions so as to avoid the risk of damaging the body (deformation, scratches, ...).

i Maximum authorised weight on the roof bars, for a loading height not exceeding 40 cm (with the exception of bicycle carriers):

- Saloon: **70** kg
- SW and non-hybrid RHX: **100** kg

If the height exceeds 40 cm, adapt the speed of the vehicle to the profile of the road to avoid damaging the roof bars and the fixings on the roof.
Be sure to refer to national legislation in order to comply with the regulations for transporting objects which are longer than the vehicle.



PEUGEOT & TOTAL,
A PARTNERSHIP TO DELIVER BETTER PERFORMANCE!

2015 was marked by PEUGEOT's return to Rally-Raid, one of the most difficult motorsport disciplines in the world.
To obtain the best performance in these trials, PEUGEOT Sport chose TOTAL QUARTZ for the PEUGEOT 2008 DKR, a lubricant of high technology which protects the engine in the most severe conditions.

TOTAL QUARTZ protects your engine against the effects of time.

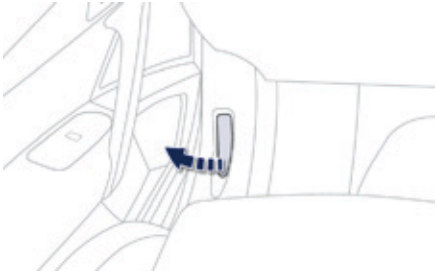
TOTAL QUARTZ Ineo First is a high performance lubricant, the result of work done together by PEUGEOT and TOTAL R&D.
Specially formulated for the engines in PEUGEOT vehicles, its innovative technology significantly reduces CO_2 emissions and keeps your engine clean.

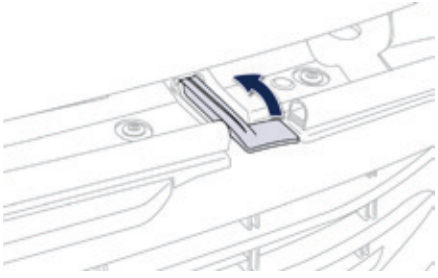
PEUGEOT RECOMMENDS TOTAL

PEUGEOT TOTAL
OFFICIAL PARTNERS

Opening the bonnet

! Before doing anything under the bonnet, switch off the Stop & Start system to avoid any risk of injury resulting from an automatic change to START mode.





Opening

☞ **From inside**: pull the release lever, located on the left below the dashboard, towards you.

! Do not open the bonnet in high winds. When the engine is hot, handle the exterior safety catch and the bonnet stay with care (risk of burns).

! **The cooling fan may start after switching off the engine: take care with articles and clothing that might be caught by the fan blades.**

☞ **From the outside**: lift the safety catch and raise the bonnet.

A bonnet strut opens the bonnet and holds it open.

Closing

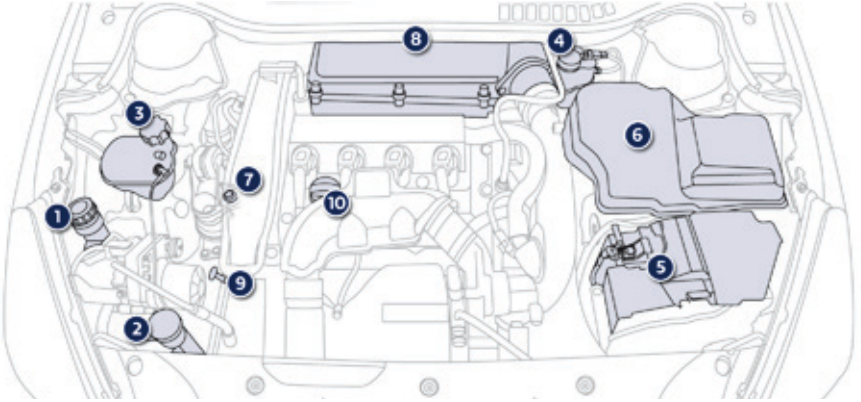
☞ Lower the bonnet and release it at the end of its travel.

☞ Check that it is latched correctly.

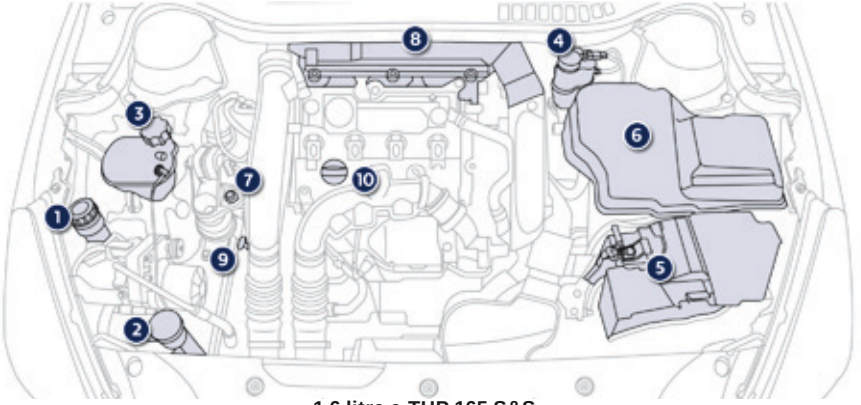
! Because of the presence of electrical equipment under the bonnet, it is recommended that exposure to water (rain, washing, ...) be limited.

Petrol engines

1. Power steering fluid reservoir.
2. Screenwash and headlamp wash fluid reservoir.
3. Coolant header tank.
4. Brake fluid reservoir.
5. Battery / Fuses.
6. Fusebox.
7. Remote earth point (-).
8. Air filter.
9. Engine oil dipstick.
10. Engine oil filler cap.



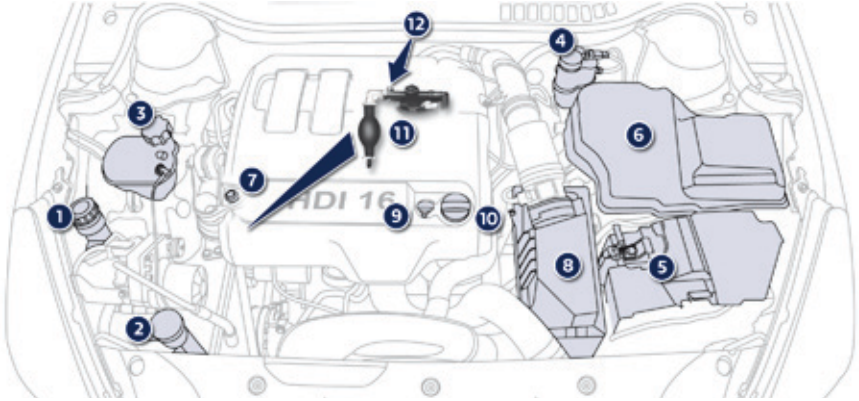
1.6 litre THP 150
1.6 litre THP 156



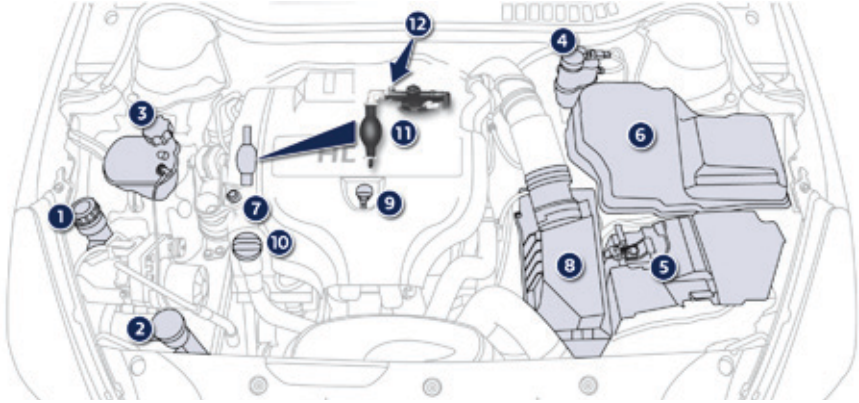
1.6 litre e-THP 165 S&S

Diesel engines

1. Power steering fluid reservoir.
2. Screenwash and headlamp wash fluid reservoir.
3. Coolant reservoir.
4. Brake fluid reservoir.
5. Battery / Fuses.
6. Fusebox.
7. Earth point ("-" terminal).
8. Air filter.
9. Engine oil dipstick.
10. Engine oil filler cap.
11. Priming pump*.
12. Bleed screw*.



2.0 litre HDi 140

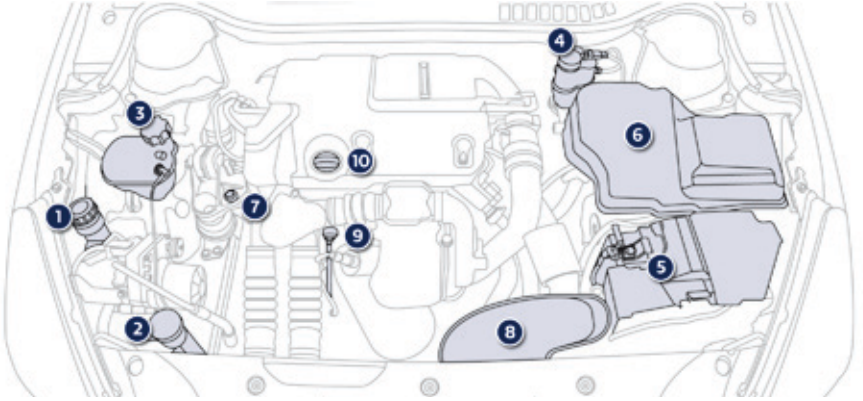


2.0 litre HDi 136
2.0 litre HDi 163

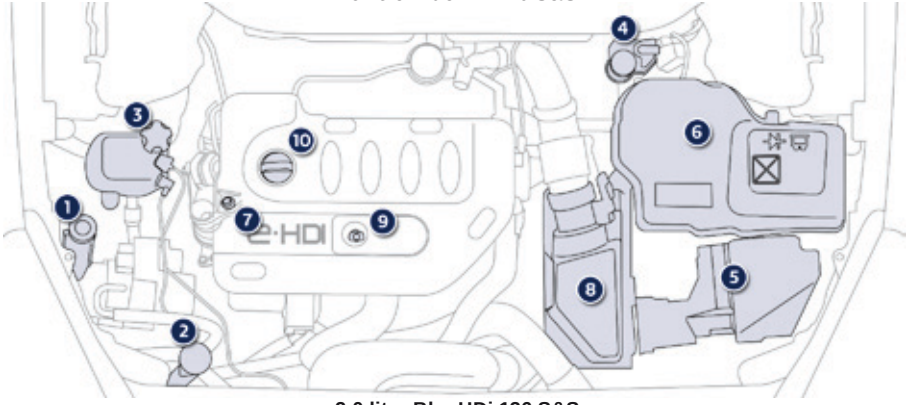
* According to engine.

BlueHDi Diesel engines

1. Power steering fluid reservoir.
2. Screenwash and headlamp wash fluid reservoir.
3. Coolant header tank.
4. Brake fluid reservoir.
5. Battery / Fuses.
6. Fusebox.
7. Earth point ("-" terminal).
8. Air filter.
9. Engine oil dipstick.
10. Engine oil filler cap.



1.6 litre BlueHDi 120 S&S



2.0 litre BlueHDi 136 S&S
2.0 litre BlueHDi 150 S&S
2.0 litre BlueHDi 180 S&S

Checking levels

Check all of these levels regularly, in line with the manufacturer's service schedule. Top them up if necessary, unless otherwise indicated.
If a level drops significantly, have the corresponding system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Take care when working under the bonnet, as certain areas of the engine may be extremely hot (risk of burns) and the cooling fan could start at any time (even with the ignition off).

Engine oil level

The check is carried out either when the ignition is switched on using the oil level indicator in the instrument panel for vehicles so equipped, or using the dipstick.

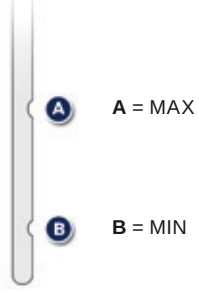
To ensure that the reading is correct, your vehicle must be parked on a level surface with the engine having been off for more than 30 minutes.

It is normal to top up the oil level between two services (or oil changes). PEUGEOT recommends that you check the level, and top up if necessary, every 3 000 miles (5 000 kms).

Checking using the dipstick

The location of the dipstick is shown in the corresponding underbonnet layout view.

- Take the dipstick by its coloured grip and remove it completely.
- Wipe the end of the dipstick using a clean non-fluffy cloth.
- Refit the dipstick and push fully down, then pull it out again to make the visual check: the correct level is between the marks **A** and **B**.



A = MAX

B = MIN

If you find that the level is above the **A** mark or below the **B** mark, **do not start the engine**.

- If the level is above the **MAX** mark (risk of damage to the engine), contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
- If the level is below the **MIN** mark, you must top up the engine oil.

Oil grade

Before topping-up the oil or changing the oil, check that the oil is the correct grade for your engine and conforms to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Topping-up the engine oil level

The location of the oil filler cap is shown in the corresponding underbonnet layout view.

- ☞ Unscrew the oil filler cap to reveal the filler aperture.
- ☞ Add oil in small quantities, avoiding any spills on engine components (risk of fire).
- ☞ Wait a few minutes before checking the level again using the dipstick.
- ☞ Add more oil if necessary.
- ☞ After checking the level, carefully refit the oil filler cap and the dipstick in its tube.

After topping-up the oil, the check when switching on the ignition with the oil level indicator in the instrument panel is not valid during the 30 minutes after topping up.

Engine oil change

Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the interval for this operation.
In order to maintain the reliability of the engine and emission control system, never use additives in the engine oil.

Brake fluid level



The brake fluid level should be close to the "MAX" mark. If it is not, check the brake pad wear.

Changing the fluid

Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the interval for this operation.

Fluid specification

The brake fluid must conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Power steering fluid level



The power steering fluid level should be close to the "MAX" mark. With the engine cold, unscrew the cap to check the level.

Coolant level



The coolant level should be close to the "MAX" mark but should never exceed it.

When the engine is warm, the temperature of the coolant is regulated by the fan.

! The cooling fan may start after switching off the engine: take care with articles and clothing that might be caught by the fan blades.

In addition, as the cooling system is pressurised, wait at least one hour after switching off the engine before carrying out any work.
To avoid any risk of scalding, unscrew the cap by two turns to allow the pressure to drop. When the pressure has dropped, remove the cap and top up the level.

Changing the coolant

The coolant does not have to be replaced at routine services.

Fluid specification

The coolant must conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Screenwash and headlamp wash fluid



In the case of vehicles fitted with headlamp washers, the low fluid level is indicated by an audible signal and a message in the instrument panel screen.

Top up the reservoir when you next stop the vehicle.

Fluid specification

For optimum cleaning and to avoid freezing, this fluid must not be topped up with or replaced with plain water.

i In wintry conditions, the use of an ethyl alcohol or methanol base fluid is recommended.

Diesel additive level (Diesel engine with particle filter)

A low additive level is indicated by illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible warning and a message in the instrument panel screen.

Topping up

This additive must be topped up by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.

Used products

! Avoid prolonged contact of used oil or fluids with the skin.
Most of these fluids are harmful to health or indeed very corrosive.

Do not discard used oil or fluids into sewers or onto the ground.
Take used oil to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop (France) or to an authorised waste disposal site.

Checks

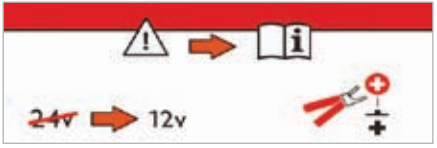
Unless otherwise indicated, check these components in accordance with the manufacturer's service schedule and according to your engine. Otherwise, have them checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

12 V battery



The battery does not require any maintenance.
However, check regularly that the terminals are correctly tightened (versions without quick release terminals) and that the connections are clean.

When carrying out any operation on the 12 V battery, refer to the corresponding section for details of the precautions to be taken before starting work.



Versions equipped with Stop & Start are fitted with a 12 V lead-acid battery of specific technology and specification.
Its replacement should be carried out only by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Air filter and passenger compartment filter



Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the replacement intervals for these components.

Depending on the environment (e.g. dusty atmosphere) and the use of the vehicle (e.g. city driving), **replace them twice as often if necessary**.
A clogged passenger compartment filter may have an adverse effect on the performance of the air conditioning system and generate undesirable odours.

Oil filter



Replace the oil filter each time the engine oil is changed.
Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the replacement interval for this component.

Particle filter (Diesel)

SERVICE The start of saturation of the particle filter is indicated by the temporary illumination of this warning lamp accompanied by a message in the multifunction screen.

As soon as the traffic conditions permit, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 40 mph (60 km/h) until the warning lamp goes off.
If the warning lamp stays on, this indicates a low additive level.
For more information on checking levels, refer to the corresponding section.

On a new vehicle, the first particle filter regeneration operations may be accompanied by a "burning" smell, which is perfectly normal.
Following prolonged operation of the vehicle at very low speed or at idle, you may, in exceptional circumstances, notice the emission of water vapour at the exhaust on acceleration. This does not affect the behaviour of the vehicle or the environment.

Manual gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).
Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for the checking interval for this component.

Automatic gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).
Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the level checking interval for this component.

Brake pads



Brake wear depends on the style of driving, particularly in the case of vehicles used in town, over short distances. It may be necessary to have the condition of the brakes checked, even between vehicle services.
Unless there is a leak in the circuit, a drop in the brake fluid level indicates that the brake pads are worn.

Brake disc wear



For information on checking brake disc wear, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Parking brake



If excessive travel or a loss of effectiveness of this system is noticed, the parking brake must be checked, even between two services.
Checking this system must be done by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Electric parking brake



This system does not require any routine servicing. However, in the event of a problem, have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

For more information on the electric parking brake, refer to the corresponding section.

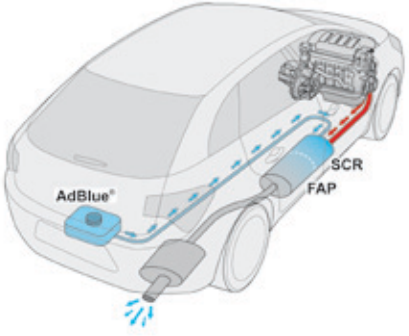
! Only use products recommended by PEUGEOT or products of equivalent quality and specification.
In order to optimise the operation of units as important as those in the braking system, PEUGEOT selects and offers very specific products.
After washing the vehicle, dampness, or in wintry conditions, ice can form on the brake discs and pads: braking efficiency may be reduced. Make light brake applications to dry and defrost the brakes.

AdBlue® additive and SCR system for BlueHDi Diesel engines

To assure respect for the environment and conformity with the new Euro 6 emissions standard, without adversely affecting the performance or fuel consumption of Diesel engines, PEUGEOT has taken the decision to equip its vehicles with an effective system that associates SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction) with a particle filter (FAP) for the treatment of exhaust gases.

Presentation of the SCR system

Using an additive called AdBlue® containing urea, a catalytic converter turns up to 85% of nitrous oxides (NOx) into nitrogen and water, which are harmless to health and the environment.



The AdBlue® additive is held in a special tank located under the boot at the rear of the vehicle. It has a capacity of 17 litres: this provides a driving range of about 12 500 miles (20 000 km), after which an alert is triggered warning you when the reserve remaining is enough for just 1 500 miles (2 400 km).

During each scheduled service of your vehicle by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop, the AdBlue® additive tank is refilled in order to allow normal operation of the SCR system.

If the estimated mileage between two services is greater than 12 500 miles (20 000 km), we recommend that you go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the necessary top-up carried out.

! Once the AdBlue® tank is empty, a system required by regulations prevents starting of the engine.
If the SCR is faulty, the level of emissions from your vehicle will no longer meet the Euro 6 standard: your vehicle becomes polluting.
In the event of a confirmed fault with the SCR system, you must go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible: after a running distance of 650 miles (1 100 km), a system will be triggered automatically to prevent engine starting.

Topping-up the AdBlue® additive

Filling the AdBlue® tank is an operation included in every routine service on your vehicle by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
Nevertheless, given the capacity of the tank, it may be necessary to top-up the additive between services, more particularly if an alert (warning lamps and a message) signals the requirement.
You can go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
If you envisage topping-up yourself, please read the following warnings carefully.

Freezing of the AdBlue® additive

The AdBlue® additive freezes at temperatures below around -11°C.
The SCR system includes a heater for the AdBlue® tank, allowing you to continue driving in very cold conditions.

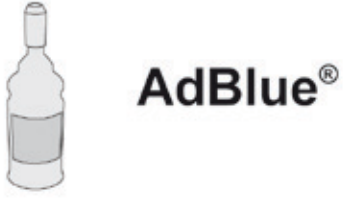
Precautions in use

The AdBlue® additive is an urea-based solution. This liquid is non-flammable, colourless and odourless (kept in a cool area).
In the event of contact with the skin, wash the affected area with soap and water. In the event of contact with the eyes, wash (irrigate) the eyes with large amounts of water or with an eye wash solution for at least 15 minutes.
If a burning sensation or irritation persists, get medical attention.
If swallowed, immediately wash out the mouth with clean water and then drink plenty of water.
In certain conditions (high ambient temperature, for example), the risk of release of ammonia cannot be excluded: do not inhale the product. Ammonia vapour has an irritant effect on mucous membranes (eyes, nose and throat).

! Keep AdBlue® out of the reach of children, in its original bottle.
Never transfer AdBlue® to another container: it would lose its purity.

Use only AdBlue® additive that meets the ISO 22241 standard.

! Never dilute the additive with water.
Never pour the additive into the Diesel fuel tank.



The supply in a non-drip bottle simplifies topping-up. You can obtain 1.89 litre (half a US gallon) bottles from a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Never top-up from an AdBlue® dispenser reserved for heavy goods vehicles.

Recommendations on storage

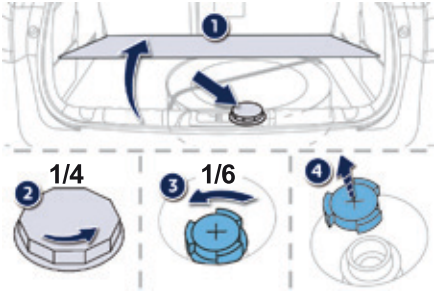
AdBlue® freezes at about -11°C and deteriorates above 25°C. It is recommended that bottles be stored in a cool area and protected from direct sunlight.
Under these conditions, the additive can be kept for at least a year.
If the additive has frozen, it can be used once it has completely thawed out.

! Never store bottles of AdBlue® in your vehicle.

Procedure

Before topping-up, ensure that the vehicle is parked on a flat and level surface.
In wintry conditions, ensure that the temperature of the vehicle is above -11°C. Otherwise the AdBlue® may be frozen and so cannot be poured into its tank. Park your vehicle in a warmer area for a few hours to allow the top-up to be carried out.

☞ Switch off the ignition and remove the key, or if your vehicle has one, press the START/STOP button to switch off the engine.



☞ For access to the AdBlue® tank, raise the boot carpet then, depending on equipment, lift out the spare wheel and/or the storage box.

☞ Without pressing, turn the black cap a quarter turn anti-clockwise and lift it off.

☞ Turn the blue cap a 6th of a turn anti-clockwise.
☞ Lift off the cap.



☞ Obtain a bottle of AdBlue®. After first checking the use-by date, read carefully the instructions on use on the label before pouring the contents of the bottle into your vehicle's AdBlue® tank.

! **Important**: if your vehicle's AdBlue® tank is completely empty - which is confirmed by the alert messages and the impossibility of starting the engine, you must add at least 3.8 litres (so two 1.89 litre bottles).

☞ After emptying the bottle, wipe away any spillage around the tank filler using a damp cloth.

! If any additive is split or splashed, wash immediately with cold water or wipe with a damp cloth.
If the additive has crystallised, clean it off using a sponge and hot water.

☞ Refit the blue cap to the tank and turn it a 6th of a turn clockwise, to its stop.

☞ Refit the black cap and turn it a quarter of a turn clockwise without pressing. Ensure that the indicator on the cap lines up with the indicator on the support.

☞ Depending on equipment, return the spare wheel and/or the storage box to the bottom of the boot.

☞ Refit the boot carpet and close the tailgate.

! Important: **when topping-up after running out of additive**, signalled by the message "Top up emissions additive: Starting prevented", you must wait for about 5 minutes before switching the ignition on again, **without opening the driver's door, unlocking the vehicle, introducing the remote control key into the ignition switch, or placing the electronic key of the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system inside the vehicle.**
Switch on the ignition, then wait for 10 seconds before starting the engine.

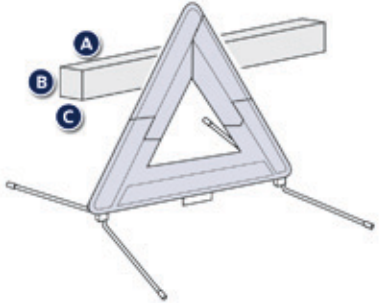
Never dispose of AdBlue® additive bottles in the household waste. Place them in a special container provided this purpose or take them to your dealer.

Warning triangle

This safety device should be used in addition to the hazard warning lamps.
Its presence in the vehicle is mandatory.

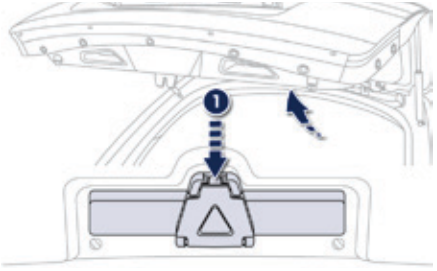
The location for stowing a folded triangle is in the inner trim panel of the boot lid or tailgate.

Before leaving your vehicle to set up and install the triangle, switch on the hazard warning lamps and put on your high visibility vest.



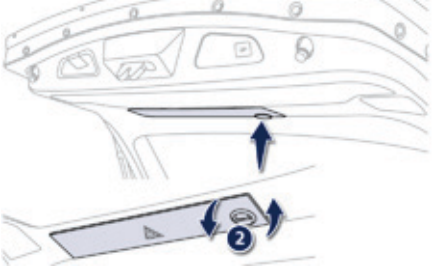
The dimensions of the triangle (once folded) or its storage box must be:

- **A**: length = **438** mm,
- **B**: height = **56** mm,
- **C**: width = **38** mm.



Saloon

☞ Press the lug **1** and pull the assembly towards you.



SW and non-hybrid RXH

☞ Turn the knob **2** to remove the cover.

☞ Hold the cover and the triangle so that they do not fall.

Placing the triangle in the road

☞ Place the triangle behind the vehicle, as required by the legislation in force in your country.

Refer to the manufacturer's instructions on unfolding and installing supplied with the triangle.

The triangle is available as an accessory; contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Running out of fuel (Diesel)

On vehicles fitted with Diesel engines, the fuel system must be primed if you run out of fuel.
For all versions other than BlueHDi, refer to the corresponding engine compartment view.

For more information on the Diesel misfuel prevention device, refer to the corresponding section.

If the engine does not start first time, don't keep trying but start the procedure again from the beginning.

BlueHDi engines

- Fill the fuel tank with at least five litres of Diesel.
- Switch on the ignition (without starting the engine).
- Wait around 6 seconds and switch off the ignition.
- Repeat the operation 10 times.
- Operate the starter to run the engine.

1.6 litre HDi engine



- Fill the fuel tank with at least five litres of diesel.
- Open the bonnet.
- If necessary, unclip the styling cover for access to the priming pump.
- Squeeze and release the priming pump repeatedly until resistance is felt (there may be resistance at the first press).
- Operate the starter until the engine starts (if the engine does not start at the first attempt, wait around 15 seconds before trying again).
- If the engine does not start after a few attempts, operate the priming pump again then start the engine.
- Clip the styling cover back in place.
- Close the bonnet.

2 litre HDi engines



- Fill the fuel tank with at least five litres of Diesel.
- Open the bonnet.
- If necessary, unclip the styling cover for access to the priming pump.
- Squeeze and release the priming pump repeatedly until fuel appears in the transparent pipe.
- Operate the starter until the engine starts (if the engine does not start at the first attempt, wait around 15 seconds before trying again).
- If the engine does not start after a few attempts, operate the priming pump again then start the engine.
- Put the styling cover back in position and clip it in place.
- Close the bonnet.

Temporary puncture repair kit

This kit consists of a compressor and a sealant cartridge.
It allows the **temporary repair** of a tyre.
You are then able to go to the nearest garage.
It is designed to repair most punctures which could affect the tyre, located on the tyre tread or shoulder.
Its compressor can be used to check and adjust the pressure of the tyre.



Access to the kit



This kit is installed in the storage box, under the boot floor.

List of tools

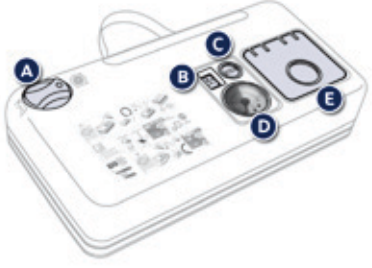
All of these tools are specific to your vehicle and can vary according to equipment. Do not use them for other purposes.

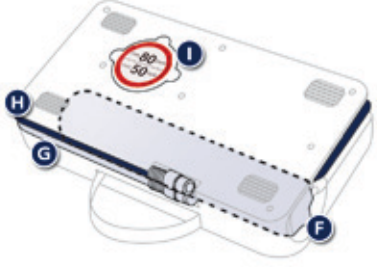
1. 12 V compressor.
   Contains a sealant cartridge for the temporary repair of a tyre and can also be used for adjusting tyre pressures.
2. One chock* to block one of the front wheels of the vehicle.
3. Removable towing eye.
   For more information on towing, refer to the corresponding section.

The vehicle's electric system allows the connection of a compressor for long enough to inflate a tyre after a puncture repair or for inflating a small inflatable accessory.

* Depending on the country of sale or equipment.

Description of the kit



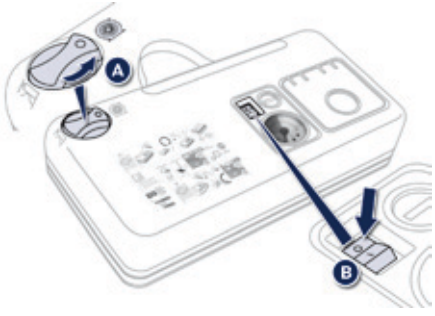


A. "Sealant" or "Air" position selector.
B. On **"I"** / off **"O"** switch.
C. Deflation button.
D. Pressure gauge (in bars and psi).
E. Compartment housing:
- a cable with adaptor for 12 V socket,
- various inflation adaptors for accessories, such as balls, bicycle tyres...

F. Sealant cartridge.
G. White pipe with cap for repair.
H. Black pipe for inflation.
I. Speed limit sticker.

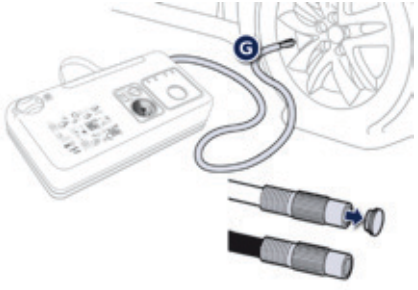
The speed limit sticker **I** must be affixed to the vehicle's steering wheel to remind you that a wheel is in temporary use. Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) when driving with a tyre repaired using this type of kit.

Repair procedure



1. Sealing

- Switch off the ignition.
- Turn the selector **A** to the "sealant" position.
- Check that the switch **B** is in position **"O"**.



- Uncoil the white pipe **G** fully.
- Unscrew the cap from the white pipe.
- Connect the white pipe to the valve of the tyre to be repaired.



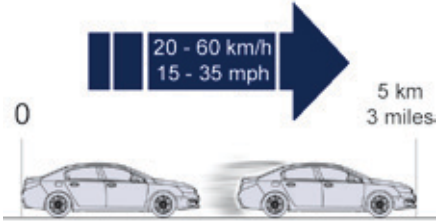
- Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- Start the vehicle and leave the engine running.

Avoid removing any foreign bodies which have penetrated into the tyre.

Take care, this product is harmful if swallowed and causes irritation to the eyes.
Keep this product out of the reach of children.

Do not start the compressor before connecting the white pipe to the tyre valve: the sealant product would be expelled through the pipe.





☞ Switch on the compressor by moving the switch **B** to position **"I"** until the tyre pressure reaches 2.0 bars.
The sealant is injected into the tyre under pressure; do not disconnect the pipe from the valve during this operation (risk of splashing).

ℹ If after around 5 to 7 minutes the pressure is not attained, this indicates that the tyre is not repairable; contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

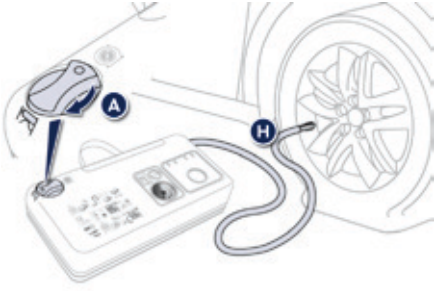
☞ Remove the kit and screw the cap back on the white pipe.
Take care to avoid staining your vehicle with traces of fluid. Keep the kit to hand.

☞ Drive immediately for approximately three miles (five kilometres), at reduced speed (between 15 and 35 mph (20 and 60 km/h)), to plug the puncture.

☞ Stop to check the repair and the tyre pressure using the kit.

ℹ **Tyre under-inflation detection**

If the vehicle is fitted with tyre under-inflation detection, the under-inflation warning lamp will remain on after the wheel has been repaired until the system is reinitialised by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.



2. Inflation

- ☞ Turn the selector **A** to the "Air" position.
- ☞ Uncoil the black pipe **H** fully.
- ☞ Connect the black pipe to the valve of the wheel.



- ☞ Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- ☞ Start the vehicle again and leave the engine running.

! As soon as possible, go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
You must inform the technician that you have used this kit. After inspection, the technician will advise you on whether the tyre can be repaired or if it must be replaced.



- ☞ Adjust the pressure using the compressor (to inflate: switch **B** in position **"I"**; to deflate: switch **B** in position **"O"** and press button **C**), in accordance with the vehicle's tyre pressure label (located on the left hand door aperture).
A loss of pressure indicates that the puncture has not been fully plugged; contact a PEUGEOT dealer or qualified workshop for assistance.
- ☞ Remove and stow the kit.
- ☞ Drive at reduced speed (50 mph [80 km/h] max) limiting the distance travelled to approximately 120 miles (200 km).

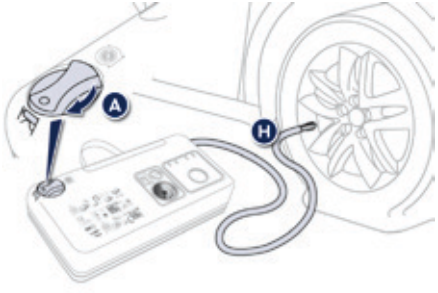
Removing the cartridge



- Stow the black pipe.
- Detach the angled base from the white pipe.
- Support the compressor vertically.
- Unscrew the cartridge from the bottom.

! Beware of discharges of fluid.
The expiry date of the fluid is indicated on the cartridge.
The sealant cartridge is designed for single use; even if only partly used, it must be replaced.
After use, do not discard the cartridge into the environment, take it to an authorised waste disposal site or a PEUGEOT dealer.
Do not forget to obtain a new sealant cartridge, available from PEUGEOT dealers or from a qualified workshop.

Checking tyre pressures / inflating accessories



You can also use the compressor, without injecting any product, to:
- check or adjust the pressure of your tyres,
- inflate other accessories (balls, bicycle tyres...).

- Turn the selector **A** to the "Air" position.
- Uncoil the black pipe **H** fully.
- Connect the black pipe to the valve of the wheel or accessory.
If necessary, fit one of the adaptors supplied with the kit first.

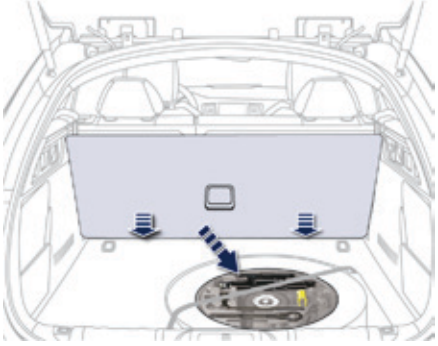


- Connect the compressor's electrical connector to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- Start the vehicle and let the engine run.
- Adjust the pressure using the compressor (to inflate: switch **B** in position **"I"**; to deflate: switch **B** in position **"O"** and press button **C**), according to the vehicle's tyre pressure label or the accessory's pressure label.
- Remove the kit then stow it.

Spare wheel

Procedure for changing a wheel with punctured tyre for the spare wheel using the tools provided with the vehicle.

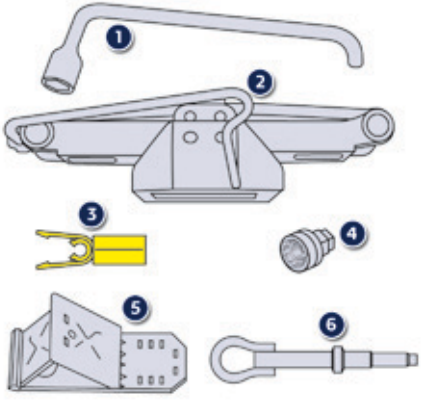
Access to the tools



The tools are installed in the boot under the floor.

To gain access to them:

- ☞ open the boot,
- ☞ position the floor vertically (SW and non-hybrid RXH: in its guide) for access to the tools.



List of tools

All of these tools are specific to your vehicle and can vary according to the level of equipment. Do not use them for other purposes.

1. Wheelbrace.
   For removing the wheel trim and removing the wheel bolts.
2. Jack with integral handle.
   For raising the vehicle.
3. Wheel bolt cover removal tool.
   For removing the bolt protectors (covers) on alloy wheels.
4. Socket for the security bolts (located in the glove box).
   For adapting the wheelbrace to the special "security" bolts.
5. A wheel chock for immobilising the vehicle*.
6. Towing eye.
   See "Towing the vehicle".

! The jack must only be used to change a wheel with a damaged tyre.

i The jack does not require any maintenance.

The jack conforms to European legislation, such as defined in the Machinery Directive 2006/42/CE.

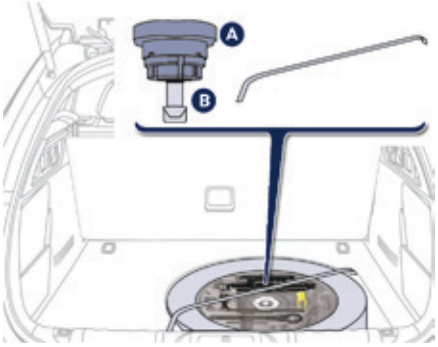
* Depending on country of sale or equipment.

Wheel with wheel trim

When refitting the wheel, refit the trim starting by placing its notch facing the valve and press around its edge with the palm of your hand.

Access to the spare wheel

The spare wheel is located in the boot under the floor.
Depending on the country of sale, the spare wheel may be steel, alloy or of the "space-saver" type.



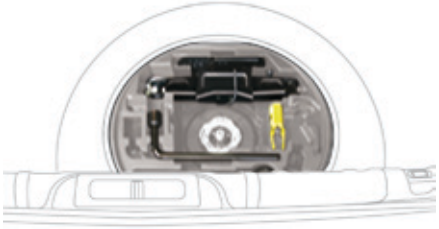
Depending on your vehicle's equipment, the spare wheel is restrained either by a strap or a securing nut **A** and bolt **B**. For the nut, the procedure is given below.



Taking out the wheel

- ☞ Unscrew the (coloured) central nut.
- ☞ Raise the spare wheel towards you from the rear.
- ☞ Take the wheel out of the boot.





Putting the wheel back in place

- Put the wheel back in its housing.
- Unscrew the (coloured) central nut by a few turns then put it in place in the centre of the wheel.
- Tighten fully until the central bolt clicks to retain the wheel correctly.
- Put the box back in place in the centre of the wheel and clip it.
- Put the polystyrene storage box back in place.

Tyre under-inflation detection

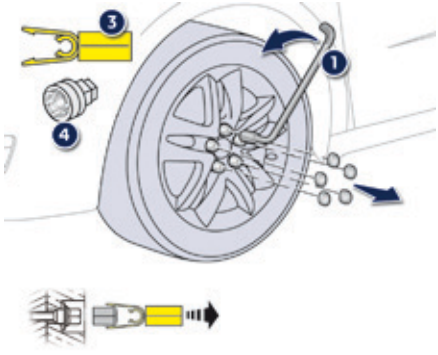
The space-saver type or steel spare wheel does not have a sensor.
The punctured wheel must be repaired by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Removing a wheel

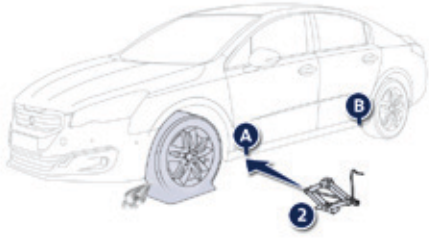
Parking the vehicle

Immobilise the vehicle where it does not block traffic: the ground must be level, stable and not slippery.
Apply the parking brake unless it has been programmed to automatic mode.
Switch off the ignition.
With a manual gearbox, engage first gear to block the wheels.
With an automatic gearbox, place the lever in position **P** to block the wheels.
Check that the braking warning lamp and the **P** warning lamp in the parking brake control lever come on.

Do not use:
- the jack for any other purpose than lifting the vehicle,
- a jack other than the one supplied by the manufacturer.

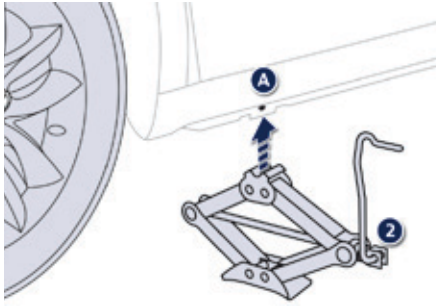


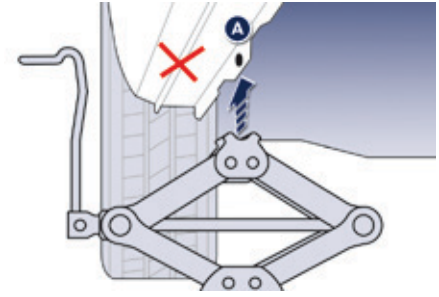
- Remove the wheel bolt cover from each of the bolts using the tool **3** (according to equipment).
- Fit the security socket **4** on the wheelbrace **1** to slacken the security bolt (if fitted).
- Slacken the other bolts using the wheelbrace **1** only.



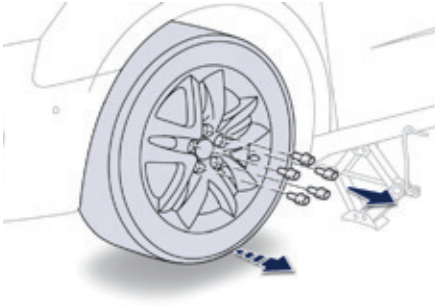
- Place the foot of the jack **2** on the ground and ensure that it is directly below the front **A** or rear **B** jacking point provided on the underbody, whichever is closest to the wheel to be changed.

The occupants must get out of the vehicle and wait where they are safe.
Never go underneath a vehicle raised using a jack; use an axle stand.
If your vehicle does not have a jack, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop for the part numbers of the tools needed to change a wheel: jack and wheelbrace.





☞ Extend the jack **2** until its head comes into contact with the jacking point **A** or **B** used; the vehicle's contact surface at **A** or **B** must engage with the central part of the head of the jack.



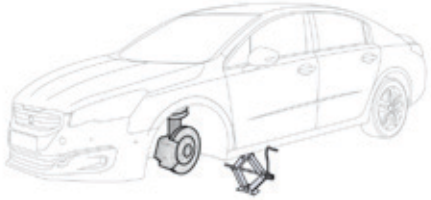
☞ Raise the vehicle until there is sufficient space between the wheel and the ground to admit the spare (not punctured) wheel easily.

☞ Remove the bolts and store them in a clean place.

☞ Remove the wheel.

! Ensure that the jack is stable. If the ground is slippery or loose, the jack might slip or drop - Risk of injury!
Take care to position the jack only at one of the vehicle's jacking points **A** or **B** under the vehicle, ensuring that the contact surface of the vehicle's jacking point is centred on the head of the jack. Otherwise there is a risk of damage to the vehicle and/or that the jack might drop - Risk of injury!

Fitting a wheel



Fitting the "space-saver" spare wheel

If your vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, when tightening the bolts on fitting, it is normal to notice that the washers do not come into contact with the "space-saver" spare wheel. The wheel is secured by the conical surface of each bolt.

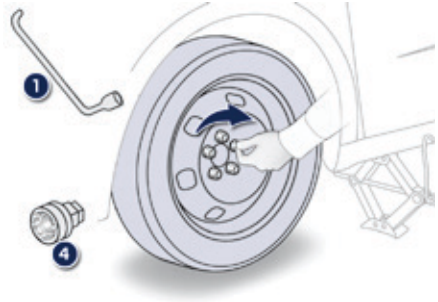
After changing a wheel

To store the punctured wheel in the boot correctly, first remove the central cover.

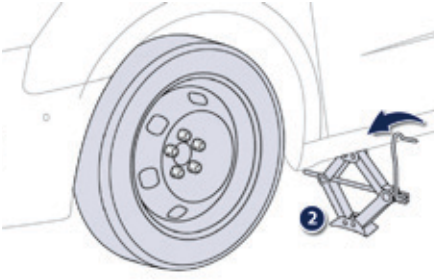
When using the "space-saver" type spare wheel, do not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h).

Have the tightening of the bolts and the pressure of the spare wheel checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.

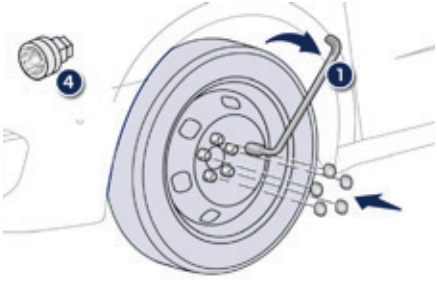
Have the punctured wheel repaired and refitted to the vehicle as soon as possible.



- Put the wheel in place on the hub.
- Screw in the bolts fully by hand.
- Pre-tighten the security bolt using the wheelbrace **1** fitted with the security socket **4**.
- Pre-tighten the other bolts using the wheelbrace **1** only.



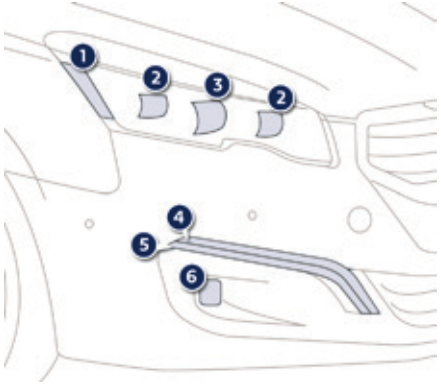
- Lower the vehicle fully.
- Fold the jack **2** and detach it.



- Tighten the security bolt using the wheelbrace **1** fitted with the security socket **4**.
- Tighten the other bolts using the wheelbrace **1** only.
- Refit the wheel bolt cover to each of the bolts (according to equipment).
- Store the tools in the box.

Changing a bulb

Front lamps



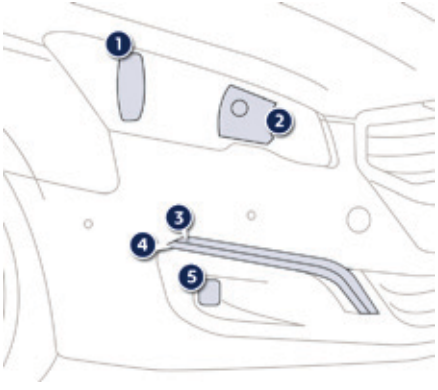
Model with "full LED" technology headlamps

1. **Additional lighting.**
2. **Dipped beam headlamps.**
3. **Main beam headlamps.**
4. **Daytime running lamps.**
5. **Direction indicators / Sidelamps.**
6. **Front foglamps.**

All of these lamps use light-emitting diodes - LEDs.

For the replacement of these light-emitting diode (LED) lamps, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

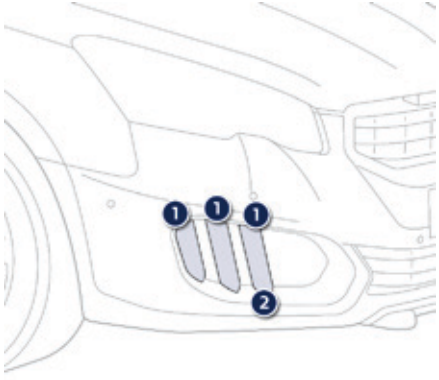
In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), the presence of misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal; it disappears after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.



Model with halogen headlamps

1. **Dipped beam headlamps (H7-55W).**
2. **Main beam headlamps (H7-55W).**
3. **Daytime running lamps (LEDs).**
4. **Direction indicators / Sidelamps (LEDs).**
5. **Foglamps (LEDs).**

For H7 type bulbs with lugs, take care to observe their correct installation so as to ensure the best lighting performance.



Non-hybrid RHX model (lower part)

1. **Daytime running lamps / sidelamps (LEDs).**
2. **Direction indicators (LEDs).**

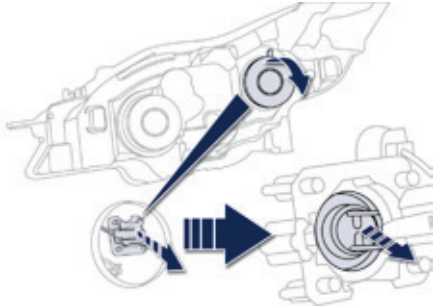
! The headlamps have polycarbonate lenses with a protective coating:

- ☞ **do not clean them using a dry or abrasive cloth, nor with a detergent or solvent product,**
- ☞ use a sponge and soapy water or a pH neutral product,
- ☞ when using a high pressure washer on persistent marks, do not keep the lance directed towards the lamps or their edges for too long, so as not to damage their protective coating and seals.

Changing a bulb should only be done after the headlamp has been switched off for several minutes (risk of serious burns).

- ☞ Do not touch the bulb directly with your fingers, use a lint-free cloth.

It is imperative to use only anti-ultraviolet (UV) type bulbs to avoid damaging the headlamp.
Always replace a failed bulb with a new bulb with the same type and specification.



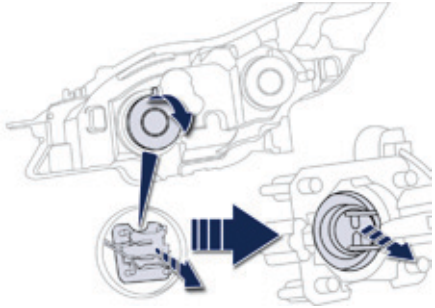
Halogen model

Dipped beam headlamp

- ☞ Remove the protective plastic cover by pulling on the tab.
- ☞ Unclip the bulb connector.
- ☞ Extract the bulb by pulling and change it.

For reassembly, carry out these operations in reverse order.

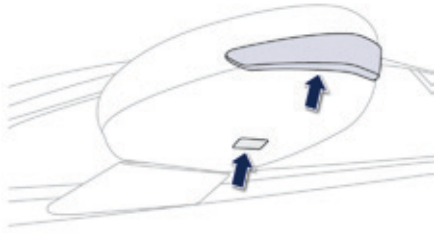
i For the left hand headlamp, it is necessary to remove the battery. Refer to the corresponding section.



Main beam headlamps

- ☞ Remove the protective plastic cover by pulling on the tab.
- ☞ Unclip the bulb connector.
- ☞ Remove the bulb by pulling it out and change it.

For reassembly, carry out these operations in reverse order.



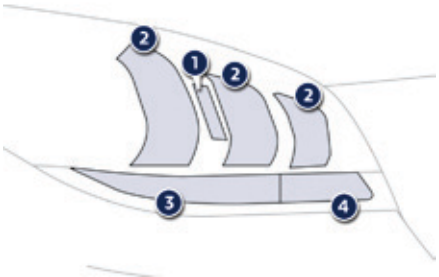
Door mirror spotlamps

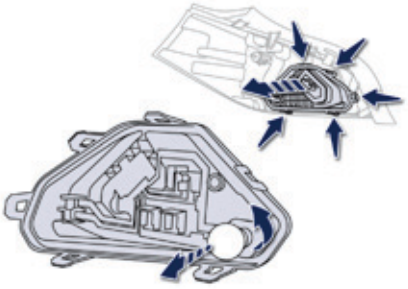
You should contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop for the replacement of the light emitting diode - LED.

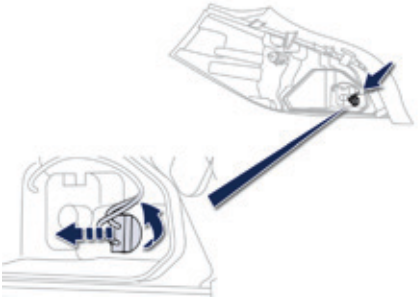
Integrated direction indicator side repeaters

You should contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop for the replacement of these bulbs.

Rear lamps (Saloon)







1. **Brake lamps (light emitting diodes - LEDs).**
2. **Sidelamps (light emitting diodes - LEDs).**
3. **Direction indicators (PY21W amber).**
4. **Foglamps (light-emitting diodes) / Reversing lamps (W16W).**

Light emitting diodes-LEDs

For replacement, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or qualified workshop.

Direction indicators and reversing lamp

Direction indicators

- Open the boot, then the plastic cover.
- Remove the two lamp unit fixing nuts.
- Extract the lamp unit carefully from the outside.
- Disconnect the electrical connector.
- Spread the tabs and remove the bulb holder.
- Turn the bulb a quarter of a turn and pull it out.

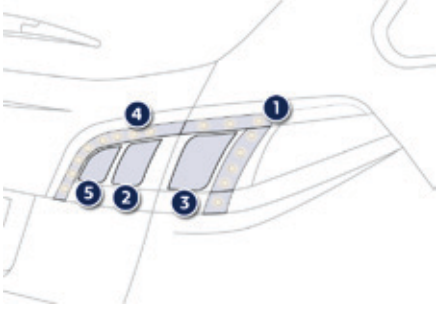
For reassembly, carry out these operations in reverse order.

Reversing lamp

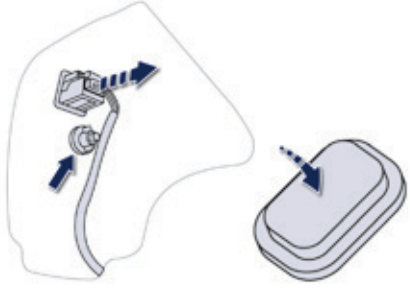
- Remove the direction indicator bulb holder, as described above.
- Turn the bulb a quarter of a turn and change it.

To reassemble, carry out these operations in reverse order.

Rear lamps (SW and non-hybrid RXH)

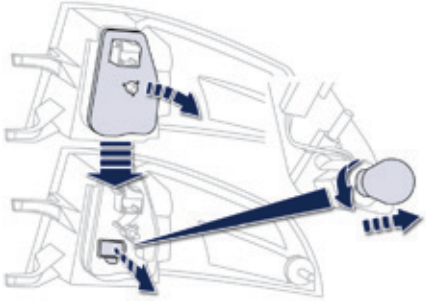


1. **Brake lamps (light emitting diodes - LEDs).**
2. **Reversing lamps (W19W).**
3. **Direction indicators (PY21W amber).**
4. **Sidelamps (light emitting diodes - LEDs).**
5. **Foglamps (light emitting diodes - LEDs).**



Direction indicators (on the wings)

- ☞ Open the boot then remove the access cover.
- ☞ Remove the sealing foam.
- ☞ Disconnect the lamp connector.
- ☞ Remove the lamp fixing nut.

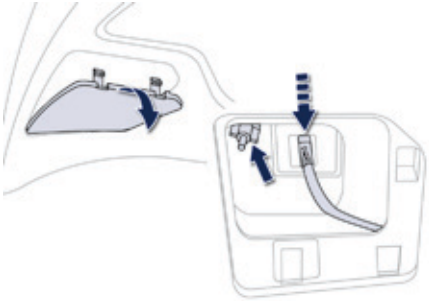


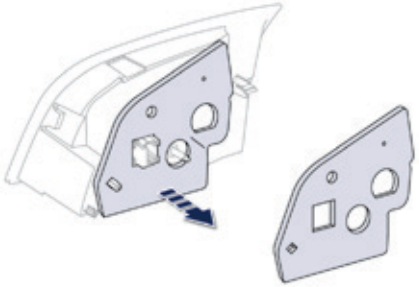
- ☞ Carefully remove the lamp unit from outside.
- ☞ Remove the sealing foam.
- ☞ Unclip the bulb holder.
- ☞ Turn the bulb a quarter of a turn and pull it out.

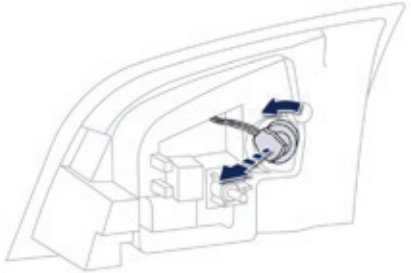
For reassembly, carry out these operations in reverse order.

Light emitting diodes-LEDs

For replacement, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or qualified workshop.



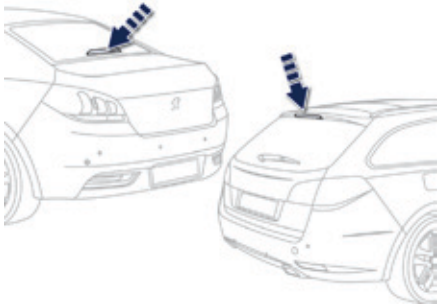




Reversing lamp (tailgate)

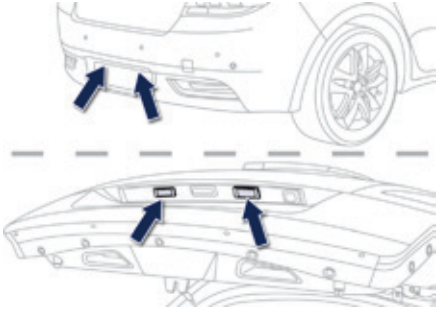
- ☞ Open the tailgate and then remove the access cover.
- ☞ Disconnect the lamp connector.
- ☞ Remove the lamp fixing nut.
- ☞ Carefully remove the lamp from the outside.
- ☞ Remove the sealing foam.
- ☞ Turn the bulb holder a quarter of a turn and pull it out.

For reassembly, carry out these operations in reverse order.



Third brake lamp (light emitting diodes - LEDs)

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or qualified workshop.



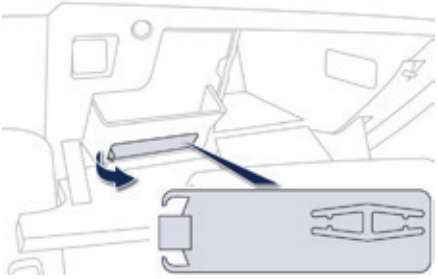
Number plate lamps

- Insert a thin screwdriver into one of the outer holes of the lens.
- Push it outwards to unclip.
- Disconnect the lamp connector.
- Remove the lens.
- Pull the bulb out and change it.

Changing a fuse

Procedure for replacing a failed fuse with a new fuse to rectify a failure of the corresponding function.

Access to the tools



The extraction tweezer and spare fuses are located in the glove box.

Changing a fuse



Good **Failed**

Before changing a fuse, the cause of the failure must be identified and rectified.

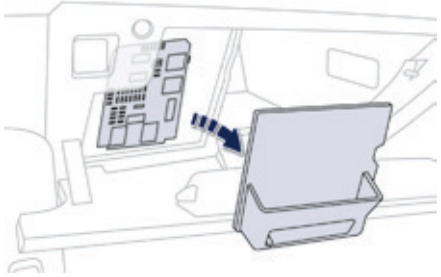
- ☞ Identify the failed fuse by checking the condition of its filament.
- ☞ Use the special tweezer to extract the fuse from its housing.
- ☞ Always replace the faulty fuse with a fuse of the same rating.
- ☞ Check that the number marked on the fusebox, the rating marked on the fuse and the following tables all agree.

Installing electrical accessories

Your vehicle's electrical system is designed to operate with standard or optional equipment.
Before installing other electrical equipment or accessories on your vehicle, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

PEUGEOT will not accept responsibility for the cost incurred in repairing your vehicle or for rectifying malfunctions resulting from the installation of accessories not supplied and not recommended by PEUGEOT and not installed in accordance with its instructions, in particular when the combined consumption of all of the additional equipment connected exceeds 10 milliamperes.

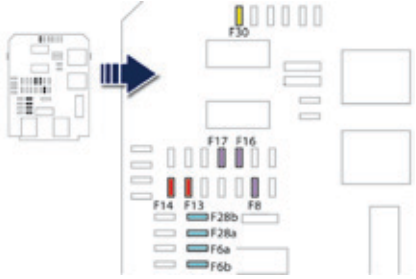
Fuses behind the glove box



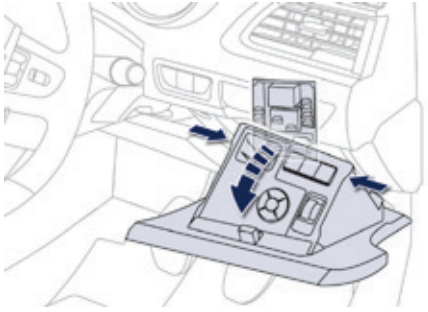
Fuse N°	Rating (A)	Functions
F6 A or B	15	Audio system.
F8	3	Alarm.
F13	10	Front cigarette lighter.
F14	10	Front 12 V socket.
F16	3	Rear courtesy lamp, rear map reading lamps.
F17	3	Front courtesy lamp, vanity mirror.
F28 A or B	15	Audio system.
F30	20	Rear wiper.
F32	10	Audio amplifier.

Access to the fuses

- ☞ Open the glove box.
- ☞ Remove the plastic cover.



Dashboard fuses

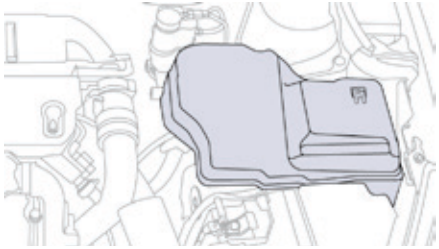


The fusebox is placed in the lower dashboard (right-hand side).

Fuse N°	Rating (A)	Functions
F3	15	Driver's electric window panel, 12 V socket for rear seats.
F4	15	12 V socket in boot.
F5	30	One-touch rear window.
F6	30	One-touch front window.
F11	20	Trailer unit.
F12	20	Audio amplifier.
F15	20	Panoramic sunroof blind (SW and non-hybrid RXH).
F16	5	Driver's electric window switch panel.



Engine compartment fuses

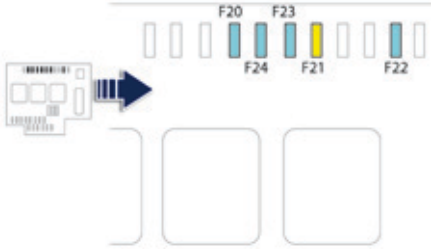


The fusebox is placed in the engine compartment near the battery.

Fuse N°	Rating (A)	Functions
F20	**15**	Front / rear screenwash pump.
F21	**20**	Headlamp wash pump.
F22	**15**	Horn.
F23	**15**	Right-hand main beam headlamp.
F24	**15**	Left-hand main beam headlamp.

Access to the fuses

- ☞ Unclip the cover.
- ☞ Change the fuse (see corresponding paragraph).
- ☞ When you have finished, close the cover carefully to ensure correct sealing of the fusebox.



12 V battery

Procedure for starting the engine using another battery or charging a discharged battery.

General points

Lead-acid starter batteries

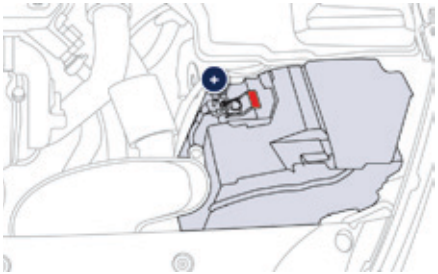
Batteries contain harmful substances such as sulphuric acid and lead.
They must be disposed of in accordance with regulations and must not, in any circumstances, be discarded with household waste.
Take used remote control batteries and vehicle batteries to a special collection point.

Versions equipped with Stop & Start are fitted with a 12 V lead-acid battery of specific technology and specification. Its replacement should be carried out only by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Protect your eyes and face before handling the battery.
All operations on the battery must be carried out in a well ventilated area and away from naked flames and sources of sparks, so as to avoid the risk of explosion or fire.
Wash your hands afterwards.

If your vehicle has an automatic gearbox, do not try to start the engine by pushing the vehicle.

Access to the battery



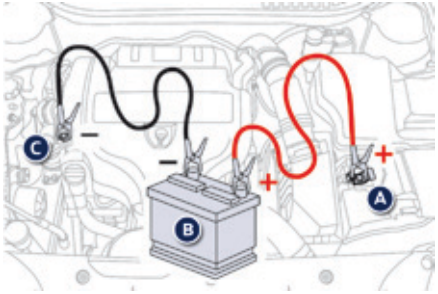
The battery is located under the bonnet.
To gain access to it:

- open the bonnet using the interior release lever, then the exterior safety catch,
- remove the plastic cover on the (+) terminal,
- if necessary, unclip the fusebox to remove the battery.

Starting using another battery

When your vehicle's battery is discharged, the engine can be started using a slave battery (external or on another vehicle) and jump lead cables or a battery booster.

! Never try to start the engine by connecting a battery charger.
Never use a 24 V or higher battery booster.
First check that the slave battery has a nominal voltage of 12 V and a capacity at least equal to that of the discharged battery.
The two vehicles must not be in contact with each other.
Switch off the electrical consumers on both vehicles (audio system, wipers, lighting, ...).
Ensure that the jump lead cables do not pass close to moving parts of the engine (cooling fan, belts, ...).
Do not disconnect the (+) terminal when the engine is running.



- Raise the plastic cover on the (+) terminal, if your vehicle has one.
- Connect the red cable to the positive terminal (+) of the flat battery **A** (at the metal elbow) then to the positive terminal (+) of the slave battery **B** or the booster.
- Connect one end of the green or black cable to the negative terminal (-) of the slave battery **B** or the booster (or earth point on the other vehicle).
- Connect the other end of the green or black cable to the earth point **C** on the broken down vehicle.
- Start the engine of the vehicle with the good battery and leave it running for a few minutes.
- Operate the starter on the broken down vehicle and let the engine run.
If the engine does not start straight away, switch off the ignition and wait a few moments before trying again.
- Wait until the engine returns to idle then disconnect the jump lead cables in the reverse order.
- Refit the plastic cover to the (+) terminal, if your vehicle has one.
- Allow the engine to run for at least 30 minutes, by driving or with the vehicle stationary, so that the battery reaches an adequate state of charge.

i Some functions, including Stop & Start, are not available if the battery is not sufficiently charged.

Charging the battery using a battery charger

For optimum service life of the battery, it is essential to maintain an adequate state of charge.

In some circumstances it may be necessary to charge the battery:

- if you use your vehicle essentially for short journeys,
- if the vehicle is to be taken off the road for several weeks.

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! If you envisage charging your vehicle's battery yourself, use only a charger compatible with lead-acid batteries of a nominal voltage of 12 V.

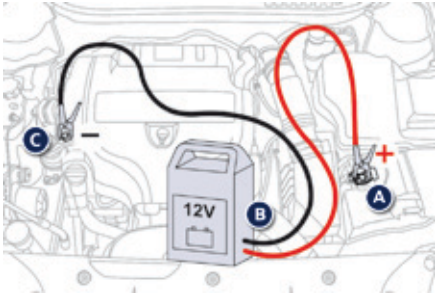


If this label is present, it is essential to use only a 12 V charger, to avoid causing irreversible damage to the electrical components related to the Stop & Start system.

! Follow the instructions for use provided by the manufacturer of the charger. Never reverse polarities.

i It is not necessary to disconnect the battery.

- Switch off the ignition.
- Switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, lighting, wipers, ...).
- Switch off the charger **B** before connecting the cables to the battery, so as to avoid any dangerous sparks.
- Ensure that the charger cables are in good condition.
- Raise the plastic cover, if your vehicle has one, on the (+) terminal.
- Connect the charger **B** cables as follows:
  - the positive (+) red cable to the (+) terminal of the battery **A**,
  - the negative (-) black cable to the earth point **C** on the vehicle.
- At the end of the charging operation, switch off the charger **B** before disconnecting the cables from the battery **A**.



! Never try to charge a frozen battery.
If the battery has been frozen, have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop, who will check that the internal components have not been damaged and the casing is not cracked, which could cause a leak of toxic and corrosive acid.

Disconnecting the battery

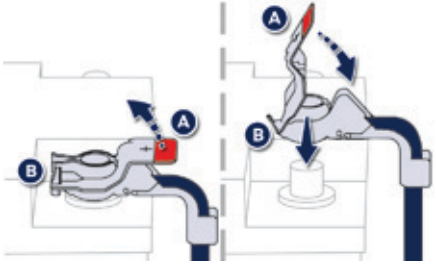
In order to maintain an adequate state of charge for starting the engine, it is recommended that the battery be disconnected if the vehicle is taken out of service for a long period.
Wait 2 minutes after switching off the ignition before disconnecting the battery.

- ☞ close the windows and the doors before disconnecting the battery,
- ☞ switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, wipers, lighting, ...),
- ☞ switch off the ignition and wait for four minutes.

Having exposed the battery, it is only necessary to disconnect the (+) terminal.

! Do not force the lever as locking will not be possible if the clamp is not positioned correctly; start the procedure again.

Quick release terminal



Disconnecting the (+) terminal

- ☞ Raise the lever **A** fully to release the clamp **B**.

Reconnecting the (+) terminal

- ☞ Position the open clamp **B** of the cable on the positive post (+) of the battery.
- ☞ Press down on the clamp to position it correctly on the battery post.
- ☞ Lock the clamp by lowering the lever **A**.

Following reconnection of the battery

After reconnecting the battery, switch on the ignition and wait 1 minute before starting to allow initialisation of the electronic systems.
However, if minor problems persist following this operation, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
Referring to the corresponding section, you must yourself reinitialise or reset certain systems, such as:

- the remote control or electronic key (depending on version),
- the electric blind(s),
- the electric windows
- the date and time,
- the radio preset stations.

i The Stop & Start system may not be operational during the trip following the first engine start.
In this case, the system will only be available again after a continuous period of immobilisation of the vehicle, a period which depends on the ambient temperature and the state of charge of the battery (up to about 8 hours).

Removing - refitting the battery*

This procedure allows you to safely remove the battery when needed to change a failed bulb.

You can also call on a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to carry out this procedure.

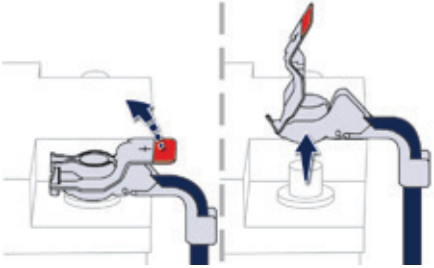
Before removal

- Place the vehicle in a ventilated location, with free access and preferably on a level surface.
- Apply the parking brake.
- Put the gear lever into neutral (position **N** for an automatic gearbox).
- If the vehicle has an alarm, leave the bonnet open to avoid triggering the alarm.
- Leave at least one window open if in a secure location, otherwise lock all the doors and the boot.
- If the vehicle has a motorised tailgate, it will not be possible to open it after disconnecting the battery.
- Switch off the ignition and remove the key.
- If the vehicle has Keyless Entry and Starting, take the remote control at least 3 metres away from the vehicle.
- Wait about 4 minutes (or 12 minutes with an automatic gearbox) before disconnecting the battery.

8

* Valid only for **Saloon**, **SW** and **non-hybrid RHX**.

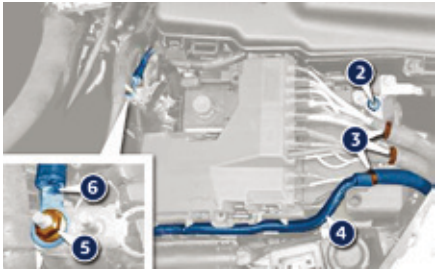
Removal



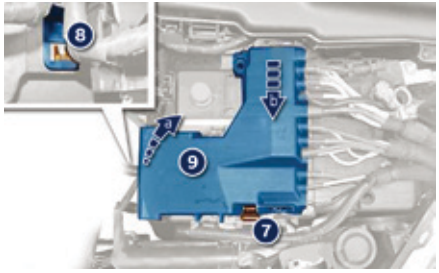
- Disconnect the positive (**+**) terminal from the battery.



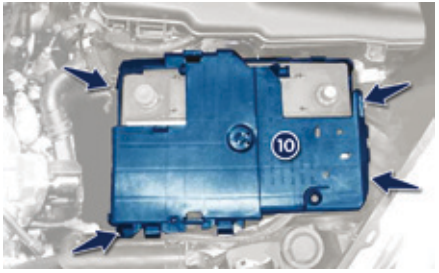
- Remove the battery cover **1**.



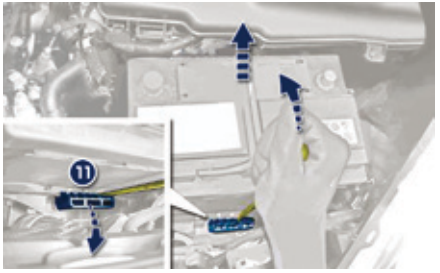
- Release **2** then disconnect the negative (**-**) terminal from the battery.
- Unclip the wiring harnesses **3**.
- Unclip and move aside the wiring harness **4**.
- Remove the nut **5** from the positive (**+**) cable.
- Move aside wiring harness **6**.



- Using a screwdriver, unclip the clips **7** and **8**.
- Raise the power shut-off unit **9**.
- Move this unit forward out of the way.

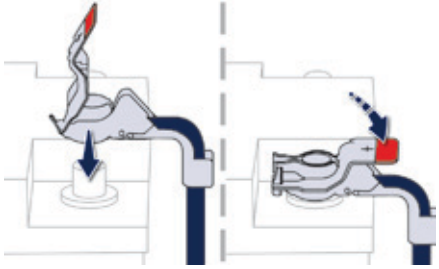


- Unclip the clips.
- Remove the battery cover **10**.



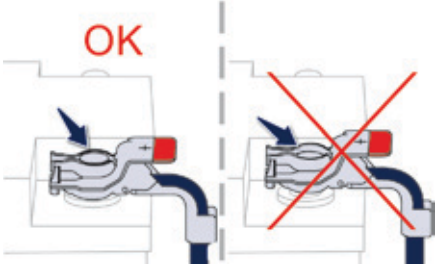
- Using a screwdriver, lever the fixing **11** aside and remove the battery.

Refitting



To reassemble, carry out the removal operations in reverse order, connecting the positive (+) terminal last.

After refitting



- Check that the battery terminals are secure.
- Switch on the ignition, without starting the engine.
- Check that there are no error messages or warning lamps on. If necessary contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system reset.
- Check the correct operation of all doors and windows.
- After refitting, wait around 1 minute (or 2 minutes for an automatic gearbox).
- Start the engine.
- Check the correct operation of anti-pinch systems: electric windows, opening roof, panoramic sunroof.
- If the vehicle has an electric parking brake, check that it is working correctly by releasing and applying it.
- Switch the ignition off.
- Get out of the vehicle then check that the remote control works correctly.
- Set: the time, the preset radio stations and the audio settings.

After refitting the battery, some systems may be temporarily unavailable:
Stop (Stop & Start), Air conditioning, Navigation.

In all cases, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop if there are any faults after refitting the battery.

Load reduction mode

System which manages the use of certain functions according to the level of charge remaining in the battery.
When the vehicle is being driven, the load reduction function temporarily deactivates certain functions, such as the air conditioning, the heated rear screen...
The deactivated functions are reactivated automatically as soon as conditions permit.

Energy economy mode

System which manages the duration of use of certain functions to conserve a sufficient level of charge in the battery.
After the engine has stopped, you can still use functions such as the audio and telematics system, windscreen wipers, dipped beam headlamps, courtesy lamps, etc. for a maximum combined duration of about forty minutes.

Switching to economy mode

A message then appears in the instrument panel screen indicating that the vehicle has switched to economy mode and the active functions are put on standby.
If a telephone call is being made at this time, it will be maintained for around 10 minutes with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system.

Exiting economy mode

These functions are reactivated automatically next time the vehicle is driven.
In order to restore the use of these functions immediately, start the engine and let it run:

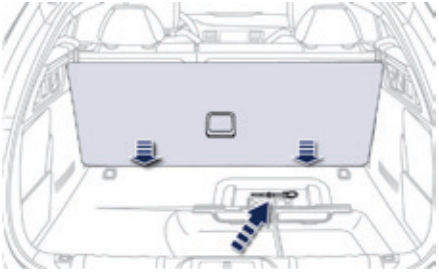
- for less than ten minutes, to use the equipment for approximately five minutes,
- for more than ten minutes, to use the equipment for up to approximately thirty minutes.

Let the engine run for the duration specified to ensure that the battery charge is sufficient.
Do not repeatedly and continuously restart the engine in order to charge the battery.
A flat battery prevents the engine from starting.
For more information on the battery, refer to the corresponding section.

Towing the vehicle

Procedure for having your vehicle towed or for towing another vehicle using a removable towing eye.

Access to the tools

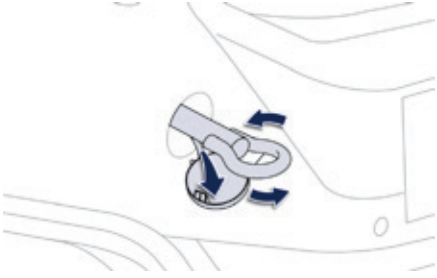


The towing eye is installed in the boot under the floor.

To gain access to it:

- ☞ open the boot,
- ☞ position the floor vertically,
- ☞ remove the towing eye.

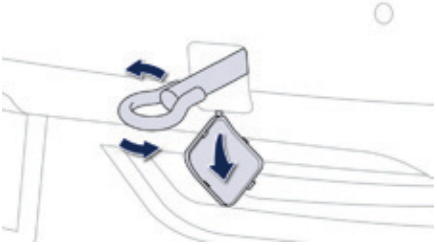
Towing your vehicle



- ☞ On the front bumper, unclip the cover by pressing at the bottom.
- ☞ Screw the towing eye in fully.
- ☞ Install the towing bar.
- ☞ Switch on the hazard warning lamps on the towed vehicle.

Put the gear lever into neutral (position **N** for an automatic gearbox). Failure to follow this instruction could lead to damage to certain components (brakes, transmission, ...) and the absence of braking assistance on restarting the engine.

Towing another vehicle



- ☞ On the rear bumper, unclip the cover by pressing at the bottom.
- ☞ Screw the towing eye in fully.
- ☞ Install the towing bar.
- ☞ Switch on the hazard warning lamps on the towed vehicle.

! General recommendations

Observe the legislation in force in your country.
Ensure that the weight of the towing vehicle is higher than that of the towed vehicle.
The driver must remain at the wheel of the towed vehicle and must have a valid driving licence.
When towing a vehicle with all four wheels on the ground, always use an approved towing arm; rope and straps are prohibited.
The towing vehicle must move off gently.
When towing a vehicle with the engine off, there is no longer any power assistance for braking or steering.
In the following cases, you must always call on a professional recovery service:

- vehicle broken down on a motorway or fast road,
- four-wheel drive vehicle,
- when it is not possible to put the gearbox into neutral, unlock the steering, or release the parking brake,
- towing with only two wheels on the ground,
- where there is no approved towing arm available...

Petrol engines and gearboxes

Petrol engine	**1.6 litre THP 150 / 156**		**1.6 litre THP 165 S&S**	
Gearbox	Automatic (6-speed)		Manual (6-speed)	EAT6 automatic (6-speed)
Model code **8D...: 508 saloon** **8E...: 508 SW**	8D5FNA - 8E5FNA 8D5FVA - 8E5FVA	8D 5FZ A**	8D5GZM/S 8E5GZM/S	8D5GZT/S 8E5GZT/S
Cubic capacity (cc)	1 598	1 601**	1 598	
Bore x stroke (mm)	77 x 85.8		77 x 85.8	
Max power: EU standard (kW)*	110 115	115**	121	
Max power engine speed (rpm)	6 000		6 000	
Max torque: EU standard (Nm)	240		240	
Max torque engine speed (rpm)	1 400	3 000**	1 400	
Fuel	Unleaded		Unleaded	
Catalytic converter	yes		yes	
Oil capacities (in litres)				
Engine (with filter replacement)	4.25		4.25	

* The maximum power corresponds to the value type approved on a test bed, under conditions defined by European legislation (Directive 1999/99/EC).
** For Iran only.

Petrol weights and towed loads (in kg)

Petrol engine	**1.6 litre THP 150 / 156**			**1.6 litre THP 165 S&S**			
Gearbox	Automatic (6-speed)			Manual (6-speed)		EAT6 automatic (6-speed)	
Model code	8D5FNA 8D5FVA	8D5FZA***	8E5FNA 8E5FVA	8D5GZM/S	8E5GZM/S	8D5GZT/S	8E5GZT/S
Body	Saloon		SW	Saloon	SW	Saloon	SW
- Unladen weight	1 410		1 430	1 400	1 420	1 410	1 430
- Kerb weight*	1 485		1 505	1 475	1 495	1 485	1 505
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	2 015		2 100	1 995	2 080	2 015	2 100
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12 % gradient	3 615	2 515***	3 600	3 595	3 580	3 615	3 600
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10 % or 12 % gradient	1 600	500***	1 500	1 600	1 500	1 600	1 500
- Braked trailer** (with load transfer within the GTW limit)	1 875	775***	1 775	1 875	1 775	1 875	1 775
- Unbraked trailer	740	500***	750	735	745	740	750
- Recommended nose weight	75			75			

* The kerb weight is equal to the unladen weight + driver (75 kg).
** The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount; warning, towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.
*** For Iran only.
The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.
The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).
High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.

Diesel engines and gearboxes

Diesel engine	**1.6 litre BlueHDi 120 S&S**		**2.0 litre HDi 140**
Gearbox	Manual (6-speed)	EAT6 automatic (6-speed)	Manual (6-speed)
Model code **8D...: 508 saloon** **8E...: 508 SW**	8DBHZM/S 8EBHXM/S	8DBHZT/S - 8DBHXT/S 8EBHZT/S - 8EBHXT/S	8DRHR8 8DRHF8
Cubic capacity (cc)	1 560	1 560	1 997
Bore x stroke (mm)	75 x 88.3	75 x 88.3	85 x 88
Max power: EU standard (kW)*	88	88	103
Max power engine speed (rpm)	3 500	3 500	4 000
Max torque: EU standard (Nm)	300	300	320
Max torque engine speed (rpm)	1 750	1 750	2 000
Fuel	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel
Catalytic converter	yes	yes	yes
Particle filter	yes	yes	yes
Oil capacity (in litres)			
Engine (with filter replacement)	3.25	3.25	5.25

* The maximum power corresponds to the value type approved on a test bed, under conditions defined by European legislation (Directive 1999/99/EC).

Diesel engines and gearboxes

Diesel engine	**2.0 litre HDi 136 / 163**		**2.0 litre BlueHDI 136** / 150 S&S**	**2.0 litre BlueHDi 180 S&S**
Gearbox	Manual (6-speed)	EAT6 automatic (6-speed)	Manual (6-speed)	EAT6 automatic (6-speed)
Model code **8D... : 508 Berline** **8E... : 508 SW** **8U... : 508 Non-hybrid RXH**	8DRHHA 8DRHDA	8DRHH8	8DAHXM/S 8EAHXM/S	8DAHWT/S 8EAHWT/S 8UAHWT/S
Cubic capacity (cc)	1 997	1 997	1 997	1 997
Bore x stroke (mm)	85 x 88	85 x 88	85 x 88	85 x 88
Max power: EU standard (kW)*	120	100 120	100** 110	132
Max. power engine speed (rpm)	3 750	3 750	4 000	3 750
Max torque: EU standard (Nm)	340	340	370	400
Max torque engine speed (rpm)	2 000	2 000	2 000	2 000
Fuel	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel
Catalytic converter	yes	yes	yes	yes
Particle filter	yes	yes	yes	yes
Oil capacities (in litres)				
Engine (with filter replacement)	5	5	6.1	5.1

* The maximum power corresponds to the value type approved on a test bed, under conditions defined by European legislation (Directive 1999/99/EC).

** For Belgium only.

Diesel weights and towed loads (in kg)

Diesel engine	**1.6 litre BlueHDi 120 S&S**			
Gearbox	Manual (6-speed)		EAT6 automatic (6-speed)	
Model code	8DBHZM/S	8EBHXM/S	8DBHZT/S 8DBHXT/S	8EBHZT/S 8EBHXT/S
Body	Saloon	SW	Saloon	SW
- Unladen weight	1 410	1 430	1 425	1 445
- Kerb weight*	1 485	1 505	1 500	1 520
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	2 025	2 120	2 045	2 140
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12% gradient	3 225	3 220	2 945	2 940
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10% or 12% gradient	1 200	1 100	900	800
- Braked trailer** (with load transfer with the GTW limit)	1 475	1 375	1 175	1 075
- Unbraked trailer	740	745	740	750
- Recommended nose weight	75			

* The kerb weight is equal to the unladen weight + driver (75 kg).

** The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount; warning, towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.

Diesel weights and towed loads (in kg)

Diesel engine	**2.0 litre HDi 140**	**2.0 litre HDi 136 / 163**	
Gearbox	Manual (6-speed)	Manual (6-speed)	EAT6 automatic (6-speed)
Model code	8DRHR8 8DRHF8	8DRHHA 8DRHDA	8DRHH8
Body	Saloon	Saloon	Saloon
- Unladen weight	1 430	1 520	1 480
- Kerb weight*	1 505	1 595	1 555
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	2 065	2 105	2 075
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12 % gradient	3 665	3 405	3 675
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10% or 12% gradient	1 600	1 300	1 600
- Braked trailer** (with load transfer with the GTW limit)	1 875	1 575	1 875
- Unbraked trailer	750	750	
- Recommended nose weight	75	75	

* The kerb weight is equal to the unladen weight + driver (75 kg).

** The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount; warning, towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.

Diesel weights and towed loads (in kg)

Diesel engine	**2.0 litre BlueHDi 136*** / 150 S&S**		**2.0 litre BlueHDi 180 S&S**		
Gearbox	Manual (6-speed)		EAT6 automatic (6-speed)		
Model code	8DAHXM/S	8EAHXM/S	8DAHWT/S	8EAHWT/S	8UAHWT/S
Body	Saloon	SW	Saloon	SW	non-hybrid RXH
- Unladen weight	1 500	1 520	1 540	1 620	1 650
- Kerb weight*	1 575	1 595	1 615	1 695	1 725
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	2 125	2 200	2 165	2 240	2 240
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12% gradient	3 725	3 700	3 465	3 440	3 440
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10% or 12% gradient	1 600	1 500	1 300	1 200	1 200
- Braked trailer** (with load transfer with the GTW limit)	1 875	1 775	1 575	1 475	1 475
- Unbraked trailer	750		750		
- Recommended nose weight	75		75		

* The kerb weight is equal to the unladen weight + driver (75 kg).

** The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount; warning, towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

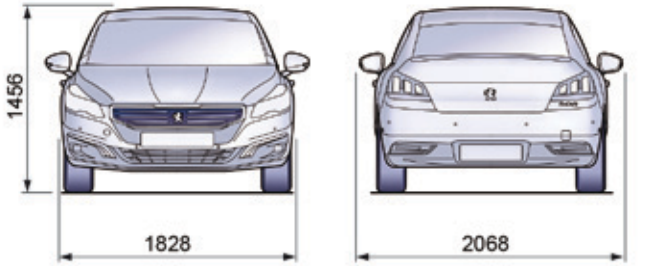
*** For Belgium only

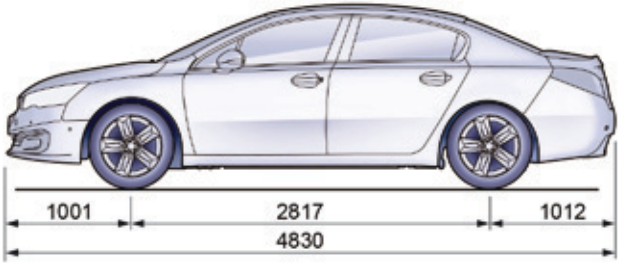
The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

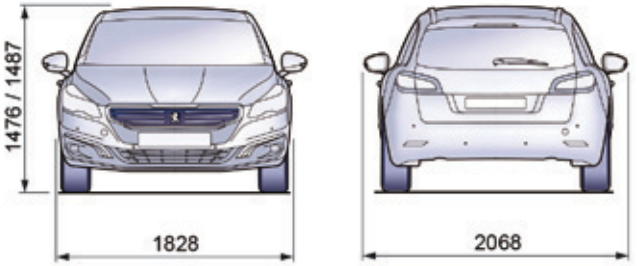
High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.

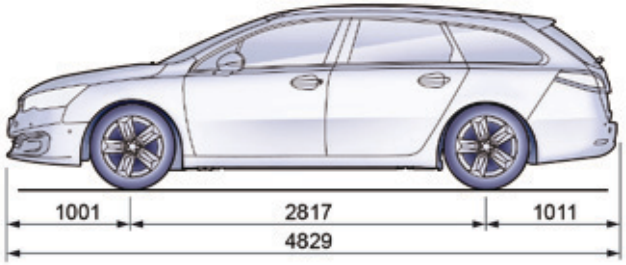
Dimensions (in mm)



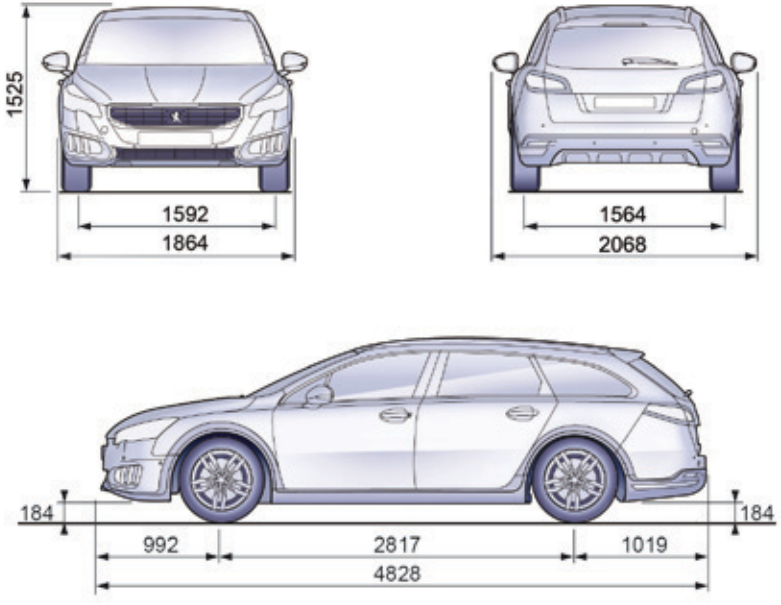


Saloon





SW

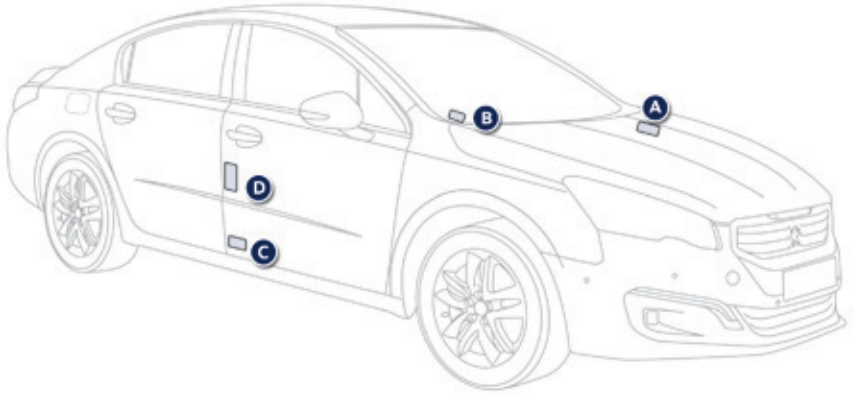


Non-hybrid RXH

! Be aware of the ground clearance of your vehicle: around 184 mm (with the vehicle in working order: driver only and the fuel tank full) in ideal conditions.
This value will vary with vehicle load, the nature of the ground surface and the surroundings.
If the driver considers that the vehicle can traverse an obstacle, they assume entire responsibility for this.

Identification markings

Various visible markings for the identification of your vehicle.



A. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) under the bonnet.
This number is engraved on the bodywork near the damper mounting.

B. Vehicle identification Number (VIN) on the windscreen lower crossmember.
This number is given on a self-adhesive label which is visible through the windscreen.

C. Manufacturer's label.
The VIN is marked on a self-destroying label affixed to the door aperture, on the driver's side.

D. Tyre/paint label.
This label is fitted to the middle pillar, on the driver's side.

It bears the following information:
- the tyre inflation pressures with and without load,
- the tyre sizes,
- the inflation pressure of the spare wheel,
- the paint colour code.

The tyre pressures must be checked when the tyres are cold, at least once a month.

Low tyre pressures increase fuel consumption.

Emergency or assistance call





PEUGEOT Connect SOS

SOS

In an emergency, press this button for more than 2 seconds. Flashing of the green LED and a voice message confirm that the call has been made to the "PEUGEOT Connect SOS" call centre*.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request.
The green LED goes off.
Pressing this button for more than 8 seconds cancels the request at any time.

The green LED remains on (without flashing) when communication is established.
It goes off at the end of the call.

"PEUGEOT Connect SOS" immediately locates your vehicle, starts communication with you in your language**, and where necessary sends the appropriate public emergency services**. In countries where the service is not available, or when the locating service has been expressly declined, the call is sent directly to the emergency services (112) without the vehicle location.

! If an impact is detected by the airbag control unit, and independently of the deployment of any airbags, an emergency call is made automatically.

i If you benefit from the PEUGEOT Connect Packs offer with the SOS and assistance pack included, there are additional services available to you in your MyPEUGEOT personal space, via the PEUGEOT Internet website in your country, accessible on www.peugeot.co.uk.

* Subject to the general conditions for the service available from dealers and to technological and technical limitations.

** Depending on the geographical cover of "PEUGEOT Connect SOS", "PEUGEOT Connect Assistance" and the official national language selected by the owner of the vehicle. The list of countries covered and PEUGEOT CONNECT services is available from dealers or at www.peugeot.co.uk.

Operation of the system



When the ignition is switched on, the green LED comes on for 3 seconds indicating that the system is operating correctly.



If the orange LED flashes then goes off: there is a system fault.

The orange LED is on continuously: the backup battery must be replaced.
In either case, the emergency and assistance calls may not function.
Contact a qualified repairer as soon as possible.

i A fault with the system does not prevent the vehicle being driven.

PEUGEOT Connect Assistance



Press this button for more than 2 seconds to request assistance if the vehicle breaks down.
A voice message confirms that the call has been made**.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request.
The cancellation is confirmed by a voice message.

** Depending on the geographical cover of "PEUGEOT Connect SOS", "PEUGEOT Connect Assistance" and the official national language selected by the owner of the vehicle. The list of countries covered and PEUGEOT CONNECT services is available from dealers or at www.peugeot.co.uk.

i If you purchased your vehicle outside the PEUGEOT dealer network, we invite you to have a dealer check the configuration of these services and, if desired, modified to suit your wishes.
In a multi-lingual country, configuration is possible in the official national language of your choice.

i For technical reasons and in particular to improve the quality of "PEUGEOT CONNECT services" services to customers, the manufacturer reserves the right to carry out updates to the vehicle's on-board telematic system.

JBL EQUIPMENT



The Hi-Fi system is a 5.1 system developed by PEUGEOT in conjunction with JBL.

4 two-way speaker kits, separated by an active filter, are fitted at front and rear.
These are based on a fabric dome tweeter delivering stable and balanced treble reproduction and a 50W RMS neodymium magnet inverted motor medium-woofer possessing a very high output of bass frequencies.
The central acoustic path in the dashboard improves reproduction of the musical scene, putting the listener in a situation that realistically reproduces the original musical recording.
The bass unit located in the boot carries a 150W triple-coil true subwoofer in an optimised space, giving depth and impact to the bass ranges.
This set of speakers is controlled by a 10-way 500W RMS 2 ohm amplifier, using advanced surround sound and sound distribution handling, so as to deliver optimum performance both for the driver and for the passengers in the vehicle.

7-inch touch screen

GPS satellite navigation - Multimedia audio - Bluetooth® telephone



Contents

First steps	278
Steering mounted controls	280
Menus	281
Media	282
Radio	288
DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio	290
Music	292
Navigation	296
Navigation - Guidance	304
Traffic	308
Configuration	310
Connected services	318
PEUGEOT Connect Apps	319
Telephone	320
Frequently asked questions	328

The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle.

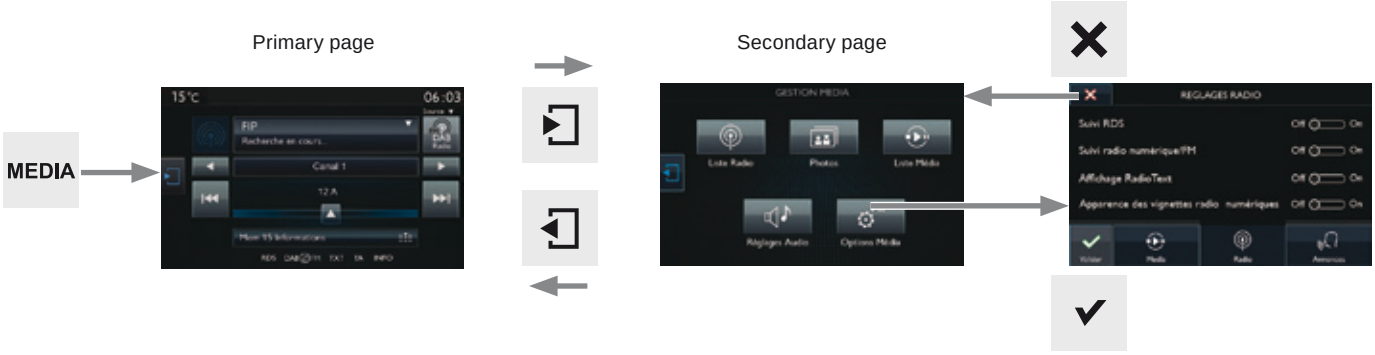
As a safety measure, the driver should only carry out operations which require prolonged attention while the vehicle is stationary. The display of an energy economy mode message signals that electrical systems operating are going into standby.
Refer to the energy economy mode section.

First steps

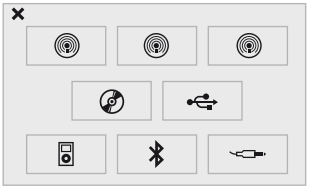
Use the buttons below the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.
Each menu is displayed in one or two pages (primary page and secondary page).



In very hot conditions, the system may go into stand-by (screen and sound completely off) for a minimum period of 5 minutes.



Shortcuts: using virtual buttons in the top band of the touch screen, it is possible to go directly to the choice of audio source, the list of stations (or titles depending on the source) or to temperature adjustment.



Selecting the audio source (depending on version):

- "FM" / "DAB"* / "AM"* radio wavebands.
- "USB" memory stick.
- CD player in the facade.
- Telephone connected by Bluetooth* and by Bluetooth* audio streaming.
- Media player connected to the auxiliary socket (jack, cable not supplied).



With the engine running, press to mute the sound.
With the ignition off, press to switch the system on.

Volume adjustment (each source is independent, including Traffic announcements (TA) and navigation instructions).

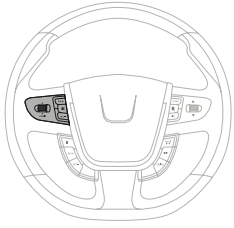
In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system. The return to normal takes place when the temperature in the passenger compartment drops.

The screen is of the "resistive" type, it is necessary to press firmly, particularly for "flick" gestures (scrolling through a list, moving the map...). A simple wipe will not be enough. Pressing with more than one finger is not recognised.
The screen can be used when wearing gloves. This technology allows use at all temperatures.

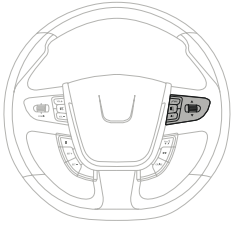
To clean the screen, use a soft non-abrasive cloth (spectacles cloth) without any additional product.
Do not use pointed objects on the screen.
Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

* Depending on equipment.

Steering mounted controls









Press: open the instrument panel screen menu.
Rotate: navigate in the instrument panel screen menu.

Increase volume.

Mute/ restore sound.

Reduce volume.

SRC

Media: change the multimedia source.
Telephone: start call.
Call in progress: open the telephone men (End call, Secret mode, Hands-free mode).
Telephone, press and hold: reject an incoming call, end a call; other than call in progress, open the telephone menu.

Radio, rotate: automatic search for the previous / next station.
Media, rotate: previous / next track.
Press: confirm a selection.

Display the carousel of menus.

LIST

Radio: display the list of stations.
Media: display the list of tracks.
Radio, press and hold: update the list of stations received.

Menus

DRIVE Driving assistance



Access to the trip computer.
Activate, deactivate, adjust settings for certain vehicle functions.

MEDIA Media



Select an audio source, a radio station, display photographs.

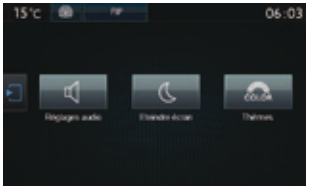
NAV Navigation

(Depending on equipment)



Enter navigation settings and choose a destination.

SETUP Configuration



Audio settings (balance, ambience...), color scheme, brightness of the instruments, display (language, units, time, ...).

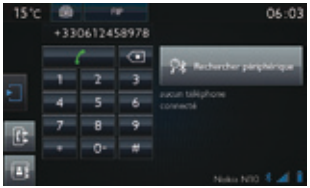
WEB Connected services

(Depending on equipment)



PEUGEOT CONNECT APPS
Connect to an applications portal to facilitate, make safe and personalise journeys by means of a connection key available on subscription from a PEUGEOT dealer.

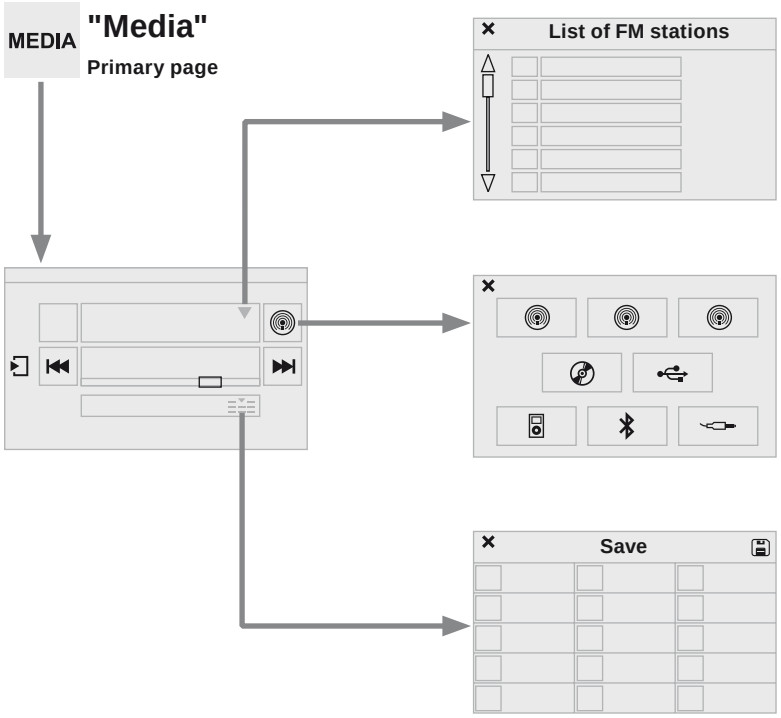
TEL Telephone



Connect a telephone by Bluetooth®.

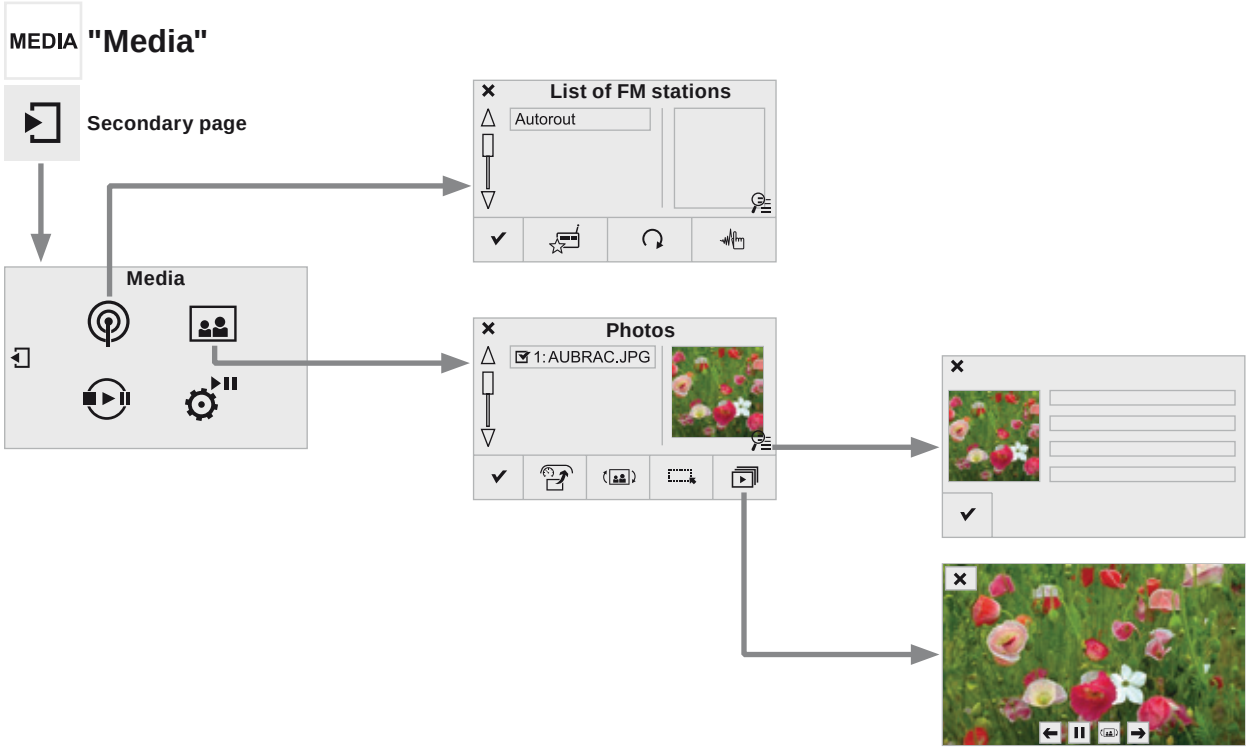
Media

Level 1	Level 2



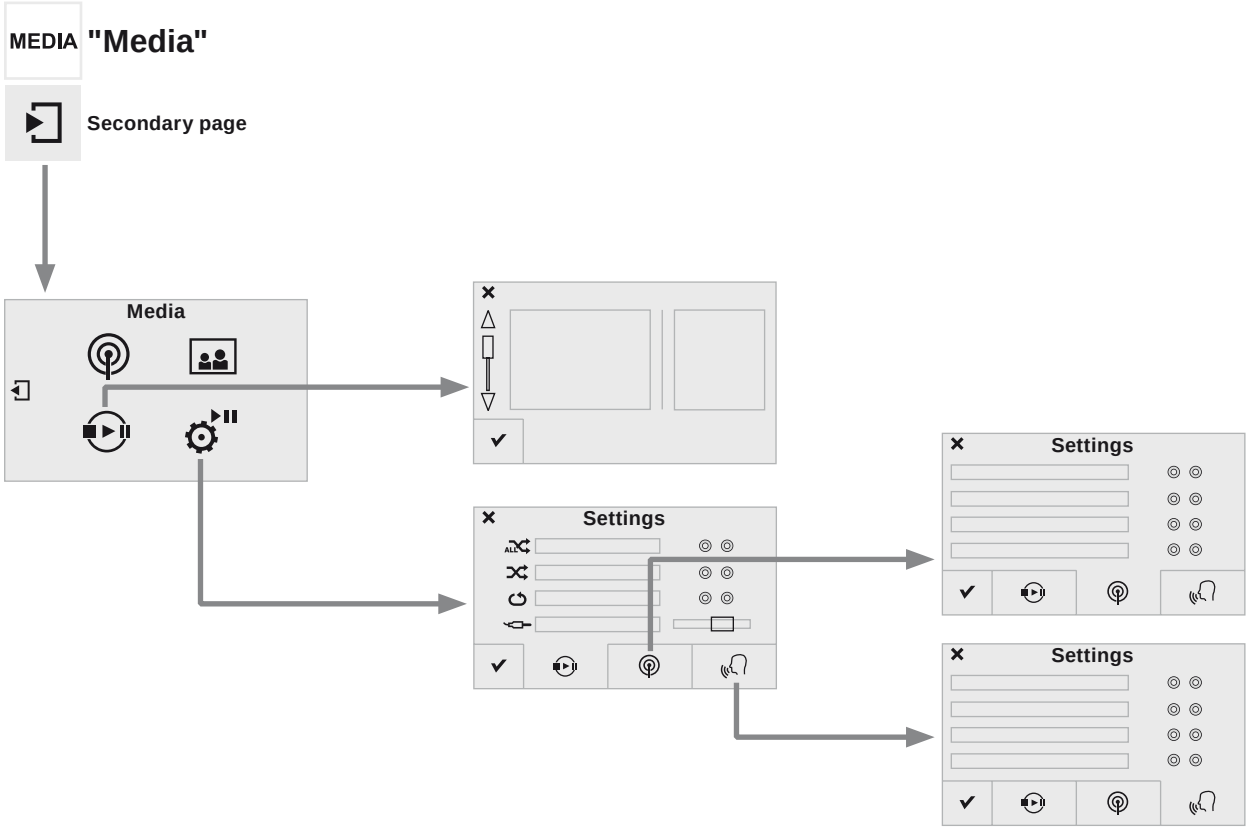
Level 1		Level 2		Comments
MEDIA ▼	Media ↓ List	▼	List of FM stations	Press on a radio station to select it.
MEDIA	Media ↓ Source	Radio FM	FM Radio	Select change of source.
		Radio DAB	DAB Radio	
		Radio AM	AM Radio	
			CD	
			USB	
			iPod	
			Bluetooth	
			AUX	
MEDIA	Media ↓ Save			Press on an empty location then on "Save".

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3



Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
MEDIA	Media → Secondary page → Radio list		**Save**			Press on a radio station to select it.
			Update list			Update the list of stations received.
			Frequency			Enter the desired radio frequency.
		✔	**Confirm**			Save the settings.
MEDIA	Media → Secondary page → Photos		**Page selection**			Display the selected photo full screen.
			Rotate			Rotate the photo 90°.
			Select all			Select all the photos in the list. Press again to deselect.
			Slideshow	←	Previous photo.	Display the photos in sequence, full screen.
				⏸ ▷	Pause / Play.	
				→	Next photo.	
		✔	**Confirm**			Save the settings.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3



Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
MEDIA	**Media** → **Secondary page** → **Media list**					Presentation of the last media used.
MEDIA	**Media** → **Secondary page** → **Settings**		**Media** → **Settings**		Shuffle (all tracks)	Choose the play settings.
					Shuffle (current album)	
					Repeat	
					Aux. amplification	
			Radio → **Settings**		RDS options	Activate or deactivate the options.
					DAB/FM station tracking	
					Display Radio Text	
					Digital radio slideshow display	
			Announcements → **Settings**		Traffic announcements (TA)	Activate or deactivate the options.
					Weather	
					Sport - Programme info	
					Alert settings	
		✔	**Confirm**			Save the settings.

Radio

Selecting a station

MEDIA

Press on **Media** to display the primary page.

or

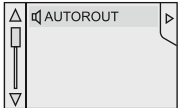
MEDIA

Press on **Media** to display the primary page then go to the secondary page.

Select "**List**" in the primary page.

or

Select "**Radio list**" in the secondary page.



Select a radio station from the list offered.

Select "**Update list**" to refresh the list.

OR

MEDIA

Press on **Media** to display the primary page then select "**Save**".

Mémoire 1

Select a preset radio station in the list.

FM

If necessary, select change of source.

Radio FM

Select "**FM Radio**" or "**AM Radio**".

Radio AM

! The exterior environment (hills, buildings, tunnel, car park, below ground...) may prevent reception, even in RDS station tracking mode. This phenomenon is normal in the propagation of radio waves and is in no way indicative of a fault with the audio system.

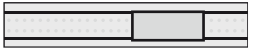
Changing a radio frequency

MEDIA

Press on **Media** to display the primary page.



By automatic frequency search



Press ◂ or ▸ to move the cursor for an automatic search down or up for a radio frequency.

OR

MEDIA

Press on **Media** to display the primary page then press on the secondary page.

Press on "**Enter frequency**" to display the primary page then press on the secondary page.

THEN



Select the change of source.



Select "**FM Radio**" or "**AM Radio**".

OR



Enter the frequency in full (e.g.: 92.10 MHz) using the keypad then "**Confirm**".

FRANCE BLEU

By alphabetical list

Press the current radio band then choose the radio station from the list offered.

Preset a station

Select a radio station or frequency (refer to the corresponding section).



Press on "**Save**".

Mémoire 1

Select a number in the list to preset the previously chosen radio station.
A long press on a number presets (memorises) the station.

Or



A press on this button presets all of the stations one after the other.

Recall preset stations

MEDIA

Press on **Media** to display the primary page then select "**Save**".



Activate/ Deactivate RDS

MEDIA

Press on **Media** to display the primary page then go to the secondary page.





Select "**Settings**".



Select "**Radio**".

Off On

Activate/deactivate "**RDS options**".

RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100% of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio



Display of the name of the current station.

Short-cut: access to the choice of audio source and the list of stations (or titles, depending on the source).

Select the radio station.

Any thumbnail broadcast by the station.

Secondary page.

Previous "Multiplex".
Previous radio station.

Display the name and number of the multiplex service being used.

Select the audio source.
Display the "DAB" band.

Display of "Radiotext" for the current station.

Next "Multiplex".
Next radio station.

Preset stations, buttons 1 to 15
Short press: select the preset radio station.
Long press: preset a radio station.

Display of options:
if active but not available, the display will be greyed out,
if active and available, the display will be blank.

If the "DAB" radio station being listened to is not available on "FM", the "DAB FM" option is greyed out.

NewsService Journaline®

Journaline® is a text-based information service designed for digital radio systems.
It provides text-based information structured around topics and sub-topics.
This service is available from the "LIST OF DAB STATIONS" page.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting)

Digital radio

Digital radio provides higher quality reception and also the graphical display of current information on the radio station being listened to. Select "List" in the primary page.
The range of multiplexes available is displayed in alphabetical order.

MEDIA — Press on **Media** to display the primary page.



Select change of source.



Select "**DAB Radio**".



Select "**List**" in the primary page.

or



Select "**Radio list**" in the secondary page.

Select the radio station from the list offered.

Digital radio - DAB / FM auto tracking

"DAB" does not cover 100% of the territory.
When the digital radio signal is weak, "DAB/FM station tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding "FM" analogue station (if there is one).

MEDIA — Press **Media** to display the primary page then press on the secondary page.





Select "**Settings**".



Select "**Radio**".



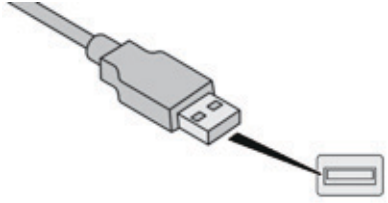
Select "**Digital/FM auto tracking**" then "**Confirm**".

If "DAB/FM station tracking" is activated, there is a difference of a few seconds when the system switches to "FM" analogue radio with sometimes a variation in volume.
When the digital signal is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB".

If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on "FM" ("**DAB/FM**" option greyed out), or "DAB/FM station tracking" is not activated, the sound will cut out while the digital signal is too weak.

Music

USB player



Insert the USB memory stick into the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.
Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.
The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or connection of a USB memory stick. The lists are memorised: if they are not modified, the subsequent loading time will be shorter.

Auxiliary (AUX) socket



Connect the portable device (MP3 player...) to the auxiliary Jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

First adjust the volume of your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of your audio system.
Display and management of the controls are via the portable device.

CD player

Insert the CD in the player.

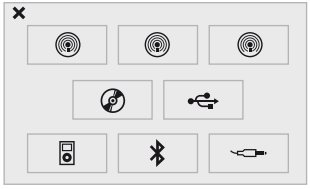
Selecting the source

MEDIA

Press on **Media** to display the primary page.

FM

Select change of source.



Choose the source.

SRC

The steering mounted **SRC** (source) button can be used to go to the next media source, available if the source is active.

Press **OK** to confirm the selection.

Information and advice

The audio equipment will only play audio files with ".wma, .aac, .flac, .ogg and. mp3" file extensions and with a bit rate of between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.
It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode.
No other type of file (.mp4, ...) can be played.
".wma" files must be of the standard wma 9 type.
The sampling rates supported are 32, 44 and 48 KHz.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters, without using of special characters (e.g.: " " ? ; ù) to avoid any playing and displaying problems.

In order to be able to play a recorded CDR or CDRW, when recording it is preferable to select the ISO 9660 level 1, 2 or Joliet standard.
If the disc is recorded in another format it may not be played correctly.
It is recommended that the same recording standard is always used for an individual disc, with as low a speed as possible (4x maximum) for optimum sound quality.
In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

! The system supports USB mass storage devices, BlackBerry® devices or Apple® players via USB ports. The adaptor cable not supplied.
Control of the peripheral device is with the audio system controls.
Other peripherals, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a Jack cable (not supplied).

Use only USB memory sticks formatted FAT 32 (file allocation table).

! The system does not support the simultaneous connection of two identical devices (two memory sticks, two Apple® players) but it is possible to connect one memory stick and one Apple® player at the same time.

i It is recommended that the USB cable for the portable device is used.

Bluetooth® audio streaming

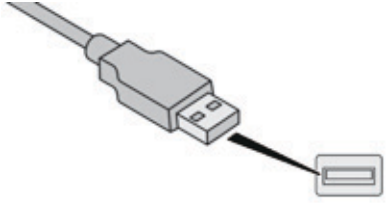
Streaming allows audio files on your telephone to be played through the vehicle's spx`eakers.

Connect the telephone: see the "**Telephone**" section, then "**Bluetooth**".
Choose the "**Audio**" or "**All**" profile.

If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the telephone.
Control is from the peripheral device or by using the audio system buttons.

! Once connected in streaming mode, the telephone is considered to be a media source.
It is recommended that you activate "**Repeat**" on the Bluetooth peripheral.

Connecting Apple® players

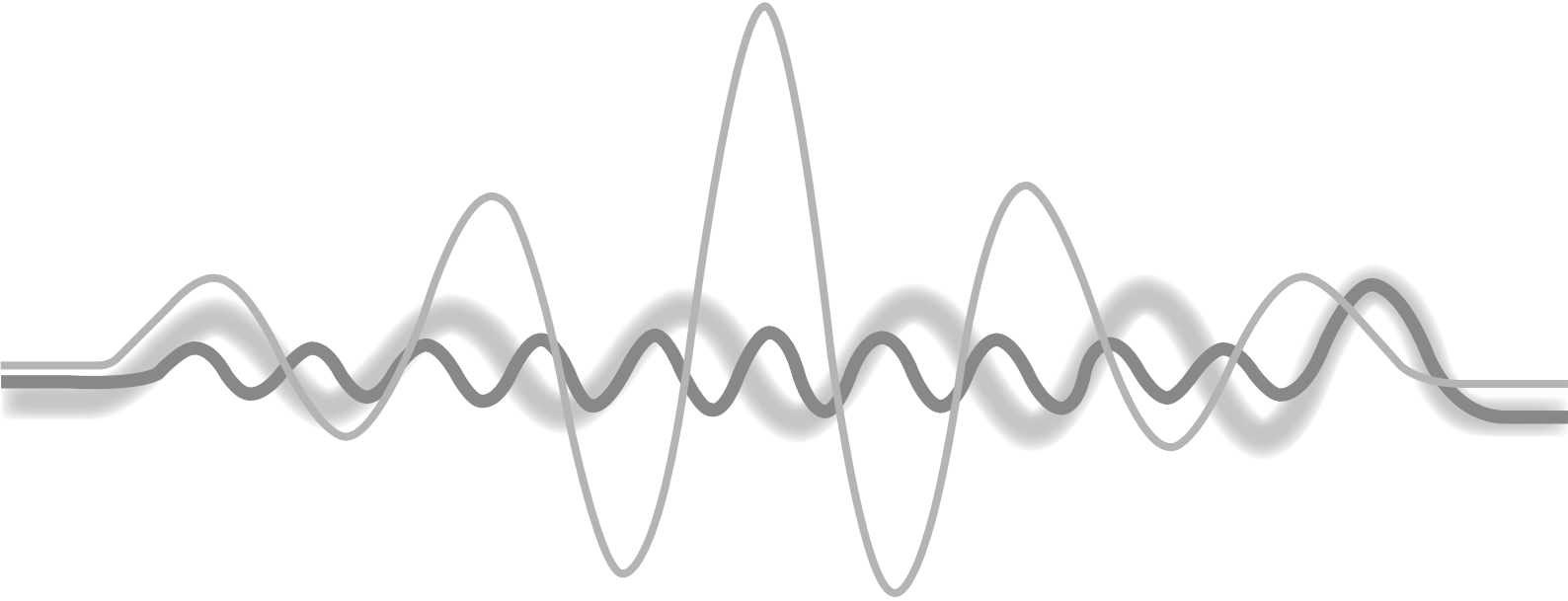


Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).
Play starts automatically.

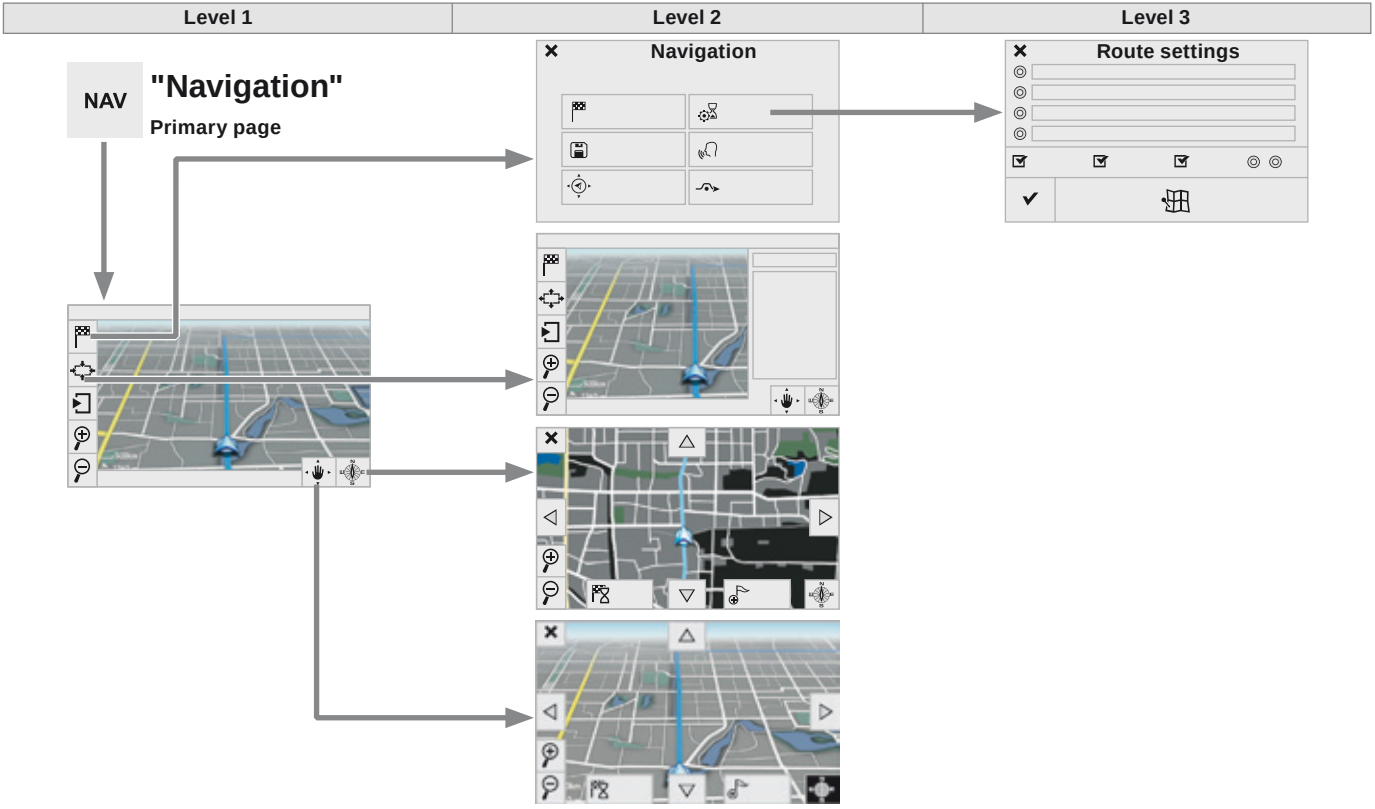
Control is via the audio system.

i The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists / albums / genres / playlists / audiobooks / podcasts).
The default classification used is by artist. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

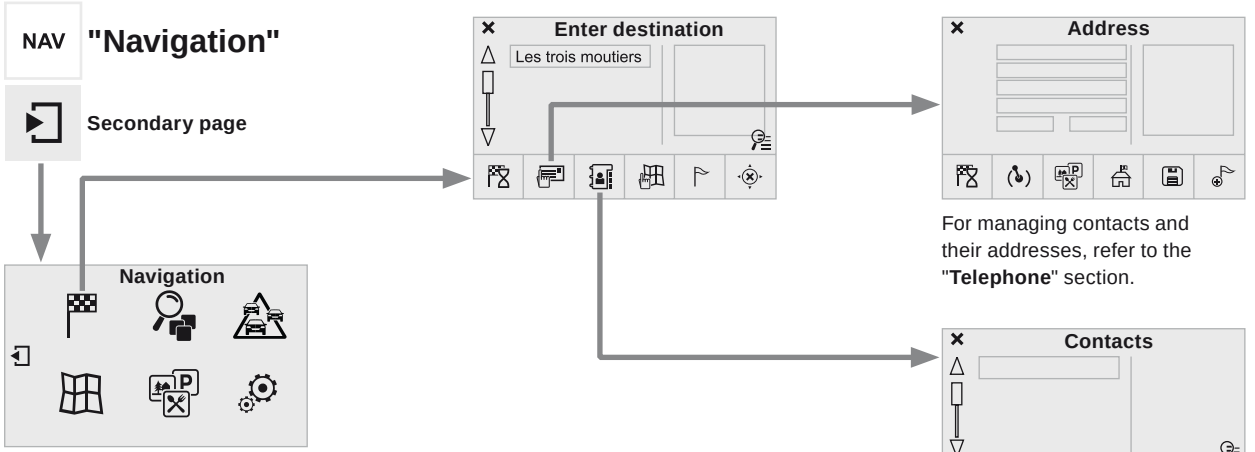


Navigation


Level 1
Level 2
Level 3
NAV
"Navigation"
Primary page
Navigation
Route settings

Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
NAV	Navigation ↓ Settings Navigation		Enter destination			Display recent destinations.
			Route settings		Fastest	Choose the navigation criteria. The map displays the route chosen according to these criteria.
					Shortest	
					Time/distance	
					Ecological	
					Tolls	
					Ferries	
					Strict-Close	
					Show route on map	Display the map and start navigation.
					Confirm	Save the options.
			Save			Save the current address.
			Stop navigation			Delete the navigation information.
			Voice			Choose the volume for voice and announcement of street names.
			Diversion			Detour from your initial route by a certain distance.
NAV	Navigation					Display in text mode
						Zoom in.
						Zoom out.
						Display in full screen mode. Use the arrows to move the map.
						Switch to 2D map.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3

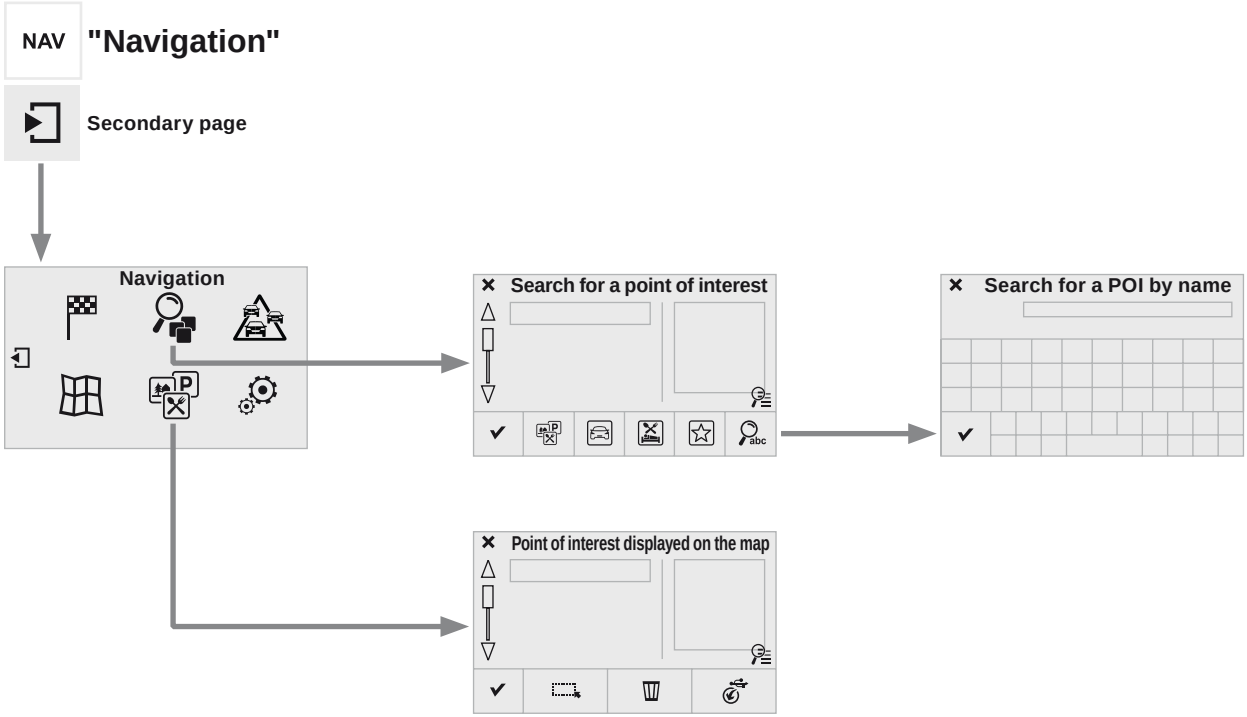


For managing contacts and their addresses, refer to the "**Telephone**" section.

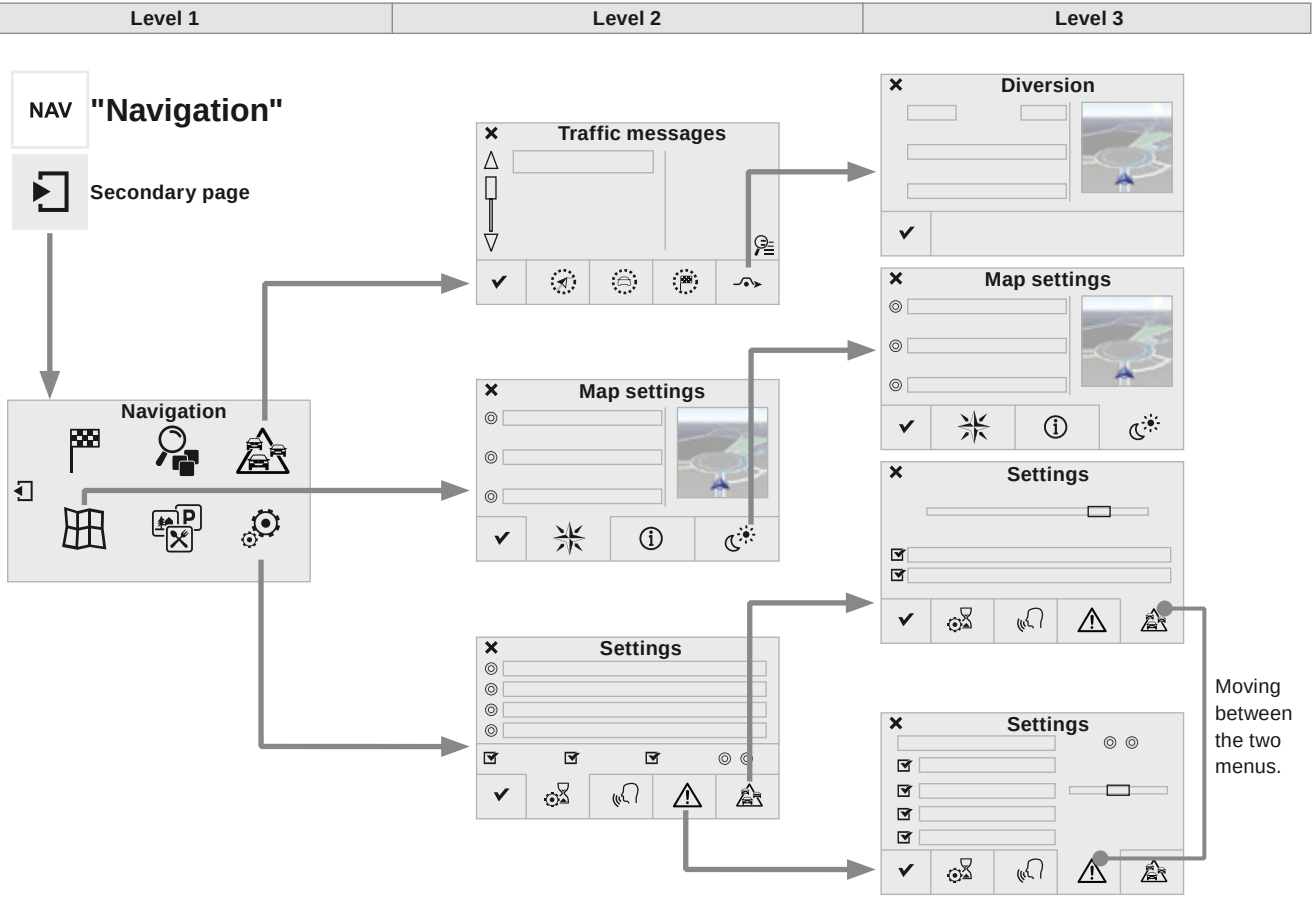
To use the telephone functions, refer to the "**Telephone**" section.

Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
NAV	**Navigation** → **Secondary page** → **Enter destination**		**Address**		Current loc.	Address settings
					Point of interest	
					Town center	
					Save	Save the current address.
					Add waypoint	Add a waypoint to the route.
					Navigate to	Press to calculate the route.
			Contacts		Addresses	Select a contact then calculate the route.
					Add contact	
					Add waypoint	
					Search for contact	
					Navigate to	
			On the map			Display the map and zoom to view the roads.
			Itinerary			Create, add or delete a waypoint or view the itinerary.
		NAV	**Stop**			Delete navigation information.
			Navigate to			Press to calculate the route.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3



Level 1		Level 2		Level 3	Comments
NAV	Navigation → Secondary page → Search for POI		All POIs		List of categories available. After choosing the category, select the points of interest.
			Motor		
			Dining/hotels		
			Personal		
			By name		
		✔	Search		Save the settings.
NAV	Navigation → Secondary page → Show POIs		Select all		Choose the display settings for POIs.
			Delete		
			Import POIs		
		✔	Confirm		Save the options.


Level 1
Level 2
Level 3
NAV
"Navigation"
Secondary page
Navigation
Traffic messages
Map settings
Settings
Diversion
Map settings
Settings
Settings
Moving between the two menus.

Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
NAV	Navigation → Secondary page → Traffic messages		On the route			Settings for the choice of messages and the filter radius.
			Around vehicle			
			Near destination			
			Detour	◎	Detour over a distance	
				◎	Recalculate route	
		✔	Finish			Save your selections.
NAV	Navigation → Secondary page → Map settings		Orientation	◎	Flat view north heading	Choose the display and orientation of the map.
				◎	Flat view vehicle heading	
				◎	Perspective view	
			Maps			
			Aspect	◎	"Day" map colour	
				◎	"Night" map colour	
				◎	Automatic day/night	
		✔	Confirm			Save the settings.
NAV	Navigation → Secondary page → Settings		Route settings			Enter settings and choose the volume for the voice and announcement of street names.
			Voice			
			Alarm!			
			Traffic options			
		✔	Confirm			Save your selections.

Navigation - Guidance

Choosing a new destination

Towards a new destination

NAV

Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press on the secondary page.

Select "**Enter destination**".

Select "**Address**".



Select the "**Country:**" from the list offered, then in the same way the "**City:**" or its post code, the "**Road:**", the "**N°:**". Confirm each time.

Select "**Save**" to save the address entered as a contact entry.
The system allows up to 200 entries.

Select "**Navigate to**".

Choose the navigation criteria: "**Fastest**" or "**Shortest**" or "**Time/ distance**" or "**Ecological**".

Choose the restriction criteria: "**Tolls**", "**Ferries**", "**Traffic**", "**Strict**", "**Close**".

Select "**Confirm**".

Or

Press on "**Show route on map**" to start navigation.

To delete navigation information, press on "**Settings**".

Press on "**Stop navigation**".

To resume navigation press on "**Settings**".

Press on "**Resume guidance**".

Towards a recent destination

NAV

Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press on the secondary page.

Select "**Enter destination**".



Select an address from the list offered.

Select "**Navigate to**".

Select the criteria then "**Confirm**" or press "**Show route on map**" to start navigation.

Towards a contact

To be able to use navigation "towards a contact in the directory", it is first necessary to enter the address for your contact.

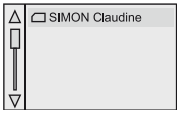
NAV

Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press on the secondary page.

Select "**Enter destination**".

Select "**Contacts**".



Select a destination from the contacts in the list offered.

Select "**Navigate to**".

Select the criteria then "**Confirm**" to start navigation.

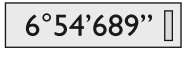
Towards GPS coordinates

NAV Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.


Press on the secondary page.


Select "**Enter destination**".


Select "**Address**".



Enter the "**Longitude:**" then the "**Latitude:**".


Select "**Navigate to**".


Select the criteria then "**Confirm**" or press "**Show route on map**" to start navigation.

Towards a point on the map

NAV Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.


Press on the secondary page.


Select "**Enter destination**".


Select "**On the map**".

Zooming in on the map shows points with information.

A long press on a point opens its content.

Towards points of interest (POI)

Points of Interest (POI) are listed in different categories.

NAV Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.


Press on the secondary page.


Select "**Search for POI**".


Select "**All POIs**",

Or


"**Motor**",

Or


"**Dining/hotels**".

An annual mapping update allows new points of interest to be presented to you.
You can also update the Risk areas / Danger areas every month.
The detailed procedure is available on: http://peugeot.navigation.com.

Risk areas / Danger zone alert settings

NAV Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.


Press on the secondary page.


Select "**Settings**".


Select "**Alarm!**" (Alert).

It is then possible to activate Risk areas alerts then:

- "Audible warning"
- "Alert only when navigating"
- "Alert only for overspeed"
- "Display speed limits"
- Timing: the choice of timing allows the time before giving a Risk areas alert to be defined.


Select "**Confirm**".

! This series of alerts and displays is only available if Risk areas have first been downloaded and installed on the system.

Traffic

Traffic information

Display of messages

NAV Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.


Press on the secondary page.


Select "**Traffic messages**".

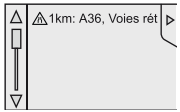
Choose filter settings for:


"**On the route**",


"**Around**",


"**Near destination**", filters to fine-tune the list of messages.

Press again to remove the filter.



Select the message from the list offered.

Select the magnifying glass to have voice information.

TMC (Traffic Message Channel) messages on GPS-Navigation contain traffic information transmitted in real time.

Setting filters

NAV

Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press on the secondary page.

Select "**Settings**".

Select "**Traffic options**".

Select:
- "**Be advised of new messages**",
- "**Speak messages**".

Then enter the filter radius.

Select "**Confirm**".

We recommend a filter radius of:
- 12 miles (20 km) in urban areas,
- 30 miles (50 km) on motorways.

Receiving TA messages

NAV

Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press on the secondary page.

Select "**Settings**".

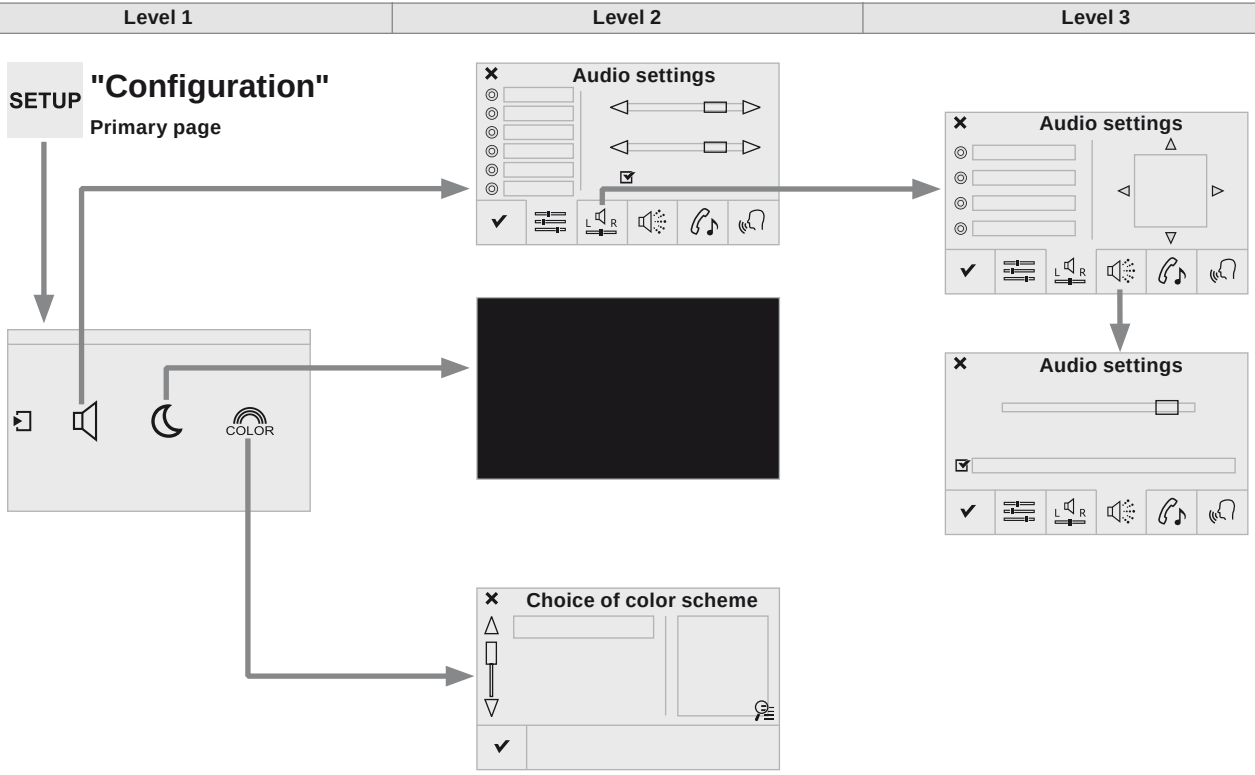
Select "**Voice**".

Off On

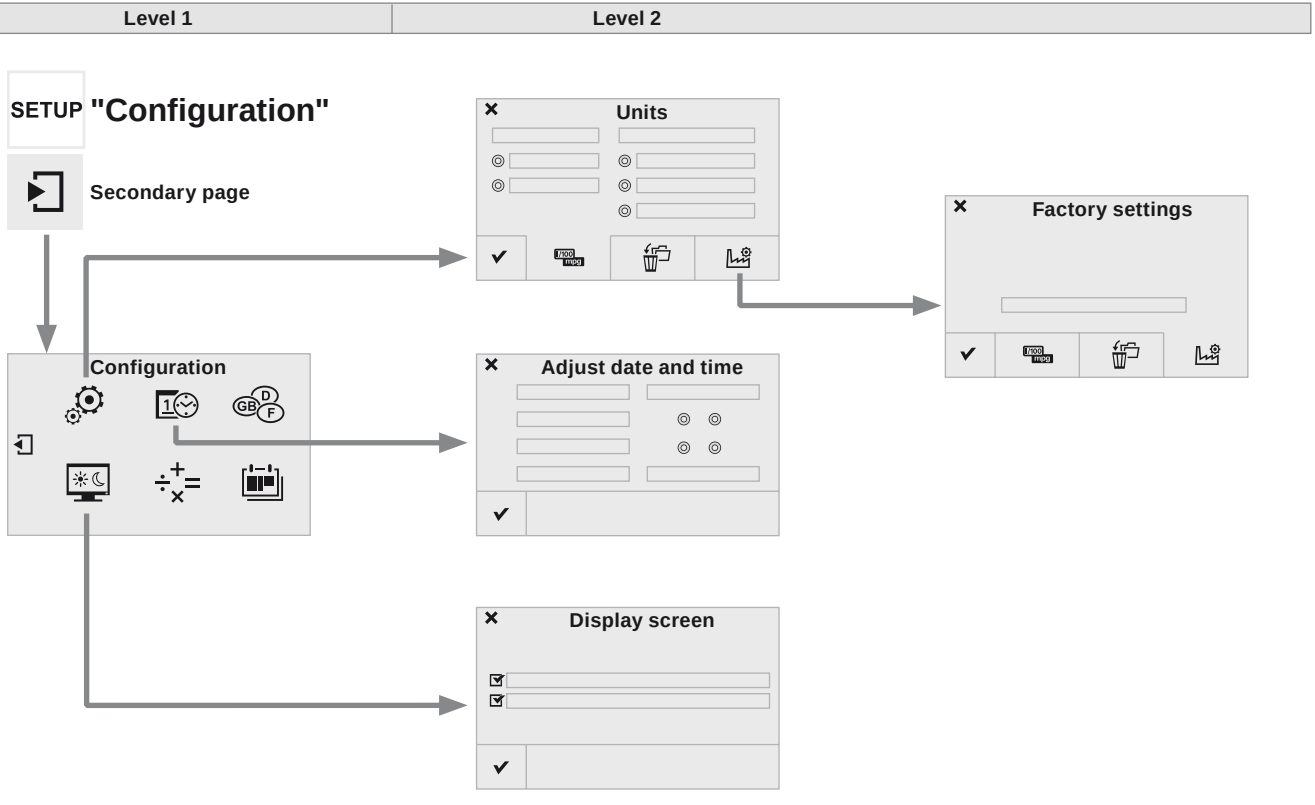
Activate / Deactivate "**Traffic (TA)**".

The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station transmitting this type of message. When a traffic report is transmitted, the current audio source is interrupted automatically to play the TA message. Normal playback of the audio source resumes at the end of the transmission of the message.

Configuration

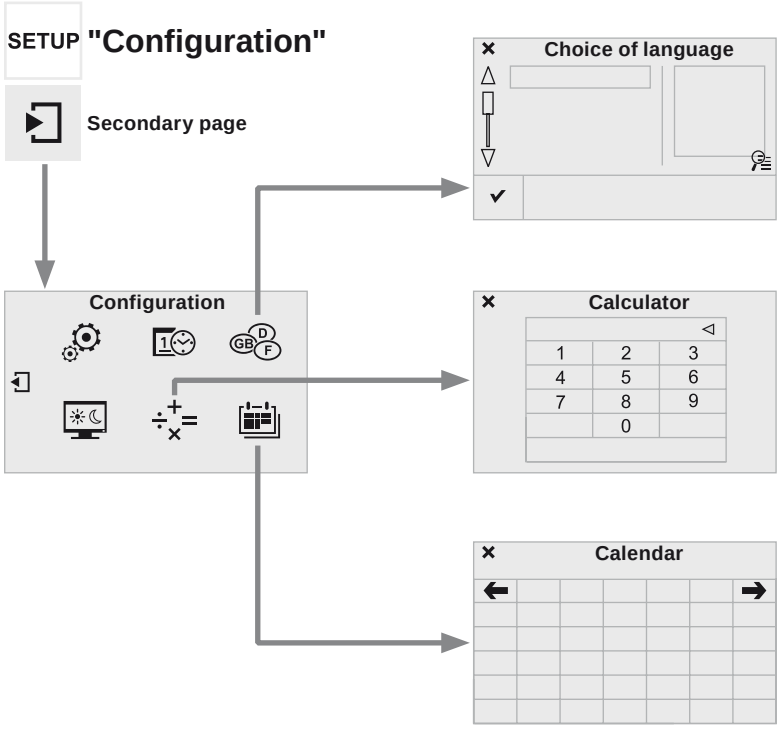


Level 1		Level 2		Level 3	Comments
SETUP	**Configuration** → **Audio settings**		**Ambience**		Choose the sound ambience.
		L R	**Balance**		Set the position of the sound in the vehicle using the Arkamys® system.
			Sound effects		Set the volume or activate the link to vehicle speed.
			Ringtones		Set the telephone ringtone and volume.
			Voice		Set the volume and voice for speaking street names
		✔	**Confirm**		Save the settings.
SETUP	**Configuration** → **Turn off screen**	■			Turn off the display (black screen). Pressing the black screen restores the display.
SETUP COLOR	**Configuration** → **Color schemes**	✔	**Confirm**		Having chosen the color scheme, save the setting.


Level 1
Level 2
SETUP "Configuration"
Secondary page
Configuration
Units
Factory settings
Adjust date and time
Display screen

Level 1		Level 2		Comments
SETUP	Configuration → Secondary page → System Settings		**Units**	Set the units used to display distance, fuel consumption and temperature.
			Delete data	Select the desired data in the list then press Delete.
			Factory settings	Return to factory settings.
		✔	**Confirm**	Save the settings.
SETUP	Configuration → Secondary page → Time/Date	✔	**Confirm**	Set the date and time then confirm.
SETUP	Configuration → Secondary page → Screen settings		**Activate automatic text scrolling**	Make the setting then confirm.
			Activate animations	
		✔	**Confirm**	

Level 1	Level 2



Level 1		Level 2		Comments
SETUP	Configuration → Secondary page → Languages	✔	Confirm	Select the language then confirm.
SETUP	Configuration → Secondary page → Calculator			Select the calculator.
SETUP	Configuration → Secondary page → Calendar			Select the calendar.

Audio settings



Press on **Configuration** to display the primary page.



Select "**Audio settings**".



Select "**Ambience**" or "**Balance**" or "**Sound effects**" or "**Ringtones**" or "**Voice**".









! The distribution (or spatialisation using the Arkamys© system) of sound is an audio process that allows the audio quality to be adapted to the number of listeners in the vehicle.
Available only with the 6-speaker configuration.

! The audio settings (**Ambience**, **Bass:**, **Treble:** and **Loudness**) are different and independent for each sound source.
The settings for **Distribution** and **Balance** are common to all sources.

! - "**Ambience**" (choice of 6 musical ambiences)
- "**Bass:**"
- "**Treble:**"
- "**Loudness**" (Activate/Deactivate)
- "**Balance**" ("**Driver**", "**All passengers**", "**Front only**")
- "**Audible response from touch screen**"
- "**Volume linked to speed**" (Activate/Deactivate)

i On-board audio: Arkamys© Sound Staging optimises sound distribution in the the passenger compartment.

Color schemes



Press on **Configuration** to display the primary page.



Select "**Color schemes**".



Select the colour scheme in the list, then "**Confirm**".

i At each change of colour scheme the system restarts, showing a black screen for a few moments.

! As a safety measure, the procedure for changing the color scheme is only possible with the vehicle stationary.

System

Modify system settings



Press on **Configuration** to display the primary page then go to the secondary page.





Select "**System Settings**".



Select "**Units**" to change the units of distance, fuel consumption and temperature.



Select "**Delete data**" to delete the list of recent destinations, personal points of interest, contacts in the list. Choose the item then select "**Delete**".





Select "**Factory settings**" to return to the original settings.



Press on **Configuration** to display the primary page then go to the secondary page.





Select "**Screen settings**".



Activate or deactivate "**Activate automatic text scrolling**" and "**Activate animations**".



Press on **Configuration** to display the primary page then go to the secondary page.









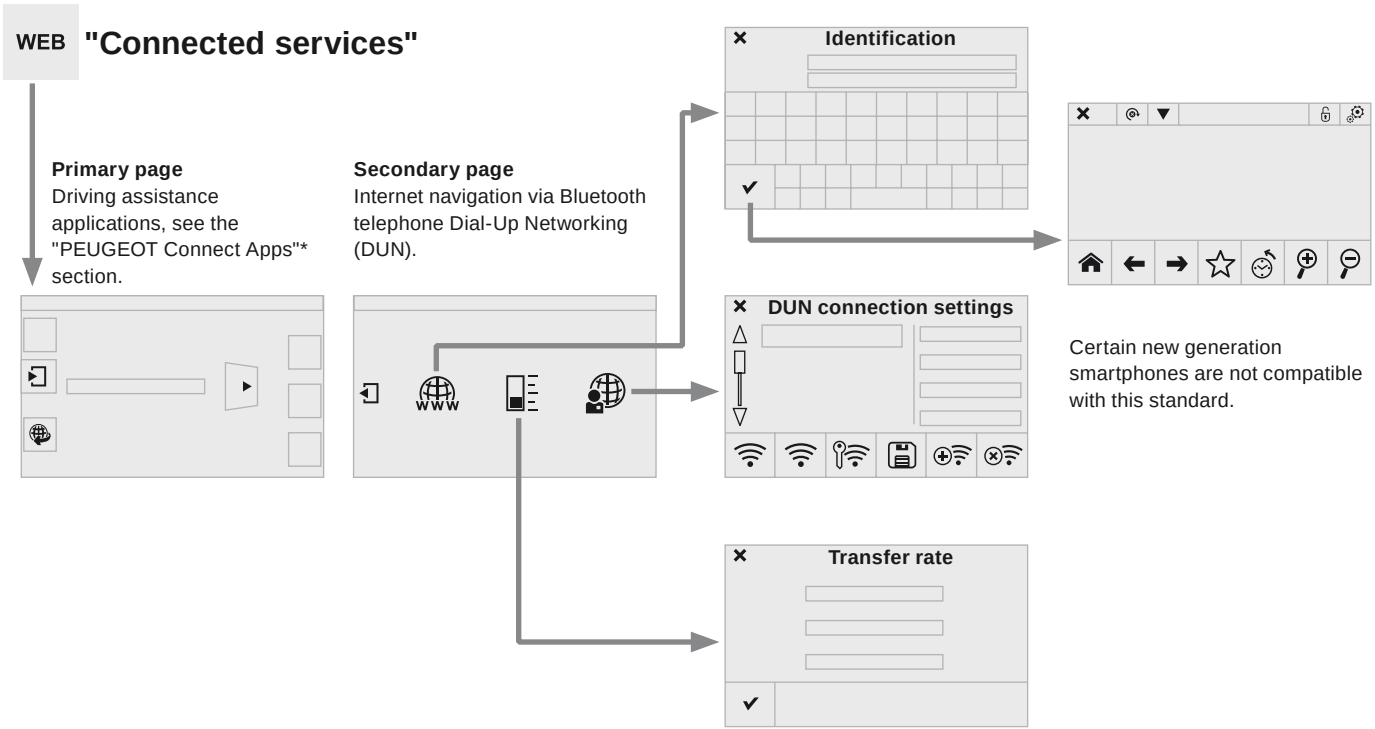


Select:

- "**Time/Date**" to change the time zone, synchronisation with GPS, the time and its format and then the date.
- "**Languages**" to change the language.
- "**Calculator**" to display a calculator.
- "**Calendar**" to display a calendar.

Connected services

Level 1	Level 2



* Depending on country.

PEUGEOT Connect Apps

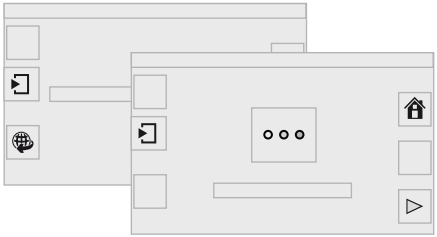
! "PEUGEOT Connect Apps"* is a service providing driving aid applications in real time; it gives access to useful information such as the state of the traffic, danger zones, fuel prices, the availability of parking places, tourist sites, weather conditions, correct addresses…
It includes access to the mobile network associated with the use of these applications. "PEUGEOT Connect Apps"* is a service available under subscription contract from PEUGEOT dealers, depending on country and the type of touch screen, both before and after delivery of a new vehicle.



Plug the "PEUGEOT Connect Apps" connection key into the USB port.

* Depending on country.

WEB Press on the "Connected services" menu to display the applications.



These applications use vehicle data such as the current speed, mileage, remaining fuel range or even GPS position to provide pertinent information.



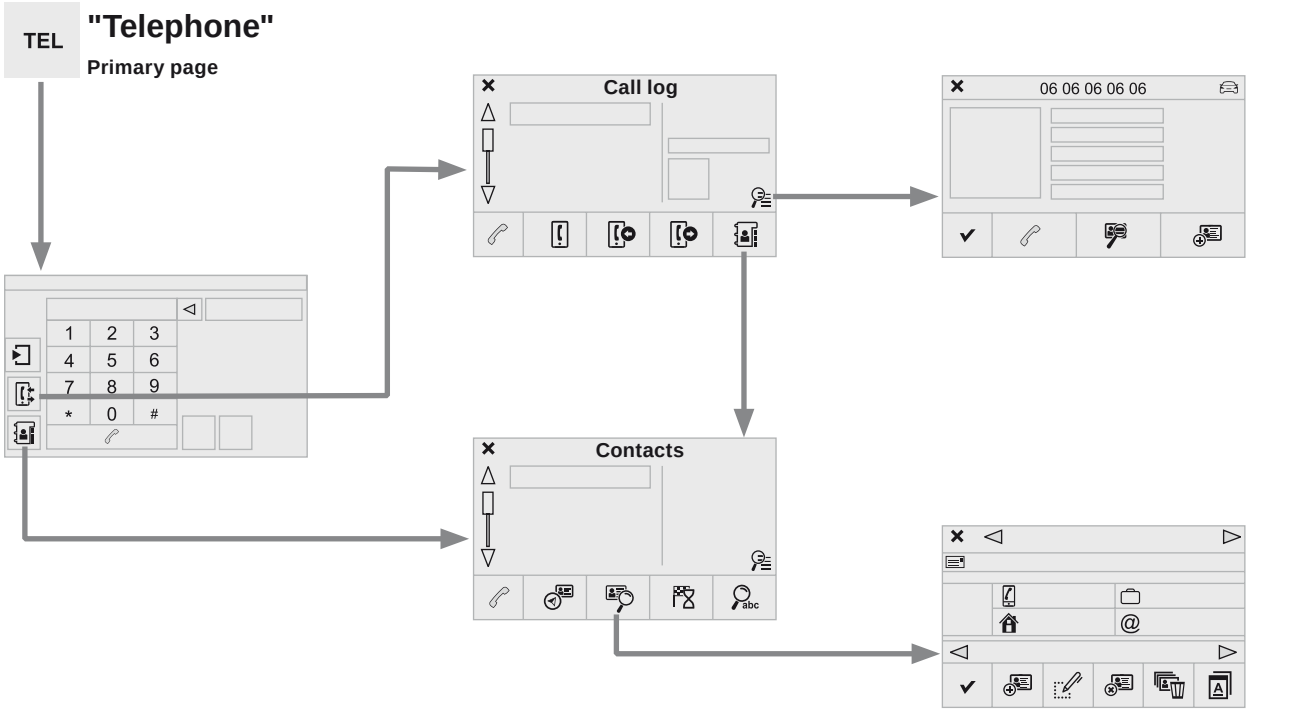
As a safety measure, some functions can only be used when stationary.

The "MyPEUGEOT" application is a link between the user, the manufacturer and its dealer network. It allows the customer to know everything about their vehicle: servicing plan, accessory range, service contracts taken out, ...
It also makes possible the sending of the vehicle's mileage to the "MyPEUGEOT" site, or to identify a dealer.

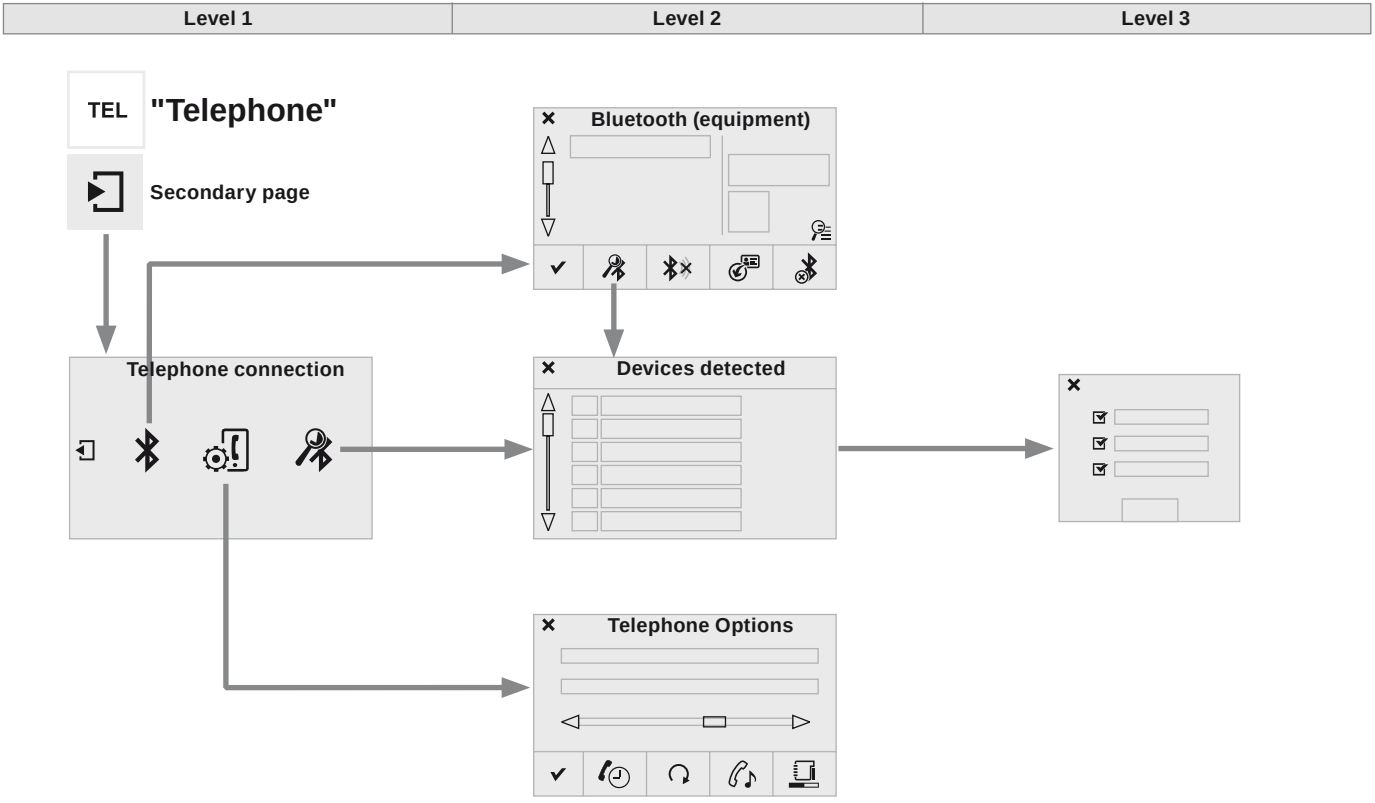


Telephone

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3



Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
TEL	Telephone → Call log		All calls			After making choices, start the call.
			Incoming calls			
			Outgoing calls			
			Contacts			
			Magnifying glass		View	
					Create	
			Call			
TEL	Telephone → Contacts		Addresses			After making choices, start the call.
			View		Create	
					Modify	
					Delete	
					Delete all	
					By name	
				✔	Confirm	
			Navigate to			
			Search for contact			
			Call			


Level 1
Level 2
Level 3
TEL
"Telephone"
Secondary page
Telephone connection
Bluetooth (equipment)
Devices detected
Telephone Options

Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
TEL	Telephone connection → Secondary page → Bluetooth connection		Search			Start the search for another peripheral device to connect.
			Disconnect			Stop the Bluetooth connection to the selected peripheral device.
			Update			Import the contacts from the selected telephone to store them in the audio system.
			Delete			Delete the selected telephone.
		✔	Confirm			Save the settings.
TEL	Telephone connection → Secondary page → Search for devices			☑	Telephone	Start the search for peripheral devices.
			Devices detected	☑	Audio streaming	
				☑	Internet	
TEL	Telephone connection → Secondary page → Telephone Options		Put on hold			Cut the microphone temporarily so that the contact cannot hear your conversation with a passenger.
			Update			Import the contacts from the selected telephone to save them in the audio system.
			Ringtones			Choose the telephone ringtone and volume.
			Memory info.			Contact records used and free, percentage of storage space used by internal contacts and Bluetooth contacts.
		✔	Confirm			Save the settings.

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

! For reasons of safety and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing the Bluetooth mobile telephone to the hands-free system of the audio system must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary**.

Procedure (short) from the telephone

In the Bluetooth menu of your device, select the system name in the list of devices detected.

Enter a code of at least 4 figures in the device and confirm.

✔ Enter this same code in the system, select "**OK**" and confirm.

Procedure from the system

Activate the telephone's Bluetooth function and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

TEL Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press on the secondary page.

Select "**Bluetooth connection**".

Select "**Search for devices**". The list of telephones detected is displayed.

i If the telephone is not detected, it is recommended that you switch the Bluetooth function on your telephone off and then on again.



Select the name of the desired peripheral from the list and "**Confirm**".

✔ Enter a code of at least 4 figures for the connection then "**Confirm**".

Enter this same code in the telephone then accept the connection.

The system offers to connect the telephone:
- in "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- in "**Audio streaming**" (streaming: wireless playing of audio files from the telephone),
- in "**Internet**" (internet browsing, only if your telephone is compatible with the "DUN" Dial-Up Networking Bluetooth standard).

Select one or more profiles and confirm.

! The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth telephone used. Check the telephone manual and with your network provider for details of the services available to you.

! The ability of the system to connect with only one profile depends on the telephone. The three profiles may all connect by default.

Visit www.peugeot.co.uk for more information (compatibility, additional help, ...).



The recognised telephone appears in the list.

Depending on your telephone, you may be asked to accept automatic connection every time the ignition is switched on.

! Depending on the type of telephone, the system will ask you to accept or not the transfer of your contacts.



If not, select "**Update**".

On return to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is reconnected automatically and within around 30 seconds after switching on the ignition the pairing is done without any action on your part, with (Bluetooth activated).
To modify the automatic connection mode, select the telephone in the list then select the desired profile.

Connecting a Bluetooth® peripheral device

Automatic reconnection

On switching on the ignition, the telephone connected when the ignition was last switched off is automatically reconnected, if this connection mode had been activated during the pairing procedure.

The connection is confirmed by the display of a message and the name of the telephone.

Manual connection

TEL Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Bluetooth**" to display the list of paired peripherals.

Select the peripheral to connect.



Press on "**Search for devices**".

The connection is confirmed by the display of a message and the name of the telephone.

Managing paired telephones

This function allows the connection or disconnection of a peripheral device as well as the deletion of a pairing.

TEL

Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Bluetooth**" to display the list of paired peripheral devices.

Select the peripheral in the list.



Select "**Search for devices**"

Or



"**Connect / Disconnect**" to start or end the Bluetooth connection with the selected device.

Or



"**Delete**" to delete the pairing.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.

SRC

Make a short press on the steering mounted **TEL** button to accept an incoming call.



Make a long press

SRC

on the steering mounted **TEL** button to reject the call.

Or



Select "**End call**".

Making a call

Using the telephone is not recommended while driving.
Park the vehicle.
Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

Calling a new number

TEL

Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Enter the phone number using the digital keypad.
Press "**Call**" to start the call.

Calling a contact

TEL

Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Or make a long press

SRC

on the steering mounted **TEL** button.

Managing contacts / entries



Select "**Contacts**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.



Select "**Call**".

Calling a recently used number

TEL

Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Select "**Call log**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.

> **i** It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; park the vehicle first as a safety measure.

TEL

Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Select "**Contacts**".



Select "**View**".



Select "**Create**" to add a new contact.

Or



"**Modify**" to edit the selected contact.

Or



"**Delete**" to delete the selected contact.

Or



"**Delete all**" to delete all information for the selected contact.



Select "**By name**" to view the list of contacts.

Frequently asked questions

The following table groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning your audio system.

Navigation

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The route calculation is not successful.	The route settings may conflict with the current location (exclusion of toll roads on a toll motorway).	Check the route settings in the "Navigation" menu.
The POIs do not appear.	The POIs have not been selected.	Select the POIs in the list of POIs.
The Risk areas audible warning does not work.	The audible warning is not active.	Activate audible warnings in the "Navigation" menu.
The system does not suggest a detour around an incident on the route.	The guidance criteria do not take account of TMC messages.	Select the "Information" function in the list of route settings.
I receive a Risk areas alert which is not on my route.	Other than guidance, the system announces all Risk areas positioned in a cone located in front of the vehicle. It may provide an alert for Risk areas located on nearby or parallel roads.	Zoom in on the map to view the exact position of the Risk areas. Select "On the route" to no longer receive alerts other than navigation instructions or to reduce the time for the announcement.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
Certain traffic jams along the route are not indicated in real time.	On starting, it is several minutes before the system begins to receive the traffic information.	Wait until the traffic information is being received correctly (display of the traffic information icons on the map).
	The filters are too restrictive.	Modify the settings.
	In certain countries, only major routes (motorways...) are listed for the traffic information.	This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the traffic information available.
The altitude is not displayed.	On starting, the initialisation of the GPS may take up to 3 minutes to receive more than 4 satellites correctly.	Wait until the system has started up completely so that there is GPS coverage by at least 4 satellites.
	Depending on the geographical environment (tunnel...) or the weather, the conditions of reception of the GPS signal may vary.	This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the GPS signal reception conditions.

Radio

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The quality of reception of the radio station listened to gradually deteriorates or the stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter used by the station listened to or there is no transmitter in the geographical area through which the vehicle is travelling.	Activate the "RDS" function by means of the short-cut menu to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks...) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a fault with the audio system.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a PEUGEOT dealer.
I cannot find some radio stations in the list of stations received.	The station is not received or its name has changed in the list.	Press and hold the "List" button at the steering mounted controls to update the list of stations received or press on the system update function: "Update list".
The name of the radio station changes.	Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example). The system interprets this information as the name of the station.	

Media

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).	Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the catalogue time).	Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.
When I connect my iPhone as a telephone and to the USB port at the same time, I am unable to play the music files.	When the iPhone connects automatically as a telephone, it forces the streaming function. The streaming function takes the place of the USB function which is then not useable, there is a period without sound of the track being played with Apple® players.	Disconnect and reconnect to the USB port (the USB function takes priority over streaming).
The CD is ejected automatically or is not played by the player.	The CD is inserted upside down, is unplayable, does not contain any audio data or contains an audio format which the player cannot play.	Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up. Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too badly damaged. Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: refer to the advice in the "AUDIO" section. The audio system's CD player does not play DVDs. Some recorded CDs will not be played by the audio system because they are not of adequate quality.
	The CD has been recorded in a format that is not compatible with the player (udf...).	
	The CD is protected by an anti-pirating protection system which is not recognised by the audio system.	
There is a long waiting period following the insertion of a CD or connection of a USB memory stick.	When a new medium is inserted, the system reads a certain amount of data (directory, title, artist, etc.). This may take from a few seconds to a few minutes.	This phenomenon is normal.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The CD player sound is poor.	The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.	Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio equipment settings (bass, treble, ambiences) are unsuitable.	Set the treble or bass level to 0, without selecting an ambience.
Some characters in the media information are not displayed correctly while playing.	The audio system does not display some types of characters.	Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.
Playing of streaming files does not start.	The peripheral device connected does not support automatic play.	Start the playback from the device.
The names of tracks and the track length are not displayed on the screen when streaming audio.	The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.	

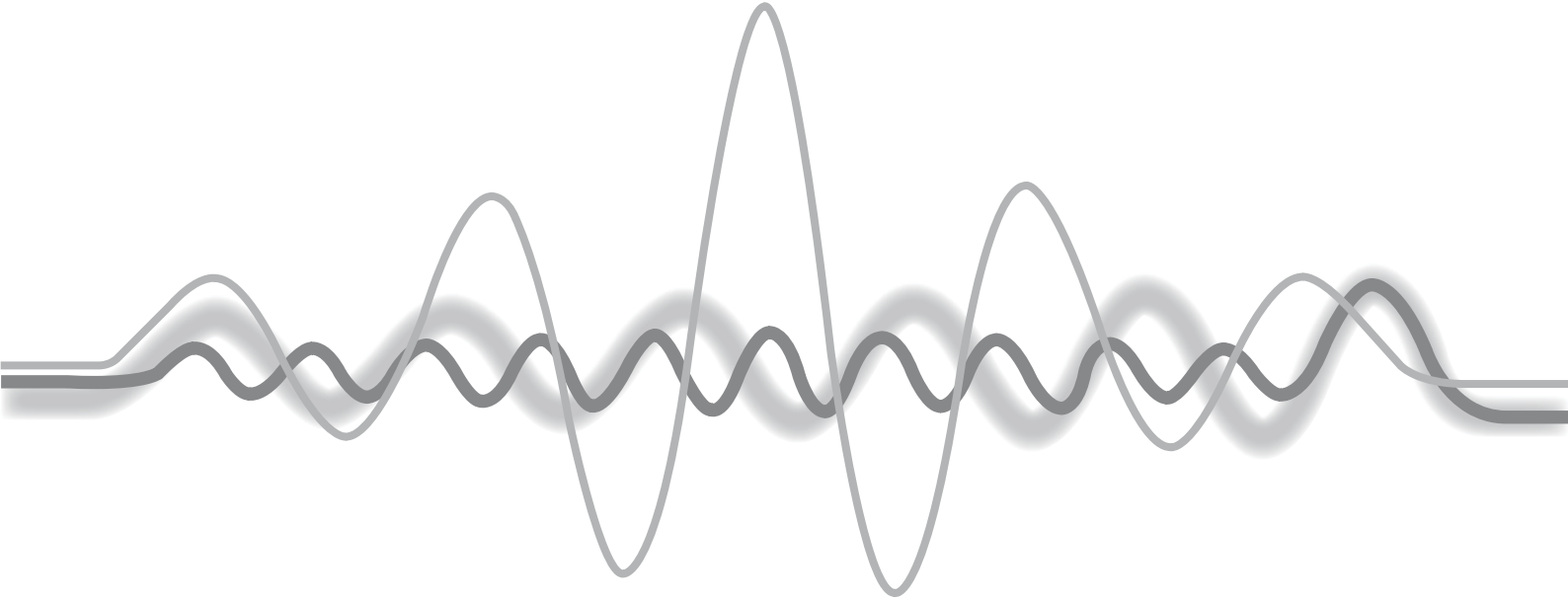
Settings

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
In changing the setting of treble and bass the equalizer setting is deselected.	The selection of an equalizer setting imposes the balance settings. Modifying one without the other is not possible.	Modify the balance or equalizer settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
In changing the equalizer setting, treble and bass return to zero.		
When changing the balance settings, the distribution setting is deselected.	The selection of a distribution setting imposes the balance settings. Modifying one without the other is not possible.	Modify the balance or distribution settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
When changing an distribution setting, the balance setting is deselected.		

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources.	For optimum sound quality, the audio settings for Loudness, Ambience, Treble, Bass, Volume can be adapted to the different sound sources, which may result in audible differences when changing source.	Check that the audio settings for Loudness, Ambience, Treble, Bass, Volume) are adapted to the sources listened to. Adjust Balance, Treble, Bass to the middle position, select the "None" musical ambience and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.
With the engine off, the system switches off after a few minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. The switch-off is normal: the system switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging of the vehicle's battery.	Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge.

Telephone

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.	The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.	Check that your telephone's Bluetooth function is switched on. Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".
	The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.	You can check the compatibility of your telephone at www.peugeot.co.uk (services).
The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.	The volume depends both on the system and on the telephone.	Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
	The ambient noise level has an influence on the quality of telephone communication.	Reduce the ambient noise level (close the windows, reduce the booster fan speed, slow down...).
Some contacts are duplicated in the list.	The options for synchronizing contacts are synchronizing the contacts on the SIM card, the contacts on the telephone, or both. When both synchronizations are selected, some contacts may be duplicated.	Select "Display SIM card contacts" or "Display telephone contacts".
Contacts are not shown in alphabetical order.	Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.	Modify the display setting in the telephone directory.
The system does not receive SMS text messages.	The Bluetooth mode does not permit sending SMS text messages to the system.	



Audio system



Contents

First steps	338
Steering mounted controls	339
Menus	340
Audio	340
Media	343
Audio settings	347
Screen menu map(s)	348
Frequently asked questions	349

The system is coded in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle.

As a safety measure, the driver must only carry out operations which require sustained attention with the vehicle is stationary. The audio system may switch off a few minutes after switching off the engine, to avoid discharging the battery.

First steps



On / Off.

Volume.

OK Confirmation or display of contextual menu.

Select screen display between modes:
Full screen: Audio
In a window: Audio - Time or Trip computer.
Long press: black screen (DARK).

SOURCE Select source:
Radio, CD, AUX, USB.

LIST Display the list of stations received, CD/MP3 tracks or folders.
Long press: manage the classification of MP3/WMA files / update the list of stations received.

MENU Access to main menu.

TA INFO TA (Traffic Announcement) function On / Off.
Long press: access to type of information.

Manual step by step search up / down for radio frequencies.
Select previous / next MP3 folder.
Select previous / next folder / genre / artist / playlist in the USB device.
Navigation in a list.

Automatic search up / down for radio frequencies.
Select previous / next CD, USB track.
Navigation in a list.

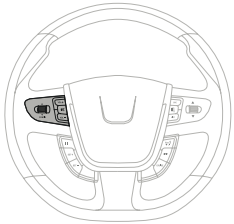
Audio settings:
audio ambiences, treble, bass, loudness, distribution, left/right balance, front/rear fader, automatic volume.

Abandon the current operation.
Up one level.

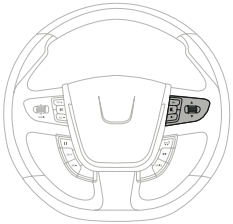
1 Select preset radio station.
Long press: preset (store) a station.

BAND Select AM / FM wavebands.

Steering mounted controls









Press: open the instrument panel screen menu.
Rotate: navigate in the instrument panel screen menu.

Increase volume.

Mute / restore sound.

Decrease volume.

Rotate:
Radio: search for the previous / next station.
Media: previous / next track.
Press: confirm.

SRC Change the audio source.

Select the type of permanent display in the screen, between window and full screen modes.
Long press: black screen (DARK).

LIST Radio: display the list of stations.
Media: display the list of tracks.
Long press: update the list of stations received.

Menus

> Screen C



"**Multimedia**": Media parameters, Radio parameters.

For a detailed global view of the menus available, refer to the "Screen menu map" section.

Audio

Selecting a station

The exterior environment (hills, buildings, tunnel, car park, below ground...) may prevent reception, even in RDS station tracking mode. This phenomenon is normal in the propagation of radio waves and is in no way indicative of a fault with the audio system.

SOURCE — Press **SOURCE** or **SRC** several times in succession and select radio.

BAND — Press **BAND** to select a waveband.

LIST — Press **LIST** to display the list of stations received in alphabetical order.

▲ ▼ — Select the desired radio station and confirm by pressing **OK**.

◀◀ ▶▶ — A press changes to the next or previous letter (e.g. A, B, D, F, G, J, K, ...).

LIST — A long press on **LIST** builds or updates the list of stations; audio reception is cut momentarily.

RDS

RDS, if displayed, enables you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the country as radio stations do not cover 100 % of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

OK When the radio is displayed on the screen, press **OK** to display the contextual menu.

OK Select "**RDS**" and confirm to save. "**RDS**" is displayed in the screen.

Receiving TA messages

The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station transmitting this type of message. When a traffic report is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, USB, ...) is interrupted automatically to play the TA message. Normal playback of the audio source resumes at the end of the transmission of the message.

TA INFO Press **TA INFO** to activate or deactivate the reception of traffic messages.

Receiving INFO messages

The INFO function gives priority to TA alert messages. To be active, this function needs good reception of a radio station that transmits this type of message. When a message is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, USB, ...) is interrupted automatically to receive the INFO message. Normal play resumes at the end of the message transmission.

TA INFO Make a long press on **TA INFO** to display the list of categories.

▲ ▼ Select or deselect categories to activate or deactivate the reception of the corresponding messages.

Display RADIO TEXT

Radio text is information transmitted by the radio station related to the current programme or song.

Screen C

OK

With the radio displayed on the screen, press **OK** to display the contextual menu.

▲
▼

Select "**RadioText (TXT) display**" and confirm **OK** to save.

Media

Audio CD

Playing a CD

Insert 12 cm diameter circular compact discs only.
Some anti-pirating systems, on original discs or CDs copied using a personal recorder, may cause faults which are no reflection on the quality of the original player.
Without pressing the **EJECT** button, insert a CD in the player, play begins automatically.

SOURCE

To play a disc which has already been inserted, press the **SOURCE** or **SRC** button several times in succession and select "**CD**".



Press one of the buttons to select a track on the CD.

LIST

Press **LIST** to display the list of tracks on the CD.



Press and hold one of the buttons for fast forward or backward.

CD, USB

Information and advice

The audio system will only play files with extension ".mp3" or ".wma" and a compression rate that is constant or variable between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters without using special characters (e.g. " ? ; ù) to avoid any playing or displaying problems.

The playlists accepted are types .m3u and .pls.
The number of files is limited to 5 000 in 500 directories on a maximum of 8 levels.

! On a single disc, the CD player can read up to 255 MP3 files spread over 8 directory levels. However, it is recommended that this be kept to 2 levels so as to limit the time taken to access and play the CD.
During play, the folder structure is not observed.

In order to be able to play a recorded CDR or CDRW, when recording it is preferable to select standards ISO 9660 level 1. 2 or Joliet.
If the disc is recorded in another format, it may not be played correctly.
It is recommended that the same recording standard is always used for an individual disc, with as low a speed as possible (4x maximum) for optimum sound quality.
In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

Use only USB memory sticks formatted FAT32 (File Allocation Table).

! Do not connect a hard disk or USB device other than audio players to the USB port. This may cause damage to your installation.

CD, USB

Playing a compilation

! Insert an MP3 compilation in the CD player or connect a memory stick to the USB port, directly or via an extension lead.

The system creates playlists (temporary memory) the creation time for which can take from a few seconds to several minutes.
The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or a USB memory stick is connected.
Play starts automatically after a period which depends on the capacity of the USB memory stick.

At a first connection, the order suggested is by folder. When connecting again, the order previously chosen is retained.

SOURCE To play a disc or memory stick which has already been inserted, press **SOURCE** or **SRC** several times in succession and select "**CD**" or "**USB**".

 Press one of the buttons to select the next or previous track.

 Press one of the buttons to select the next or previous folder in the order chosen.

 Press and hold one of the buttons for fast forwards or backwards.

LIST Press **LIST** to display the menu of folders in the compilation.

 Select a line in the list.

OK Select a track or a folder.

 Up a level in the menu.

 Skip a track.

USB memory stick - File sorting

LIST

Make a long press on **LIST** or press **MENU**, select "**Multimedia**", then "**Media parameters**" and finally "**Choice of track listing**" to display the different types of sorting.

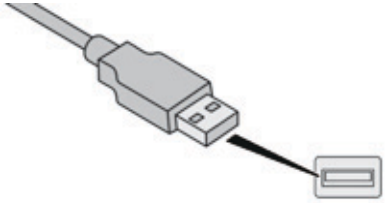
▲ ▼

OK

Having selected the desired sorting ("**By folders**", "**By artists**", "**By genres**", "**By playlists**") press **OK**. Then confirm **OK** to save the modifications.

- **By folders**: all folders containing audio files recognised on the peripheral device, in alphabetical order without following the folder structure.
- **By artists**: all of the artist names defined in the ID3 Tags, in alphabetical order.
- **By genres**: all of the genres defined in the ID3 Tags.
- **By playlists**: if playlists have been saved.

USB players



The audio files on a Mass Storage portable player* can be heard through the vehicle's speakers by connecting it to the USB port (cable not supplied).

Management of the device is via the audio system controls.

If the portable player is not recognised by the USB port, connect it to the auxiliary Jack socket.

The Apple® player must be updated regularly for the best connection.

The playlists are those defined in the Apple® player.

The Apple® player must be generation 5 or later.

* Check your player's manual.

Auxiliary socket (AUX)



The auxiliary Jack socket permits the connection of a portable non-mass storage device or an Apple® player if not recognised by the USB port.

! Do not connect a device to the USB port and to the auxiliary Jack socket at the same time.

Connect the portable device to the auxiliary Jack socket using a suitable cable (not supplied).

SOURCE Press the **SOURCE** or **SRC** button several times in succession and select "**AUX**".

First adjust the volume on your portable device.

Then adjust the volume of the audio system.

The display and management of controls is on the portable device.

Play mode

! The play modes available are:
- Normal: the tracks are played in order, depending on the classification of the selected files.
- Random: the tracks in an album or folder are played in a random order.
- Random all: all of the tracks saved in the media are played in random order.
- Repeat: the tracks played are only those from the current album or folder.

MENU Press **OK** for access to the contextual menu.
or
Press **MENU**.

◀◀ ▶▶ Select "**Multimedia**" and confirm.

OK

Audio settings

Screen C

◀◀ ▶▶ Select "**Media parameters**" and confirm.

OK

◀◀ ▶▶ Select "**Read mode**" and confirm.

OK

◀◀ ▶▶ Select the desired play mode and confirm **OK** to save the modifications.

OK



♫ Press ♫ to display the audio settings menu.

The settings available are:
- Ambience,
- Bass,
- Treble,
- Loudness,
- Distribution: Personalised or Driver,
- Left / right balance,
- Fader (front / rear balance),
- Auto. volume.

▲ ▼ Select and confirm "**Other settings...**" to display the next setting in the list.

OK

! The distribution (or spatialisation using the Arkamys© system), is an audio process which allows the sound quality to be improved according to the setting chosen, corresponding to the position of the listeners in the vehicle.

i The Ambience, Treble and Bass audio settings are different and independent for each sound source.

i On-board audio: Arkamys© Sound Staging optimises sound distribution in the the passenger compartment.

Screen menu map(s)

Main function

- 1 **Option A**
  - 2 **Option A1**
    - 3 Option A11
- 1 **Option B...**

Screen C

MULTIMEDIA

- 1 **Media parameters**
  - 2 **Choice of playback mode**
    - 3 Normal
    - 3 Random
    - 3 Random all
    - 3 Repeat
  - 2 **Choice of track listing**
    - 3 By folders
    - 3 By artists
    - 3 By genres
    - 3 By playlists
- 1 **Radio parameters**

PERSONALISATION - CONFIGURATION

- 1 **Choice of language**
- 1 **Display configuration**
  - 2 **Choice of units**
  - 2 **Date and time adjustment**
  - 2 **Display parameters**
  - 2 **Brightness**

Frequently asked questions

The following tables contain answers to the most frequently asked questions.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources (radio, CD...).	For optimum sound quality, the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience, Loudness) can be adapted to the different sound sources, which may result in audible differences when changing source (radio, CD...).	Check that the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience, Loudness) are adapted to the sources listened to. It is advisable to set the AUDIO functions (Bass, Treble, Front-Rear Fader, Left-Right Balance) to the middle position, select the musical ambience "None" and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.
When changing the settings for treble and bass, the ambience setting is deselected. When changing the ambience setting, treble and bass are reset to zero.	Choosing an ambience imposes settings for treble and bass. Modifying one without the other is not possible.	Modify the treble and bass settings or the ambience setting to obtain the desired sound quality.
When changing the balance setting, distribution is deselected.	Choosing a distribution setting imposes a balance setting. Modifying one without the other is not possible.	Modify the balance setting or the distribution setting to obtain the desired sound quality.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The quality of reception of the radio station listened to gradually deteriorates or the stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed...).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter used by the station listened to or there is no transmitter in the geographical area through which the vehicle is travelling.	Activate the RDS function to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks...) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a PEUGEOT dealer.
Sound cut-outs of 1 to 2 seconds in radio mode.	During this brief sound cut-out, the RDS searches for any frequency permitting better reception of the station.	Deactivate the RDS function if the phenomenon is too frequent and always on the same route.
The traffic announcement (TA) is displayed. I do not receive any traffic information.	The radio station does not broadcast traffic information.	Tune to a radio station which broadcasts traffic information.
The stored stations are not found (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed...).	An incorrect waveband is selected.	Press the BAND button to return to the waveband on which the stations are stored.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The CD is ejected automatically or is not played by the player.	The CD is inserted upside down, is unplayable, does not contain any audio data or contains an audio format which the player cannot play. The CD is protected by an anti-pirating protection system which is not recognised by the audio equipment.	- Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up. - Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too damaged. - Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: consult the advice in the "Audio" section. - The audio equipment's CD player does not play DVDs. - Due to their quality level, certain writeable CDs will not be played by the audio system.
The CD player sound is poor.	The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.	Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio settings (bass, treble, ambience) are unsuitable.	Set the treble or bass level to 0, without selecting an ambience.
The message "USB peripheral error" or "Peripheral not recognised" is displayed in the screen.	The USB memory stick is not recognised. The memory stick may be corrupt.	Reformat the memory stick (FAT 32).
The Apple® player is not recognised when connecting to the USB port.	The Apple® player is of a generation that is not compatible with the USB.	Connect the Apple® player to the AUX Jack socket using a suitable cable (not supplied).

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The hard disk or device is not recognised when connecting to the USB port.	Some hard disks and devices need a power supply greater than is provided by the audio system.	Connect the device to the 230 V socket, the 12 V socket or an external power supply. **Caution**: ensure that the device does not transmit a voltage greater than 5 V (risk of destruction of the system).
In "Random all" play, not all of the tracks are played.	In "Random all" play, the system can only take into account up to 999 tracks.	
With the engine off, the audio system switches off after a few minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the audio system operating time depends on the battery charge. The switch-off is normal: the audio system switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging the vehicle's battery.	Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge.
The message "the audio system is overheated" appears on the display.	In order to protect the installation if the surrounding temperature is too high, the audio system switches to an automatic thermal protection mode leading to a reduction of the volume or stopping of the playing of the CD.	Switch the audio system off for a few minutes to allow the system to cool.

A

ABS 133
Accessories 131
Adaptive lighting 122
AdBlue® 24, 32, 223
Additif AdBlue 24
Additive, Diesel 220, 221
Adjusting headlamps 126
Adjusting head restraints 75, 78
Adjusting seats 75, 76
Adjusting the date 47, 48
Adjusting the height and reach of the steering wheel 79
Adjusting the seat belt height 137
Adjusting the time 47, 48
Advice on driving 159, 160
Airbags 27, 139
Airbags, curtain 141, 142
Airbags, front 139, 142
Airbags, lateral 141, 142
Air conditioning 11, 86, 88, 91
Air conditioning, dual-zone 88
Air conditioning, manual 86
Air conditioning, quad-zone 91
Air vents 83
Alarm 70
Anti-lock braking system (ABS) 133
Anti-theft 52, 61, 69, 167
Armrest 99
Armrest, front 107
Armrest, rear 111
ASR 133
Assistance call 132, 274
Audio streaming (Bluetooth) 294
Audio system 337
Auxiliary socket 108, 292, 346

B

Battery 221, 253-260
Battery, charging 255
Battery, remote control 54, 63, 69
Blanking screen (snow shield) 204, 205
Blind, sunroof 104
Blind, panoramic roof 106
Blind spot monitoring system 196
BlueHDi 35, 175, 223
Bluetooth (telephone) 324, 325
Boot 55, 57, 65, 68
Boot, motorised 66, 68
Brake disc, pads 222
Brake lamps 245, 246
Brake warning lamp 22
Braking assistance, emergency 133
Bulbs (changing) 242

C

Cable, audio 292, 346
Capacity, fuel tank 200
Cap, fuel filler 200
CD 292, 343
Central locking 49, 55, 64
Centre console 107
Changing a bulb 242
Changing a fuse 249
Changing a wheel 235
Changing a wiper blade 130, 211
Changing the remote control battery 54, 63
Checking the engine oil level 31, 218
Checking the levels 218
Checking tyre pressures (using the kit) 234
Checks 215-222
Child lock 158
Children 138, 140, 143-158
Child seats, general 138, 143-145
Child seats, conventional 149, 150
Child seats, ISOFIX 152-155
Closing the boot 65
Configuration, vehicle 28
Connection, Bluetooth 324, 325
Control, back-up boot release 68
Control, back-up door 53
Control, heated seats 78
Control stalk, lighting 117
Control stalk, wipers 127
Courtesy lamps 102
Cover, load space 114
Cruise control 190, 192
Cup holder 99, 111

D

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) - Digital radio 290
Date (setting) 47, 48
Daytime running lamps 118, 120, 242, 243
Deactivating ASR 135
Deactivating the passenger airbag 140
Deadlocking 51, 60
Demisting/defrosting, front, rear 96
Dimensions 271
Dipstick 31, 218
Direction indicators 120, 125, 242-246
Display screen, instrument panel 13, 28
Driving economically 11

Driving positions (storing) 77
Dynamic stability control (CDS) 18
Dynamic stability control (DSC) 22, 133

E

EBA 133
Eco-driving (advice) 11
Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) 133
Emergency call 132, 274
Emergency switching off 166
Emergency warning lamps 132, 227
Emissions control system, SCR 25, 223
Energy economy mode 261
Engine compartment 215-217
Engine, Diesel 16, 202, 216, 217, 228, 266, 268
Engine, petrol 202, 215, 264, 265
Environment 11, 54, 63, 96, 179, 186, 220, 226, 253

F

Filling the fuel tank 200, 202
Filter, air 221
Filter, oil 221
Filter, particle 220, 221
Filter, passenger compartment 221
Fitting a wheel 240
Fitting roof bars 212
Fittings, boot 112, 113
Fittings, front 99
Fittings, rear 111
Flap, fuel filler 200
Flashing indicators 120, 125
Foglamps, front 119, 123, 242
Foglamps, rear 119, 245, 246
Folding the rear seats 109
Folding/unfolding the door mirrors 80
Frequency (radio) 288
Fuel 202
Fuel consumption 11
Fusebox, dashboard 250
Fusebox, engine compartment 252
Fuses 249

G

Gauge, fuel 13, 200
Gearbox, automatic 11, 16, 176, 180, 183, 222, 253
Gearbox, manual 11, 16, 174, 180, 183, 222
Gear lever, automatic gearbox 176
Gear lever, manual gearbox 174
Gear shift indicator 175
Glove box 101
Ground clearance 272
Guide-me-home 121, 124

H

Hazard warning lamps 132, 227
Headlamp adjustment 126
Headlamps, automatic illumination 118, 121
Headlamps, dipped beam 117, 242, 244
Headlamps, halogen 242, 244
Headlamps, main beam 117, 242, 244
Headlamp wash 128
Head restraints, front 75, 78
Head restraints, rear 109
Head-up display 184, 188, 190
Heating 83, 86, 88, 91
Heating, programmable (Webasto) 97
Hill start assist 183
Horn 132

I

Identification, vehicle 273
Immobiliser, electronic 52, 61, 69, 167
Indicator, coolant temperature 30
Indicator, engine oil level 31
Indicator lamps 14
Indicators, direction 120
Inflating tyres 11, 273
Inflating tyres and accessories (using the kit) 234
Input, auxiliary 108, 292, 346
Instrument panel 13
Instruments and controls 7
Intelligent Traction Control 134
ISOFIX 152-156

J

Jack 235
JBL (audio system) 276
Jump starting 254

K

Keyless Entry and Starting
electronic key 55, 56, 69
Key not recognised 54, 62, 166
Key with remote control 49, 69
Kit, hands-free 324, 325
Kit, temporary puncture repair 229

L

Labels, identification 273
Lamps, parking 125
LEDs - light-emitting diodes 242, 245, 246
Level, AdBlue® additive 223
Level, brake fluid 219
Level, Diesel additive 220, 221
Level, engine coolant 30, 220
Level, engine oil 31, 218
Level, headlamp wash 129, 220
Level, power steering fluid 219
Levels and checks 215-220
Level, screenwash fluid 129, 220
Lighting, cornering 123
Lighting dimmer 32
Lighting, guide-me home 121, 124
Lighting, interior 102, 103
Lighting, mood 103
Lighting, welcome 125
Loading 11, 212
Load reduction mode 261
Locating your vehicle 52, 61
Locking 50, 58, 64
Locking, manual (back-up) 62
Long objects, transporting 111
Low fuel level 23, 201
Luggage retaining strap 112

M

Maintenance, routine 11
Map reading lamps 102
Markings, identification 273
Massage function 79
Mat 100
Memorising a speed 192
Menu, touch screen 277, 281, 282, 284, 286, 296, 298, 302, 310, 320, 322
Menu, audio system 340, 348
Mirror, rear view 82
Mirrors, door 80, 81, 196
Mirror, vanity 101
Misfuel prevention 201
Mountings, Isofix 152
MP3 CD 343, 344

N

Navigation 296
Net, high load retaining 115
Number plate lamps 248

O

Oil consumption 218
Oil, engine 218
Opening the boot 50, 57, 65
Opening the doors 49, 55
Opening the roof blind 104, 106

P

Pads, brake 222
Paint colour code 273
Panoramic glass sunroof 106
Parking brake 167, 222
Parking brake, electric 21, 168
Parking sensors, front 194
Parking sensors, rear 193
PEUGEOT Connect Apps 319
PEUGEOT Connect Assistance 274
PEUGEOT Connect Packs 274
PEUGEOT Connect SOS 274
Plates, identification 273

Player, Apple® 294, 345
Player, MP3 CD..... 292, 343, 344
Port, USB 108, 292, 345
Pressures, tyres.....273
Pre-tensioning seat belts.....138
Priming the fuel system 228
Protecting children.....138, 140, 143-158
Puncture.....229

R

Radio 288, 340
Radio, digital (Digital Audio Broadcasting - DAB).....290
Range, AdBlue.....35, 36
RDS.....289, 341
Rear screen, demisting.....96
Recharging the battery 255
Reduction of electrical load 261
Regeneration of the particle filter 221
Reinitialising the remote control 54, 63
Reminder, lighting on 119
Remote control.....49, 55, 69
Removing a wheel 238
Removing the battery.....257
Removing the mat.....100
Replacing bulbs 242
Replacing fuses 249
Replacing the air filter.....221
Replacing the oil filter 221
Replacing the passenger compartment filter 221
Reservoir, headlamp wash / screenwash.....220
Resetting the service indicator.....34
Reversing camera.....199
Reversing lamp 245, 246
Risk areas (update).....307
Roof bars.....212
Roof, opening.....104, 106
Running out of fuel (Diesel) 228

S

Safety, children 138, 140, 143-158
Saturation of the particle filter (Diesel).....221
Screen, cold climate 204
Screen, instrument panel.....28, 39
Screen menu map..... 282, 284, 286, 296, 298, 302, 310, 320, 322
Screen, multifunction (with audio system)..... 340, 348
Screen, touch.....271
Screenwash, front/rear 128
SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction).....223
Seat belts 136-138
Seats, front..... 75-77
Seats, heated.....78
Seats, rear.....109
Serial number, vehicle 273
Service indicator.....33
Service warning lamp 20
Servicing 11
Settings, system.....28, 310
Sidelamps 117, 125, 242, 245, 246
Side repeater 244
Ski flap 111
Snow chains.....203
Socket, 12 V accessory 101, 108, 111
Sockets, audio 108, 292, 345, 346
Speed limiter 188, 192
Spotlamps, side 125, 244
Stability control (DSC) 18, 133
Starting the engine 161, 165
Starting using another battery.....254
Station, radio..... 288, 340
Steering mounted controls, audio 280, 339
Steering wheel, adjustment 79
Stop & Start.....17, 42, 89, 92, 96, 180, 200, 214, 221, 253, 256
Storage..... 99, 101, 107, 111-113
Storage wells 113
Storing driving positions 77
Stowing rings 112, 113
Sun visor 101
Switching off the engine 161, 165
Synchronising the remote control.....54, 63

T

Table of weights 265, 268
Tables of engines.....264, 267
Tables of fuses.....249
Tank, AdBlue® additive 223
Tank, fuel.....200
Technical data.....264
Telephone 320
Temperature, coolant.....30
Third brake lamp 248

Three flashes (direction indicators) 120
Time (setting) 47, 48
TMC (Traffic info) 308
Tools 229, 235
Topping-up the AdBlue® additive 224
Total distance recorder 29
Touch screen 41, 43, 48, 277
Towball, quickly detachable 206
Towbar 160, 205
Towbar with quickly detachable towball 206
Towed loads 265, 268
Towing another vehicle 263
Traction control (ASR) 18, 22, 133
Traffic information (TA) 309, 341
Traffic information (TMC) 308
Trailer 160, 205
Triangle, warning 227
Trip computer 39, 41
Trip distance recorder 29
Tyres 11, 273
Tyre under-inflation detection 27, 186, 237

U

Under-inflation (detection) 27, 186, 237
Unlocking 49, 55, 64
Unlocking the boot 50, 57
Updating risk areas 307
Updating the date 47, 48
Updating the time 47, 48
UREA 35, 223
USB (PEUGEOT Connect) 108, 292

V

Ventilation 83-86

W

Warning and indicator lamps 14
Warning lamp, braking system 22
Warning lamp, Diesel engine pre-heater 16
Warning lamp, SCR emissions control system 25
Warning lamp, Service 20
Weights 265, 268
Welcome function 77
Wheel, spare 235-237
Wiper blades (changing) 130, 211
Wiper, rear 128
Wipers 17, 127
Wipers, automatic rain sensitive 129



! Labels are applied at various points on your vehicle. They carry safety warnings as well as vehicle identification information. Do not remove them: they form an integral part of your vehicle.

Reproduction or translation of all or part of this document is prohibited without written authorisation from Automobiles PEUGEOT.

Automobiles PEUGEOT declares, by application of the provisions of the European regulation (Directive 2000/53) relating to End of Life Vehicles, that it achieves the objectives set by this regulation and that recycled materials are used in the manufacture of the products that it sells.

Printed in the EU
Anglais
01-16

PEUGEOT

Automobiles PEUGEOT - Siège Social : 75, avenue de la Grande-Armée 75016 PARIS
Tél. 33 (0)1 40 66 55 11 - Fax 33 (0)1 40 66 54 14
Adresse postale : Automobiles PEUGEOT B.P 01 75761 PARIS cedex 16 - Adresse Internet : http://www.peugeot.com
Société Anonyme au capital de 172 771 770 Euros - R.C.S. PARIS B 552 144 503. SIRET 552 144 503 00018. APE 341 Z



Recommendations for ventilation and air conditioning

In order for these systems to be fully effective, follow the operation and maintenance guidelines below:

- To obtain an even air distribution, take care not to obstruct the exterior air intake grilles located at the base of the windscreen, the nozzles, the vents and the air outlets, as well as the air extractor located in the boot.
- Do not cover the sunshine sensor, located on the dashboard; this is used for regulation of the air conditioning system.
- Operate the air conditioning system for at least 5 to 10 minutes, once or twice a month to keep it in perfect working order.
- Ensure that the passenger compartment filter is in good condition and have the filter elements replaced regularly.
  We recommend the use of a combined passenger compartment filter. Thanks to its special active additive, it contributes to the purification of the air breathed by the occupants and the cleanliness of the passenger compartment (reduction of allergic symptoms, bad odours and greasy deposits).
- To ensure correct operation of the air conditioning system, you are also advised to have it checked regularly as recommended in the warranty and maintenance record.
- If the system does not produce cold air, switch it off and contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

When towing the maximum load on a steep gradient in high temperatures, switching off the air conditioning increases the available engine power and so improves the towing ability.

If after an extended stop in sunshine, the interior temperature is very high, first ventilate the passenger compartment for a few moments.
Put the air flow control at a setting high enough to quickly change the air in the passenger compartment.

The condensation created by the air conditioning results in a discharge of water under the vehicle which is perfectly normal.

Contains fluorinated greenhouse gas R134A.
Depending on version and country of sale, the air conditioning system contains fluorinated greenhouse gas R134A. Gas capacity 0.525 kg (+/- 0.025 kg), GWP index 1 430 t (equivalent CO_2: 0.751 t).

Compatibility of fuels

Fuel used for petrol engines

The petrol engines are compatible with bio-fuels that conform to current and future European standards and can be obtained from filling stations.

E5
E10

Petrol that meets the EN228 standard, mixed with a bio-fuel meeting the EN15376 standard.

The only petrol additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715001 standard.

Fuel used for Diesel engines

The Diesel engines are compatible with biofuels that conform to current and future European standards and can be obtained from filling stations.

B7

Diesel fuel that meets standard EN590 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 7% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).



B10

Diesel fuel that meets standard EN16734 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 10% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).

XTL

Paraffinic Diesel fuel that meets standard EN15940 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 7% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).

B20
B30

The use of B20 or B30 fuel meeting standard EN16709 is possible in your Diesel engine. However, this use, even occasional, requires strict application of the special servicing conditions referred to as "Arduous conditions".

For more information, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

The use of any other type of (bio) fuel (vegetable or animal oils, pure or diluted, domestic fuel...) is strictly prohibited (risk of damage to the engine and fuel system).

The only Diesel additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715000 standard.

Diesel fuel at low temperature

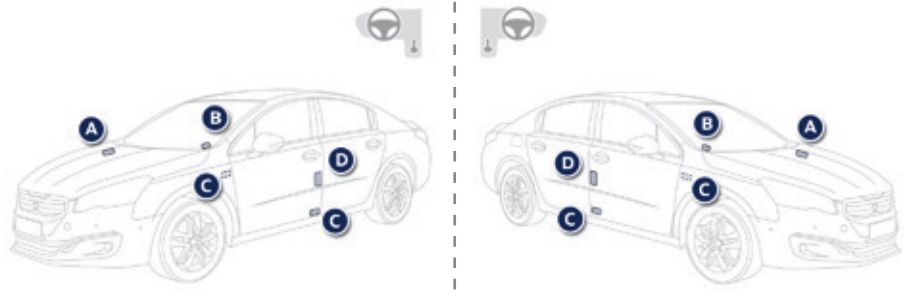
In temperatures below 0°C (+32°F), the formation of paraffins in the summer diesel fuels may result in abnormal operation of the fuel supply system. To avoid this, the use of winter diesel fuels is recommended, keeping the tank topped up to more than 50% of its capacity.
If in spite of this you experience difficulties starting the engine in temperatures below -15°C (+5°F), simply leave the vehicle in a garage or a heated workshop for a while.

Travelling abroad

Certain fuels could damage the engine of your vehicle. In certain countries, the use of a particular fuel may be required (specific octane rating, specific sales name...) to ensure correct operation of the engine.
For any additional information, contact your dealer.

Identification markings

Various visible markings for the identification of your vehicle.



A. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) under the bonnet.
This number is engraved on the bodywork near the damper mounting.

B. Vehicle identification Number (VIN) on the windscreen lower crossmember.
This number is given on a self-adhesive label which is visible through the windscreen.

C. Manufacturer's label.
The VIN is marked on a self-destroying label affixed to the centre pillar, on the left-hand or right-hand side.

D. Tyre/paint label.
This label is fitted to the middle pillar, on the driver's side.

It bears the following information:
- the tyre inflation pressures with and without load,
- the tyre sizes,
- the inflation pressure of the spare wheel,
- the paint colour code.

The original tyres fitted to the vehicle may have a load index or speed rating higher than those given on the label; this has no effect on the inflation pressures.

The tyre pressures must be checked when the tyres are cold, at least once a month.

Low tyre pressures increase fuel consumption.

Emergency or assistance call

Type 1





PEUGEOT Connect SOS

SOS

In an emergency, press this button for more than 2 seconds. Flashing of the green indicator lamp and a voice message confirm that the call has been made to the "PEUGEOT Connect SOS"* centre.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the call.
The green indicator lamp goes off.

The green indicator lamp remains on (without flashing) when communication is established. It goes off at the end of the call.

PEUGEOT Connect SOS immediately locates your vehicle, makes contact with you in your language** and - if necessary - organises sending of the appropriate emergency services**. In countries where the service is not operational, or if the locating service has been expressly declined, the call is directed straight to the emergency services (112) without location.

! If an impact is detected by the airbag control unit, and independently of the deployment of any airbags, an emergency call is made automatically.

i If you benefit from the PEUGEOT Connect Packs offer with the SOS and assistance pack included, there are additional services available to you in your personal space, via the Internet website for your country.

* Depending on the terms and conditions for the service, available from dealers, and technological and technical limits.

** Depending on the geographic cover for "PEUGEOT Connect SOS", "PEUGEOT Connect Assistance" and the official national language selected by the owner of the vehicle.
The list of countries covered by PEUGEOT CONNECT services is available at dealers or on the website in your country.

Operation of the system



When the ignition is switched on, the green indicator lamp comes on for 3 seconds indicating that the system is operating correctly.



If the orange indicator lamp flashes then goes off: the system has a fault.

If the orange indicator lamp is on fixed: the back-up battery should be replaced.
In both cases, the emergency and assistance calls service may not work.
Contact a qualified repairer as soon as possible.

The fault with the system does not prevent the vehicle being driven.

PEUGEOT Connect Assistance



Press this button for more than 2 seconds to request assistance if the vehicle breaks down.
A voice message confirms that the call has been made**.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request.
The cancellation is confirmed by a voice message.

Geo-location



You can deactivate geo-location by simultaneously pressing the "PEUGEOT Connect SOS" and "PEUGEOT Connect Assistance" buttons, followed by a press on "PEUGEOT Connect Assistance" to confirm.

To reactivate geo-location, simultaneously press the "PEUGEOT Connect SOS" and "PEUGEOT Connect Assistance" buttons again, followed by a press on "PEUGEOT Connect Assistance" to confirm.

If you purchased your vehicle outside the Brand's dealer network, we suggest that you have a dealer check and, if desired, modify the configuration of these services.
In a multi-lingual country, configuration is possible in the official national language of your choice.

For technical reasons, particularly to improve the quality of PEUGEOT CONNECT services to customers, the manufacturer reserves the right to carry out updates to the vehicle's on-board telematic system.

** Depending on the geographic cover for "PEUGEOT Connect SOS", "PEUGEOT Connect Assistance" and the official national language selected by the owner of the vehicle.
The list of countries covered by PEUGEOT CONNECT services is available at dealers or on the website in your country.

Emergency or assistance call

Type 2





PEUGEOT Connect SOS

SOS

In an emergency, press this button for more than 2 seconds. Flashing of the green LED and a voice message confirm that the call has been made to the "PEUGEOT Connect SOS" call centre*.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request.
The green LED goes off.

The green LED remains on (without flashing) when communication is established.
It goes off at the end of the call.

"PEUGEOT Connect SOS" immediately locates your vehicle, starts communication with you in your language**, and where necessary sends the appropriate public emergency services**. In countries where the service is not available, or when the locating service has been expressly declined, the call is sent directly to the emergency services (112) without the vehicle location.

! If an impact is detected by the airbag control unit, and independently of the deployment of any airbags, an emergency call is made automatically.

i If you benefit from the PEUGEOT Connect Packs offer with the SOS and assistance pack included, there are additional services available to you in your personal space, via the Internet website for your country.

* Subject to the general conditions for the service available from dealers and subject to technological and technical limitations.

** Depending on the geographical cover of "PEUGEOT Connect SOS", "PEUGEOT Connect Assistance" and the official national language selected by the owner of the vehicle.
The list of countries covered and PEUGEOT CONNECT services is available from dealers or on the website in your country.

Operation of the system



When the ignition is switched on, the green LED comes on for 3 seconds indicating that the system is operating correctly.

For all countries except Russia, Belarus and Kazakhstan.



The red indicator lamp flashes then goes off: there is a system fault.

The red indicator lamp is on continuously: replace the back-up battery.

For Russia, Belarus and Kazakhstan.



The red indicator lamp is on continuously: there is a system fault.

The red indicator lamp flashes: replace the back-up battery.

In either case, the emergency and assistance calls may not function.
Contact a qualified repairer as soon as possible.

i A fault with the system does not prevent the vehicle being driven.

PEUGEOT Connect Assistance



Press this button for more than 2 seconds to request assistance if the vehicle breaks down.
A voice message confirms that the call has been made**.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request.
The cancellation is confirmed by a voice message.

Geo-location



You can deactivate geo-location by simultaneously pressing the "PEUGEOT Connect SOS" and "PEUGEOT Connect Assistance" buttons, followed by a press on "PEUGEOT Connect Assistance" to confirm.

To reactivate geo-location, simultaneously press the "PEUGEOT Connect SOS" and "PEUGEOT Connect Assistance" buttons again, followed by a press on "PEUGEOT Connect Assistance" to confirm.

i If you purchased your vehicle outside the Brand's dealer network, we invite you to have a dealer check the configuration of these services and, if desired, modified to suit your wishes.
In a multi-lingual country, configuration is possible in the official national language of your choice.

i For technical reasons and in particular to improve the quality of "PEUGEOT CONNECT services" services to customers, the manufacturer reserves the right to carry out updates to the vehicle's on-board telematic system.

** Depending on the geographical cover of "PEUGEOT Connect SOS", "PEUGEOT Connect Assistance" and the official national language selected by the owner of the vehicle.
The list of countries covered and PEUGEOT CONNECT services is available from dealers or on the website in your country.

Anglais
AN. 16508.A040

Recommendations for ventilation and air conditioning

In order for these systems to be fully effective, follow the operation and maintenance guidelines below:

- To obtain an even air distribution, take care not to obstruct the exterior air intake grilles located at the base of the windscreen, the nozzles, the vents and the air outlets, as well as the air extractor located in the boot.
- Do not cover the sunshine sensor, located on the dashboard; this is used for regulation of the air conditioning system.
- Operate the air conditioning system for at least 5 to 10 minutes, once or twice a month to keep it in perfect working order.
- Ensure that the passenger compartment filter is in good condition and have the filter elements replaced regularly.
  We recommend the use of a combined passenger compartment filter. Thanks to its special active additive, it contributes to the purification of the air breathed by the occupants and the cleanliness of the passenger compartment (reduction of allergic symptoms, bad odours and greasy deposits).
- To ensure correct operation of the air conditioning system, you are also advised to have it checked regularly as recommended in the warranty and maintenance record.
- If the system does not produce cold air, switch it off and contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

When towing the maximum load on a steep gradient in high temperatures, switching off the air conditioning increases the available engine power and so improves the towing ability.

If after an extended stop in sunshine, the interior temperature is very high, first ventilate the passenger compartment for a few moments.
Put the air flow control at a setting high enough to quickly change the air in the passenger compartment.

The condensation created by the air conditioning results in a discharge of water under the vehicle which is perfectly normal.

Contains fluorinated greenhouse gas R134A.
Depending on version and country of sale, the air conditioning system contains fluorinated greenhouse gas R134A. Gas capacity 0.525 kg (+/- 0.025 kg), GWP index 1 430 t (equivalent CO_2: 0.751 t).

Compatibility of fuels

Fuel used for petrol engines

The petrol engines are compatible with bio-fuels that conform to current and future European standards and can be obtained from filling stations.

E5
E10

Petrol that meets the EN228 standard, mixed with a bio-fuel meeting the EN15376 standard.

The only petrol additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715001 standard.

Fuel used for Diesel engines

The Diesel engines are compatible with biofuels that conform to current and future European standards and can be obtained from filling stations.

B7

Diesel fuel that meets standard EN590 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 7% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).



B10

Diesel fuel that meets standard EN16734 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 10% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).

XTL

Paraffinic Diesel fuel that meets standard EN15940 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 7% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).

B20
B30

The use of B20 or B30 fuel meeting standard EN16709 is possible in your Diesel engine. However, this use, even occasional, requires strict application of the special servicing conditions referred to as "Arduous conditions".

For more information, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

The use of any other type of (bio) fuel (vegetable or animal oils, pure or diluted, domestic fuel...) is strictly prohibited (risk of damage to the engine and fuel system).

The only Diesel additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715000 standard.

Diesel fuel at low temperature

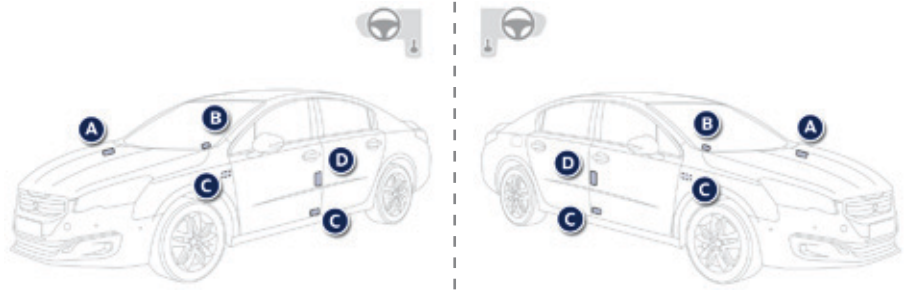
In temperatures below 0°C (+32°F), the formation of paraffins in the summer diesel fuels may result in abnormal operation of the fuel supply system. To avoid this, the use of winter diesel fuels is recommended, keeping the tank topped up to more than 50% of its capacity.
If in spite of this you experience difficulties starting the engine in temperatures below -15°C (+5°F), simply leave the vehicle in a garage or a heated workshop for a while.

Travelling abroad

Certain fuels could damage the engine of your vehicle. In certain countries, the use of a particular fuel may be required (specific octane rating, specific sales name...) to ensure correct operation of the engine.
For any additional information, contact your dealer.

Identification markings

Various visible markings for the identification of your vehicle.



A. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) under the bonnet.
This number is engraved on the bodywork near the damper mounting.

B. Vehicle identification Number (VIN) on the windscreen lower crossmember.
This number is given on a self-adhesive label which is visible through the windscreen.

C. Manufacturer's label.
The VIN is marked on a self-destroying label affixed to the centre pillar, on the left-hand or right-hand side.

D. Tyre/paint label.
This label is fitted to the middle pillar, on the driver's side.

It bears the following information:
- the tyre inflation pressures with and without load,
- the tyre sizes,
- the inflation pressure of the spare wheel,
- the paint colour code.

The original tyres fitted to the vehicle may have a load index or speed rating higher than those given on the label; this has no effect on the inflation pressures.

The tyre pressures must be checked when the tyres are cold, at least once a month.

Low tyre pressures increase fuel consumption.

Emergency or assistance call

Type 1





PEUGEOT Connect SOS

SOS

In an emergency, press this button for more than 2 seconds. Flashing of the green indicator lamp and a voice message confirm that the call has been made to the "PEUGEOT Connect SOS"* centre.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the call.
The green indicator lamp goes off.

The green indicator lamp remains on (without flashing) when communication is established. It goes off at the end of the call.

PEUGEOT Connect SOS immediately locates your vehicle, makes contact with you in your language** and - if necessary - organises sending of the appropriate emergency services**. In countries where the service is not operational, or if the locating service has been expressly declined, the call is directed straight to the emergency services (112) without location.

! If an impact is detected by the airbag control unit, and independently of the deployment of any airbags, an emergency call is made automatically.

i If you benefit from the PEUGEOT Connect Packs offer with the SOS and assistance pack included, there are additional services available to you in your personal space, via the Internet website for your country.

* Depending on the terms and conditions for the service, available from dealers, and technological and technical limits.

** Depending on the geographic cover for "PEUGEOT Connect SOS", "PEUGEOT Connect Assistance" and the official national language selected by the owner of the vehicle.
The list of countries covered by PEUGEOT CONNECT services is available at dealers or on the website in your country.

Operation of the system



When the ignition is switched on, the green indicator lamp comes on for 3 seconds indicating that the system is operating correctly.



If the orange indicator lamp flashes then goes off: the system has a fault.

If the orange indicator lamp is on fixed: the back-up battery should be replaced.
In both cases, the emergency and assistance calls service may not work.
Contact a qualified repairer as soon as possible.

The fault with the system does not prevent the vehicle being driven.

PEUGEOT Connect Assistance



Press this button for more than 2 seconds to request assistance if the vehicle breaks down.
A voice message confirms that the call has been made**.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request.
The cancellation is confirmed by a voice message.

Geo-location



You can deactivate geo-location by simultaneously pressing the "PEUGEOT Connect SOS" and "PEUGEOT Connect Assistance" buttons, followed by a press on "PEUGEOT Connect Assistance" to confirm.

To reactivate geo-location, simultaneously press the "PEUGEOT Connect SOS" and "PEUGEOT Connect Assistance" buttons again, followed by a press on "PEUGEOT Connect Assistance" to confirm.

If you purchased your vehicle outside the Brand's dealer network, we suggest that you have a dealer check and, if desired, modify the configuration of these services.
In a multi-lingual country, configuration is possible in the official national language of your choice.

For technical reasons, particularly to improve the quality of PEUGEOT CONNECT services to customers, the manufacturer reserves the right to carry out updates to the vehicle's on-board telematic system.

** Depending on the geographic cover for "PEUGEOT Connect SOS", "PEUGEOT Connect Assistance" and the official national language selected by the owner of the vehicle.
The list of countries covered by PEUGEOT CONNECT services is available at dealers or on the website in your country.

Emergency or assistance call

Type 2





PEUGEOT Connect SOS

SOS

In an emergency, press this button for more than 2 seconds. Flashing of the green LED and a voice message confirm that the call has been made to the "PEUGEOT Connect SOS" call centre*.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request.
The green LED goes off.

The green LED remains on (without flashing) when communication is established.
It goes off at the end of the call.

"PEUGEOT Connect SOS" immediately locates your vehicle, starts communication with you in your language**, and where necessary sends the appropriate public emergency services**. In countries where the service is not available, or when the locating service has been expressly declined, the call is sent directly to the emergency services (112) without the vehicle location.

! If an impact is detected by the airbag control unit, and independently of the deployment of any airbags, an emergency call is made automatically.

i If you benefit from the PEUGEOT Connect Packs offer with the SOS and assistance pack included, there are additional services available to you in your personal space, via the Internet website for your country.

* Subject to the general conditions for the service available from dealers and subject to technological and technical limitations.

** Depending on the geographical cover of "PEUGEOT Connect SOS", "PEUGEOT Connect Assistance" and the official national language selected by the owner of the vehicle.
The list of countries covered and PEUGEOT CONNECT services is available from dealers or on the website in your country.

Operation of the system



When the ignition is switched on, the green LED comes on for 3 seconds indicating that the system is operating correctly.

For all countries except Russia, Belarus and Kazakhstan.



The red indicator lamp flashes then goes off: there is a system fault.

The red indicator lamp is on continuously: replace the back-up battery.

For Russia, Belarus and Kazakhstan.



The red indicator lamp is on continuously: there is a system fault.

The red indicator lamp flashes: replace the back-up battery.

In either case, the emergency and assistance calls may not function.
Contact a qualified repairer as soon as possible.

i A fault with the system does not prevent the vehicle being driven.

PEUGEOT Connect Assistance



Press this button for more than 2 seconds to request assistance if the vehicle breaks down.
A voice message confirms that the call has been made**.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request.
The cancellation is confirmed by a voice message.

Geo-location



You can deactivate geo-location by simultaneously pressing the "PEUGEOT Connect SOS" and "PEUGEOT Connect Assistance" buttons, followed by a press on "PEUGEOT Connect Assistance" to confirm.

To reactivate geo-location, simultaneously press the "PEUGEOT Connect SOS" and "PEUGEOT Connect Assistance" buttons again, followed by a press on "PEUGEOT Connect Assistance" to confirm.

i If you purchased your vehicle outside the Brand's dealer network, we invite you to have a dealer check the configuration of these services and, if desired, modified to suit your wishes.
In a multi-lingual country, configuration is possible in the official national language of your choice.

i For technical reasons and in particular to improve the quality of "PEUGEOT CONNECT services" services to customers, the manufacturer reserves the right to carry out updates to the vehicle's on-board telematic system.

** Depending on the geographical cover of "PEUGEOT Connect SOS", "PEUGEOT Connect Assistance" and the official national language selected by the owner of the vehicle.
The list of countries covered and PEUGEOT CONNECT services is available from dealers or on the website in your country.

Anglais
AN. 16508.A040

PEUGEOT Connect Nav



GPS satellite navigation - Applications - Multimedia audio system - Bluetooth® telephone

Contents

First steps	2
Steering mounted controls	3
Menus	4
Voice commands	5
Navigation	11
Connected navigation	15
Applications	18
Radio	23
DAB radio (Digital Audio Broadcasting)	25
Media	26
Telephone	28
Configuration	33
Frequently asked questions	37

The different functions and settings described vary according to the version and configuration of your vehicle.

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle.
The display of the **Energy Economy Mode** message signals that a change to standby is imminent.

The link below gives access to OSS (Open Source Software) codes for the system.
https://www.groupe-psa.com/fr/oss/
https://www.groupe-psa.com/en/oss/

First steps

With the engine running, a press mutes the sound.
With the ignition off, a press turns the system on.

Adjustment of the volume.

Use the buttons either side of or below the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

Depending on the model, use the "Source" or "Menu" buttons on the left of the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

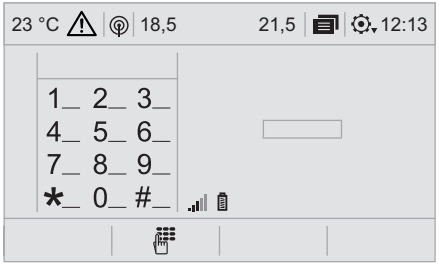
You can display the menus at any time by pressing the screen briefly with three fingers.

All of the touch areas of the screen are white.
Press the cross to go back a level.
Press "OK" to confirm.

! The touch screen is of the "capacitive" type.
To clean the screen, use a soft, non-abrasive cloth (spectacles cloth) with no additional product.
Do not use sharp objects on the screen.
Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

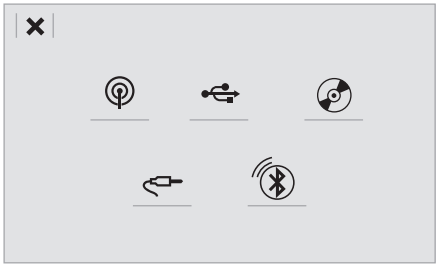
Certain information is displayed permanently in the upper band of the touch screen:

- Repeat of the air conditioning information (depending on version), and direct access to the corresponding menu.
- Go directly to the selection of the audio source, to the list of radio stations (or list of titles depending on the source).
- Go to the message notifications, emails, map updates and, depending on the services, the navigation notifications.
- Go to the settings for the touch screen and the digital instrument panel.



Selecting the audio source (depending on version):

- FM / DAB radio stations* / AM*.
- USB key.
- CD Player (depending on model).
- Media player connected via the auxiliary socket (depending on model).
- Telephone connected via Bluetooth and Bluetooth multimedia broadcasting* (streaming).



* Depending on equipment.

In the "Settings" menu you can create a profile for just one person or a group of people with common features, with the possibility of entering a multitude of settings (radio presets, audio settings, navigation history, contact favourites, ...); these settings are taken into account automatically.

In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system. It may go into standby (screen and sound off) for at least 5 minutes.
The return to normal takes place when the temperature in the passenger compartment has dropped.

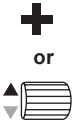
Steering mounted controls

Depending on model.

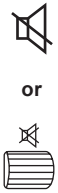


Voice commands:
This control is located on the steering wheel or at the end of the lighting control stalk (depending on model).
Short press, system voice commands.
Long press, smartphone voice commands via the system.

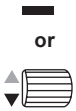
Increase volume.



Mute / Restore the sound.
Or
Mute by pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously.
Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.



Decrease volume.



SRC



or

SRC

Media (short press): change the multimedia source.
Telephone (short press): start telephone call.
Call in progress (short press): access telephone menu.
Telephone (long press): reject an incoming call, end call; when no call is in progress, access telephone menu.



Radio (rotate): automatic search for the previous / next station.
Media (rotate): previous / next track, move in a list.
Short press: confirm a selection; if nothing selected, access to presets.

or

OK



LIST

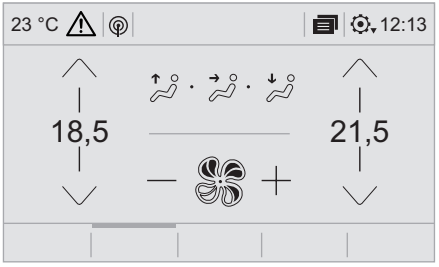
Radio: display the list of stations.
Media: display the list of tracks.
Radio (press and hold): update the list of stations received.

Menus

Depending on model / Depending on version

Air conditioning

Manage the different temperature and air flow settings.



Connected navigation

N

or

NAV

Enter navigation settings and choose a destination.
Use services available in real time, depending on equipment.



Applications

or

APPS

Operate certain applications on a smartphone connected via CarPlay®, MirrorLink™ or Android Auto.
Check the state of the Bluetooth® and Wi-Fi connections.

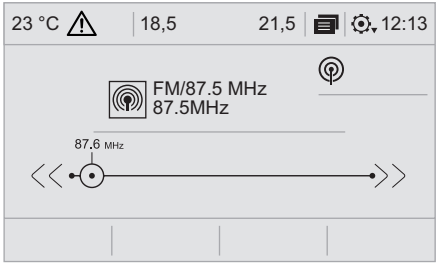


Radio Media

Select an audio source, a radio station, display photographs.

or

MEDIA

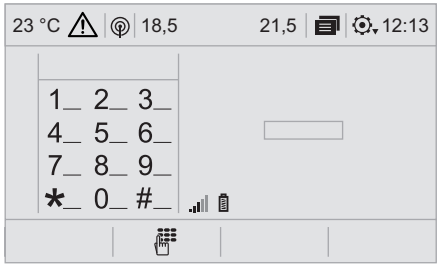


Telephone

Connect a telephone via Bluetooth®, read messages and emails and send quick messages.

or

TEL

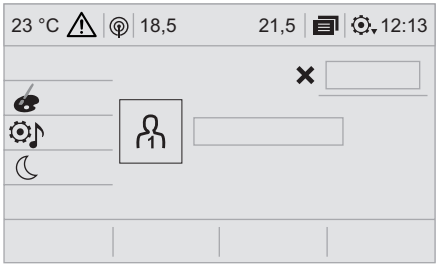


Configuration

Configure a personal profile and/or configure the sound (balance, ambience, ...) and the display (language, units, date, time, ...).

or

SETUP



Vehicle

Activate, deactivate or configure certain vehicle functions.

or

DRIVE



Voice commands

Steering mounted controls

Pressing this button activates the voice commands function.

! To ensure that voice commands are always recognised by the system, please observe the following recommendations:

- speak in a normal tone without breaking up words or raising your voice.
- always wait for the "beep" (audible signal) before speaking.
- for best operation, it is recommended that the windows and sunroof be closed to avoid external interference (depending on version),
- before making a voice command, ask other passengers to not speak.

First steps

Example of a "voice command" for navigation:
"Navigate to address" "11 Regent Street, London".
Example of a "voice command" for the radio and media:
"Play artist" "Madonna".
Example of a "voice command" for the telephone:
"Call David Miller".

The voice commands, with a choice of 12 languages (English, French, Italian, Spanish, German, Dutch, Portuguese, Polish, Turkish, Russian, Arabic, Brazilian), are made using the language previously chosen and set in the system.
For some voice commands, there are alternative synonyms.
Example: Guide to / Navigate to / Go to / ...
The voice commands in Arabic for: "Navigate to address" and "Display POI in the city", are not available.

Information - Using the system



Press the voice commands button and say your command after the audible signal. Don't forget that you can interrupt me at any time by pressing this button.
You can press this button again while I listen to you if you would like to end the conversation. If you are lost and would like to start again, say "cancel". If you would like to go back, say "back". To get some help or advice, say "help". If you say a command and I need more information, I will give you examples in order to help you provide me with the information I need or I will guide you. You will find more information in "beginner" mode. If you feel more comfortable, you can set the voice interaction to "expert" mode.

Global voice commands

These commands can be made from any screen page after pressing the "Voice command" or "Telephone" button located on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

Voice commands	Help messages
Help	There are lots of topics I can help you with. You can say: "telephone help", "navigation help", "media help" or "radio help". For an overview on how to use voice commands, you can say "voice commands help".
Voice command help	
Navigation help	
Radio help	
Media help	
Telephone help	
Set dialogue mode as <...>	Choose "beginner" or "expert" mode.
Select profile <...>	Select profile 1, 2 or 3.
Yes	Say "yes" if I got that right. Otherwise, say "no" and we'll start that again.
No	

"Navigation" voice commands

These commands can be made from any screen page after pressing the "Voice command" or "Telephone" button located on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

Voice commands	Help messages
Navigate home	To start guidance or add a stopover, say "navigate to" and then the address or contact name. For example, "navigate to address 11 Regent Street, London" or "navigate to contact, John Miller". You can also specify if it's a preferred or recent destination. For example, say "navigate to recent destination, 11 Regent Street, London", or "navigate to preferred destination, tennis club", or even "navigate home". To display the points of interest on a map, you can say "show hotels in Banbury" or "show nearby petrol stations". For more information, say "help with route guidance"
Navigate to work	
Navigate to preferred address <...>	
Navigate to contact <...>	
Navigate to address <...>	
Show nearby POI <...>	
Remaining distance	To get information about your current route, say "remaining time", "remaining distance" or "arrival time". To know the other commands that can be used, say "help with navigation".
Remaining time	
Arrival time	
Stop route guidance	

Depending on the country, give the destination instructions (address) in the language used by the system.

"Radio Media" voice commands

These commands can be made from any screen page after pressing the "Voice command" or "Telephone" button located on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

Voice commands	Help messages
Tune to channel <...>	You can pick a radio station by saying "tune to" followed by the station name or frequency you want to listen to. For example, you can say "tune to channel Talksport" or "tune to 98.5 FM". To listen to a preset radio station, say "tune to preset number". For example "tune to preset number five"
What's playing	To display the details of the current "track", "artist" and "album", you can say "What's playing"
Play song <...>	Use the command "play" to select the type of music you'd like to hear. You can pick by "song", "album" or "artist". Just say something like "play artist, Madonna", "play song, Hey Jude", or "play album, Thriller".
Play artist <...>	
Play album <...>	

Media voice commands are available only for a USB connection.

"Telephone" voice commands

If a telephone is connected to the system, these voice commands can be issued from any main screen page after pressing the "Telephone" button on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.
If there is no telephone connected by Bluetooth, a voice message says: "Please first connect a telephone" and the voice session will be closed.

Voice commands	Help messages
Call contact <...>*	To make a phone call, say "call" followed by the contact name, for example: "call David Miller". You can also include the phone type, for example: "Call David Miller at home". To make a call by number, say "dial" followed by the phone number, for example: "dial 07776 835 417". You can check your voicemail by saying "call voicemail". To send a text, say "send quick message to Bill Carter" followed by the name of the quick message you'd like to send. For example, "send quick message to David Miller", "I'll be late". To display the list of contacts or calls, say "display contacts" or "display calls". For more information on SMS, say "help with texting".
Dial <...>*	
Display contacts*	
Display calls*	
Call (message box | voicemail)*	

* This function is available only if the telephone connected to the system supports downloading of contacts and recent calls and if the download has been done.

"Text message" voice commands

If a telephone is connected to the system, these voice commands can be issued from any main screen page after pressing the "Telephone" button on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.
If there is no telephone connected by Bluetooth, a voice message says : "Please first connect a telephone" and the voice session will be closed.

Voice commands	Help messages
Send text to <...>	To hear your messages, say "listen to most recent message". To send a message, you can use the preset quick messages. You just need to use the name of the quick message. For example, "send quick message to Bill Carter, I'll be late". You can find the list of quick messages in the phone menu. You can say "call" or "send quick message to" and then select a line from the list. To move around a list, say "go to start", "go to end", "next page" or "previous page". To cancel a selection, say "undo". To cancel the current action and start again, say "cancel".
Listen to most recent message*	

i The system only sends pre-recorded "Quick messages".

* This function is available only if the telephone connected to the system supports downloading of contacts and recent calls and if the download has been done.

Navigation

Choice of a profile

To a new destination

N

or

NAV

Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Enter address**".

F GB

Select the "**Country**".

Enter the "**City**", the "**Street**" and the "**Number**" and confirm by pressing on the suggestions displayed.

OK Press "**OK**" to select the "**Guidance criteria**".

And / Or

Select "**See on map**" to select the "**Guidance criteria**".

OK Press "**OK**" to start navigation.

i Zoom out / zoom in using the touch buttons or with two fingers on the screen.

i In order to be able to use the navigation, it is necessary to fill in the "**City**", the "**Street**" and the "**Number**" on the virtual keyboard or select from the "**Contact**" list or the "**History**" of addresses.

i Without confirmation of the street number, you will be guided to one end of the street.

To a recent destination

Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

or

NAV

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**My destinations**".

Select the "**Recent**" tab.

Select the address chosen in the list to display the "**Guidance criteria**".

OK Press "**OK**" to start navigation.

i Select "**Position**" to visualise the arrival point geographically.

To "My home" or "My work"

Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

or

NAV

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**My destinations**".

Select the "**Preferred**" tab.

Select "**My home**".

Or

Select "**My work**".

Or

Select a preset favourite destination.

Towards a contact

Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

or

NAV

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**My destinations**".

Select the "**Contact**" tab.

Select a contact in the list to start navigation.

Towards points of interest (POI)

Points of Interest (POI) are listed in different categories.

Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

or

NAV

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Points of interest**".

Select the "**Travel**", or "**Leisure**" or "**Commercial**" or "**Public**" or "**Geographic**" tab.

Or

Select "**Search**" to enter the name and address of a POI.

Press "**OK**" to start calculation of the route.

To a point on the map

Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

or

NAV

Explore the map by sliding a finger on the screen.

Select the destination by pressing on the map.

Tap the screen to place a marker and display the sub-menu.

Press this button to start navigation.

Or

Press this button to save the address displayed.

A long press on an item opens a list of POIs nearby.

Towards GPS coordinates



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

or

NAV

Explore the map by sliding a finger on the screen.



Press this button to display the world map.
Using the grid, select by zoom the desired country or region.



Press this button to enter the GPS coordinates.



A marker is displayed in the middle of the screen, with the "**Latitude**" and "**Longitude**" coordinates.



Press this button to start navigation.

Or



Press this button to save the address displayed.

OR



Press this button to enter the value for "**Latitude**" using the virtual keypad.

And



Press this button to enter the value for "**Longitude**" using the virtual keypad.

TMC (Traffic Message Channel)

TMC (Traffic Message Channel) messages are linked to a European standard on the broadcasting of traffic information via the RDS system on FM radio, transmitting traffic information in real time.
The TMC information is then displayed on a GPS Navigation system map and taken into account straight away during navigation, so as to avoid accidents, traffic jams and closed roads.

The display of danger zones depends on the legislation in force and subscription to the service.

Connected navigation

Depending on version

Depending on the equipment level of the vehicle

Network connection provided by the vehicle



OR

Network connection provided by the user



Connected navigation connection

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

i For access to connected navigation, you can use the connection provided by the vehicle via the "Emergency or assistance call" services or use your smartphone as a modem.
Activate and enter settings for sharing the smartphone connection.

Network connection provided by the vehicle



The system is automatically connected to the modem included for the "Emergency or assistance calls" services and does not require a connection provided by the user via their smartphone.

Network connection provided by the user

USB connection



Connect a USB cable.
The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.

Bluetooth connection



Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is visible to all (see the "Applications" section).

W-Fi connection



Select a Wi-Fi network found by the system and connect to it (see the "Applications" section).

i Restrictions of use:
- With CarPlay®, connection sharing is only with a Wi-Fi connection.
- With MirrorLink™, connection sharing is only with a USB connection.

The quality of services depends on the quality of the network connection.



With the arrival of "TOMTOM TRAFFIC", the services are available.

The services offered with connected navigation are as follows.
A Connected Services pack:
- Weather,
- Filling stations,
- Car parks,
- Traffic,
- POI local search.

A Danger zones pack (option).

The principles and standards are constantly changing; for the communication process between the smartphone and the system to work correctly, we recommend that you **update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and the system.**

Settings specific to connected navigation

In the "Settings" menu you can create a profile for just one person or a group of people with common features, with the possibility of entering a multitude of settings (radio presets, audio settings, navigation history, contact favourites, ...); these settings are taken into account automatically.

Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

or

NAV

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Settings**".

Select "**Map**".

Activate or deactivate:
- "**Allow declaration of danger zones**".
- **"Guidance to final destination on foot"**
- **"Authorise sending information"**

These settings must be made according to each profile.

Select "**Alerts**".

Activate or deactivate "**Warn of danger zones**".

Select this button.

Activate: **Give an audible warning**

For access to connected navigation, you have to select the option: "**Authorise sending information**".

The display of danger zones depends on the legislation in force and subscription to the service.

Declaration of "Danger zones"

! To distribute information on the declaration of danger zones, you should check the option: "**Allow declaration of danger zones**".



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

or

NAV



Press the "Declare a new danger zone" button located in the upper bar of the touch screen.



Select the option "**Type**" to choose the type of "Danger zone".



Select the "**Speed**" option and enter it using the virtual keypad.

OK

Press "**OK**" to save and distribute the information.

"Danger zones" pack updates



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**System settings**".



Select the "**System info**" tab.



Select "**View**" to display the versions of the different modules installed in the system.



Select "**Update(s) due**".

i You can download the system and map updates from the Brand's website.
The update procedure can also be found on the website.

Display the weather



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

or

NAV



Press this button to display the list of services.



Select "**View map**".



Select "**Weather**".



Press this button to display primary information.



Press this button to display the detailed weather information.

i The temperature displayed at 6 a.m. will be the maximum temperature for the day.
The temperature displayed at 6 p.m. will be the minimum temperature for the night.

Applications

Internet Browser

Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

or

APPS

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the "**Internet Browser**" function.

Press "**Internet Browser**" to display the browser home page.

Select your country of residence.

Press "**OK**" to save and start the browser.

OK

Connection to the internet is via one of the network connections provided by the vehicle or the user.

Connectivity

Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

or

APPS

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the **CarPlay®**, **MirrorLink™** or **Android Auto** functions.

Applications

Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

or

APPS

Press "**Applications**" to display the applications home page.

CarPlay® smartphone connection

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications adapted for the smartphone's CarPlay® technology on the vehicle screen when the smartphone's CarPlay® function has been previously activated.
As the principles and standards are constantly changing, **it is recommended that you keep your smartphone's operating system updated**.
For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.

Press on "**Telephone**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

or

TEL

Or



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press "**Applications**" to display the primary page.

or

APPS

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the CarPlay® function.



Press on "**CarPlay**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

On connecting the USB cable, the CarPlay® function deactivates the system's Bluetooth® mode.

MirrorLink™ smartphone connection

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications adapted for the smartphone's MirrorLink™ technology on the vehicle screen.
The principles and standards are constantly changing, for the communication process between the smartphone and the system to operate, it is essential that the smartphone is unlocked; **update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and the system.**
For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.

As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

The "**MirrorLink™**" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and applications.



When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that "Bluetooth"® be started on the smartphone



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press "**Applications**" to display the primary page.

or

APPS

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the MirrorLink™ function.



Press "**MirrorLink™**" to start the application in the system.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the "**MirrorLink™**" function.

OK During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed.
Accept to start and complete the connection.

Once connection is established, a page is displayed with the applications already downloaded to your smartphone and adapted to MirrorLink™ technology.

Access to the different audio sources remains accessible in the margin of the MirrorLink™ display, using touch buttons in the upper bar. Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of your network.

Android Auto smartphone connection

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications adapted for the smartphone's Android Auto technology on the vehicle screen.
The principles and standards are constantly changing, for the communication process between the smartphone and the system to operate, it is essential that the smartphone is unlocked; **update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and the system.**
For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.

As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

The "**Android Auto**" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and applications.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.

From the system, press "**Applications**" to display the primary page.

or

APPS

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the "Android Auto" function.



Press "**Android Auto**" to start the application in the system.

OK During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed.
Accept to start and complete the connection.

Different audio sources remain accessible in the margin of the Android Auto display, using touch buttons in the upper bar.
Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

In Android Auto mode, the function to display the menus by pressing the screen briefly with three fingers is deactivated.

There may be a waiting time for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of your network.

Bluetooth® connection

As a safety measure and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing of the Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

Procedure from the telephone

Select the system name in the list of devices detected.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

Procedure from the system

Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

or

APPS

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Press "**Bluetooth connection**".

Select "**Search**".
The list of telephones detected is displayed.

If the pairing procedure fails, it is recommended that you deactivate and then reactivate the Bluetooth function in your telephone.

Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or not the transfer of your contacts and messages.

Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:
- "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- "**Streaming**" (streaming: wireless playing of the audio files on the telephone),
- "**Mobile internet data**".

The "**Mobile internet data**" profile must be activated for connected navigation (where the vehicle does not have "Emergency and assistance call" services), having first activated sharing of this connection on your smartphone.

Select one or more profiles.

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

OK

Connection Wi-Fi

Network connection by the smartphone Wi-Fi.

Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

or

APPS

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Wi-Fi network connection**".

WIFI

Select the "**Secured**" or "**Not secured**" or "**Stored**" tab.

Select a network.

Using the virtual keypad, enter the "**Key**" for the Wi-Fi network and the "**Password**".

Press "**OK**" to start the connection.

OK

The Wi-Fi connection and the sharing of the Wi-Fi connection are exclusive.

Connection sharing Wi-Fi

Creation of a local Wi-Fi network by the system.

Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

or

APPS

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Share Wi-Fi connection**".

Select the "**Activation**" tab to activate or deactivate sharing of the Wi-Fi connection.

And / Or

Select the "**Settings**" to change the name of the system network and the password.

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

i To protect against unauthorised access and make your systems as secure as possible, the use of a complex security code or password is recommended.

Manage connections

Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

or

APPS

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Manage connection**".

With this function you can view the access to connected services, the availability of connected services and modify the connection mode.

Radio

Selecting a station

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

or

MEDIA

Press "**Frequency**".

Press one of the buttons for an automatic search for radio stations.

Or

Move the cursor for a manual search for frequencies up or down.

Or

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

or

MEDIA

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Radio stations**" in the secondary page.

Press "**Frequency**".

Enter the values using the virtual keypad.
First enter the units then click on the decimals zone to enter the figures after the decimal point.

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

! Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the Brand, such as a USB charger connected to the 12 V socket.
The external environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, ...) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This is a normal effect of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not indicate any failure of the audio equipment.

Presetting a station

Select a radio station or frequency (refer to the corresponding section).

Press "**Presets**".



Make a long press on one of the buttons to preset the station.

Activating / Deactivating RDS

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

or

MEDIA

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Radio settings**".

Select "**General**".

Activate / Deactivate "**Station follow**".

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

OK

RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100% of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

Display text information

The "Radio Text" function allows information transmitted by the radio station and related to the station or the song playing to be displayed.

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

or

MEDIA

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Radio settings**".

Select "**General**".

Activate / Deactivate "**Display radio text**".

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

OK

Play TA messages

! The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages.
To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that carries this type of message. While traffic information is being broadcast, the current media is automatically interrupted so that the TA message can be heard. Normal play of the media previously playing is resumed at the end of the message.

Select "**Announcements**".



Activate / Deactivate "**Traffic announcement**".

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

Terrestrial Digital Radio

! Digital radio provides higher quality reception.
The different multiplexes offer a choice of radio stations arranged in alphabetical order.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

or

MEDIA



Select the audio source.

Press "**Band**" to select the "**DAB**" waveband.

DAB-FM auto tracking

i "DAB" does not cover 100% of the territory.
When the digital radio signal is poor, "DAB-FM auto tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding "FM" analogue station (if there is one).



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

or

MEDIA

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Radio settings**".

Select "**General**".

Activate / Deactivate "**Station follow**".

OK

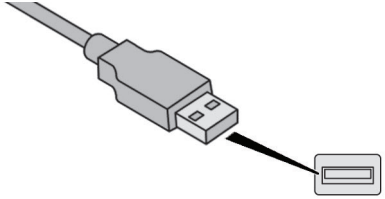
Press "**OK**".

If "DAB-FM auto tracking" is activated, there is a difference of a few seconds when the system switches to "FM" analogue radio with sometimes a variation in volume.
Once the digital signal quality is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB".

If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on "FM" ("**DAB-FM**" option greyed out), or "DAB/FM auto tracking " is not activated, the sound will cut out while the digital signal is too weak.

Media

Port USB



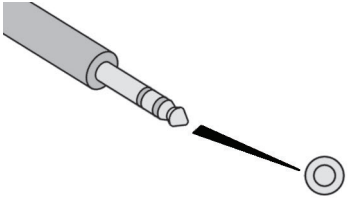
Insert the USB memory stick in the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.
Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.
The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or a USB memory stick is connected. The lists are memorised: if they are not modified, the subsequent loading time will be shorter.

Auxiliary socket (AUX)

(depending on model / depending on equipment)



This source is only available if "Auxiliary input" has been checked in the audio settings.

Connect the portable device (MP3 player…) to the auxiliary jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

First adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of your audio system.
Display and management of the controls are via the portable device.

CD player

(depending on model / depending on equipment)
Insert the CD in the player.

Selecting the source



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

or

MEDIA



Select "**Source**".

Choose the source.

Bluetooth® audio streaming

Streaming allows you to listen to music from your smartphone.

The Bluetooth profile must be activated, first adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level).
Then adjust the volume of your audio system.

If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the telephone.
Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.

! Once connected in streaming mode, the telephone is considered to be a media source.

Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).
Play starts automatically.

Control is via the audio system.

i The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists / albums / genres / playlists / audiobooks / podcasts).
The default classification used is by artists. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

Information and advice

! The system supports USB mass storage devices, BlackBerry® devices or Apple® players via USB ports. The adapter cable is not supplied.
Device management is done by the audio system controls.
Other peripherals, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a Jack cable (not supplied) or via Bluetooth streaming, depending on compatibility.

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The audio equipment will only play audio files with ".wma, .aac, .flac, .ogg and .mp3" file extensions and with a bit rate of between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.
It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode.
No other file types (.mp4, etc.) can be read.
".wma" files must be of the standard wma 9 type.
The sampling rates supported are 32, 44 and 48 KHz.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters, without using special characters (e.g.: " " ? . ; ù) so as to avoid any reading or display problems.

Use only USB keys in FAT32 format (File Allocation Table).

It is recommended that the original USB cable for the portable device is used.

In order to be able to play a burned CDR or CDRW, select standards ISO 9660 level 1, 2 or Joliet if possible when burning the CD.
If the disc is burned in another format, it may not be played correctly.
It is recommended that the same burning standard is always used on an individual disc, with the lowest speed possible (4x maximum) for the best acoustic quality.
In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

Telephone

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

Procedure from the telephone

Select the system name in the list of devices detected.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

Procedure from the system

Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

or

TEL

Press "**Bluetooth search**".

Or

Select "**Search**".
The list of telephones detected is displayed.

If the pairing procedure fails, it is recommended that you deactivate and then reactivate the Bluetooth function in your telephone.



Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles :

- "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- "**Streaming**" (streaming: wireless playing of the audio files on the telephone),
- "**Mobile internet data**".

Activation of the profile; "**Mobile internet data**" is obligatory for connected navigation having first activated sharing of this connection on your smartphone.



Select one or more profiles.

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or not the transfer of your contacts and messages.

Automatic reconnection

On return to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is automatically recognised and within about 30 seconds of switching on the ignition, the connection is established without any action on your part (Bluetooth activated).

To modify the connection profile:



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

or

TEL

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.



Press the "details" button.



Select one or more profiles.

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

The ability of the system to connect to just one profile depends on the telephone. All three profiles may connect by default.

The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used. Check the instructions for your telephone and with your service provider for the services to which you have access.

The profiles compatible with the system are: HFP, OPP, PBAP, A2DP, AVRCP, MAP and PAN.

Go to the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, additional help, ...).

Managing paired telephones

This function allows the connection or disconnection of a peripheral device as well as the deletion of a pairing.

Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

or

TEL

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.

Press on the name of the telephone chosen in the list to disconnect it.
Press again to connect it.

Deleting a telephone

Select the recycle bin at the top right of the screen to display a recycle bin alongside the telephone chosen.

Press the recycle bin alongside the telephone chosen to delete it.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.

SRC

Make a short press on the steering mounted **TEL** button to accept an incoming call.

And

+2s

Make a long press

SRC

on the steering mounted **TEL** button to reject the call.

or

Select "**End call**".

Making a call

Using the telephone is not recommended while driving.
Park the vehicle.
Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

Calling a new number

Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

or

TEL

Enter the phone number using the digital keypad.

Press "**Call**" to start the call.

Calling a contact

Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

or

TEL

Or make a long press





on the steering mounted **TEL** button.

Select "**Contact**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.

Select "**Call**".

Calling a recently used number

Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

or

TEL

Or

Make a long press





on the steering mounted button.

Select "**Calls**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.

It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; as a safety measure, first park the vehicle.

Managing contacts / entries

Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

or

TEL

Select "**Contact**".

Select "**Create**" to add a new contact.

In the "**Telephone**" tab, enter the telephone numbers for the contact.

In the "**Address**" tab, enter the addresses for the contact.

In the "**Email**" tab, enter the email addresses for the contact.

The "**Email**" function allows email addresses to be entered for a contact, but the system is not able to send emails.

Managing messages

Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

or

TEL

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Messages**" to display the list of messages.

Select the "**All**" or "**Sent**" or "**Incoming**" tab.

Select the detail of the message chosen in one of the lists.

Press "**Answer**" to send a quick message stored in the system.

Press "**Call**" to make a call.

Press "**Play**" to hear the message.

! Access to "**Messages**" depends on the compatibility of the smartphone and the integral system.
Depending on the smartphone, access to your messages or email may be slow.

i The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used.
Check in the manual for your smartphone and with your service provider for the services available to you.

Managing quick messages

Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

or

TEL

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Quick messages**" to display the list of messages.

Select the "**Delayed**" or "**My arrival**" or "**Not available**" or "**Other**" tab with the possibility of creating new messages.

Press "**Create**" to write a new message.

Select the message chosen in one of the lists.

Press "**Transfer**" to select the addressee(s).

Press "**Play**" to start playing the message.

Managing email

Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

or

TEL

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Email**" to display the list of messages.

Select the "**Incoming**" or "**Sent**" or "**Not read**" tab.

Select the message chosen in one of the lists.

Press "**Play**" to start playing the message.

! Access to "**Email**" depends on the compatibility of the smartphone and the integral system.

Configuration

Audio settings

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

or

SETUP

Select "**Audio settings**".

Select "**Ambience**".

Or

"**Position**".

Or

"**Sound**".

Or

"**Voice**".

Or

"**Ringtone**".

Press "**OK**" to save the settings.

OK

! The sound distribution (or spatialisation with the Arkamys© system) is audio processing that allows the quality of the sound to be adapted according to the number of passengers in the vehicle. Available only with the front and rear speakers configuration.

i The audio settings **Ambience** (6 optional ambiences) and **Bass**, **Medium** and **Treble** are different and independent for each audio source.
Activate or Deactivate "**Loudness**".
The settings for "**Position**" (All passengers, Driver andFront only) are common to all sources.
Activate or Deactivate "**Touch tones**", "**Volume linked to speed**" and "**Auxiliary input**".

i Onboard audio: Arkamys© Sound Staging optimises the distribution of sound in the passenger compartment.

Profile settings

! As a safety measure and because it requires the sustained attention of the driver, changes to settings must only be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

or

SETUP

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Setting of the profiles**".

Select "**Profile 1**" or "**Profile 2**" or "**Profile 3**" or "**Common profile**".

Press this button to enter a name for the profile using the virtual keypad.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Press this button to add a photograph to the profile.

Insert a USB memory stick containing the photograph in the USB port.
Select the photograph.

OK Press "**OK**" to accept the transfer of the photograph.

OK Press "**OK**" again to save the settings.

i The location for the photograph is square; the system reshapes the original photograph if in another format.

00.0 Press this button to initialise the profile selected.

! Initialisation of the profile selected activates the English language by default.

Select a "**Profile**" (1 or 2 or 3) to associate the "**Audio settings**" with it.



Select "**Audio settings**".

Select "**Ambience**".

Or

"**Position**".

Or

"**Sound**".

Or

"**Voice**".

Or

"**Ringtone**".

Press "**OK**" to save the settings.

OK

Modifying system settings



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

or

SETUP

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Screen configuration**".

Select "**Animation**".



Activate or deactivate: "**Automatic scrolling**".

Select "**Brightness**".

Move the cursor to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel.



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

or

SETUP

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**System settings**".

Select "**Units**" to change the units of distance, fuel consumption and temperature.

Select "**Factory settings**" to return to the initial settings.

! Returning the system to factory settings activates the English language by default.

Select "**System info**" to display the versions of the different modules installed in the system.

Selecting the language

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

or

SETUP

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Languages**" to change the language.

Setting the date

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

or

SETUP

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Setting the time-date**".

Select "**Date**".

Press on this button to define the date.

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

OK

Select the display format of the date.

Adjustment of the time and date is only available if "GPS synchronisation" is deactivated.
The change between winter and summer time is done by changing the time zone.

Setting the time

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

or

SETUP

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Setting the time-date**".

Select "**Time**".

Press this button to adjust the time using the virtual keypad.

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

OK

Press this button to define the time zone.

Select the display format for the time (12h / 24h).

Activate or deactivate synchronisation with GPS (UTC).

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

The system does not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on country).

Colour schemes

As a safety measure, the procedure for changing the colour scheme is only possible when the **vehicle is stationary**.

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

or

SETUP

Select "**Colour schemes**".

Select a colour scheme in the list then press "**OK**" to confirm.

Every time the colour scheme is changed, the system restarts, temporarily displaying a black screen.

Frequently asked questions

The following information groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning your audio system.

Navigation

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
The route calculation is not successful.	The guidance criteria may be in conflict with the current location (exclusion of toll roads on a toll road).	Check the route settings in the "Navigation" menu.
The POIs do not appear.	The POIs have not been selected.	Select the POIs in the list of POIs.
The audible warning of "Danger zones" does not work.	The audible warning is not active or the volume is too low.	Activate the audible warning in the "Navigation" menu and check the voice volume in the audio settings.
The system does not suggest a detour around an incident on the route.	The guidance criteria do not take account of TMC messages.	Select setting for the "Traffic info" function in the list of route settings (Without, Manual or Automatic).
I receive a "Danger zones" alert which is not on my route.	Other than guidance, the system announces all "Danger zones" positioned in a cone located in front of the vehicle. It may provide an alert for "Danger zones" located on nearby or parallel roads.	Zoom in on the map to see the exact position of the "Danger zones". Select "On the route" to no longer receive alerts other than navigation instructions or to reduce the time for the announcement.
Certain traffic jams along the route are not indicated in real time.	On starting, it is several minutes before the system begins to receive the traffic information.	Wait until the traffic information is being received correctly (display of the traffic information icons on the map).
	In certain countries, only major routes (motorways...) are listed for the traffic information.	This is perfectly normal. The system is dependent on the traffic information available.
The altitude is not displayed.	On starting, the initialisation of the GPS may take up to 3 minutes to receive more than 4 satellites correctly.	Wait until the system has started up completely so that there is GPS coverage by at least 4 satellites.
	Depending on the geographical environment (tunnel...) or the weather, the conditions of reception of the GPS signal may vary.	This behaviour is normal. The system is dependent on the GPS signal reception conditions.
My navigation is no longer connected.	During start-up and in certain geographical areas, the connection may be unavailable.	Check that the connected services are activated (settings, contract).

Radio

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
The reception quality of the tuned radio station gradually deteriorates or the stored stations are not working (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter of the station or no transmitter is present in the geographical area.	Activate the "RDS" function by means of the short-cut menu to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks...) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a Brand dealer.
I cannot find some radio stations in the list of stations received. The name of the radio station changes.	The station is not received or has changed its name in the list. Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example). The system interprets these details as the station name.	Press on the "Update list" button in the "Radio stations" secondary menu.

Media

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).	Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the catalogue time).	Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.
The CD is ejected every time or is not played.	The CD is upside down, cannot be read, does not contain audio files or contains audio files of a format not recognised by the audio system. The CD has been recorded in a format that is not compatible with the player (udf,...). The CD is protected by an anti-pirating system not recognised by the audio system.	Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up. Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too badly damaged. Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: consult the advice in the "AUDIO" section. The audio system CD does not read DVDs. Due to insufficient quality, certain burned CDs will not be read by the audio system.
There is a long waiting period following the insertion of a CD or connection of a USB memory stick.	Upon insertion of a new key, the system reads a certain amount of data (directory, title, artist, etc.). This may take from a few seconds to a few minutes.	This is perfectly normal.
The CD sound is of poor quality.	The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.	Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio settings (bass, treble, ambience) are unsuitable.	Return bass and treble settings to 0, without selecting an ambience.
Some information characters in the currently playing media are not displayed correctly.	The audio system does not display some types of characters.	Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.
Playback of streaming files does not start.	The connected device does not automatically launch playback.	Start playback from the device.
Names of tracks and playing time are not displayed on the audio streaming screen.	The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.	

Telephone

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.	The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.	Check that your telephone has Bluetooth switched on. Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".
	The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.	You can check the compatibility of your telephone on the Brand's website (services).
The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.	The sound depends on both the system and the telephone.	Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
	Ambient noise affects the quality of the telephone call.	Reduce the ambient noise level (close the windows, reduce the booster fan speed, slow down, ...).
Some contacts are duplicated in the list.	The options for synchronising contacts are synchronising the contacts on the SIM card, the contacts on the telephone, or both. When both synchronisations are selected, some contacts may be duplicated.	Select "Display SIM card contacts" or "Display telephone contacts".
The contacts are listed in alphabetical order.	Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.	Modify the telephone directory display settings.
The system does not receive SMS.	The Bluetooth mode does not permit sending SMS text messages to the system.	

Settings

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
When changing the setting of treble and bass, the equalizer setting is deselected. When changing the equalizer setting, the treble and bass settings are reset.	The selection of an equalizer setting imposes the settings for treble and bass and vice-versa.	Modify the treble and bass or equalizer settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
When changing the balance setting, distribution is deselected. When changing the distribution setting, the balance setting is deselected.	The selection of a distribution setting imposes the balance settings and vice-versa.	Modify the balance setting or the distribution setting to obtain the desired sound quality.
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources.	To allow for optimal listening quality, the audio settings can be tailored to different sound sources, which can generate audible differences when changing source.	Check that the audio settings are adapted to the sources listened to. It is recommended that the audio settings (Bass, Treble, Balance) be adjusted to the middle position, select the "None" musical ambience and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.
When the engine is off, the system stops after several minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. In normal off state, the system automatically goes into energy economy mode to maintain an adequate charge in the battery.	Turn the ignition on to increase the charge of the battery.
The date and time cannot be set.	Setting of the date and time is only available if the synchronisation with the satellites is deactivated.	Settings menu / Options / Time-Date setting. Select the "Time" tab and deactivate the "GPS synchronisation" (UTC).

Manufacturer: Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o.

Europe

1999/5/EC Directive regulatory notices

This device has been evaluated against the essential requirements of the 1999/5/EC Directive.

Bulgarian	С настоящето ""Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o." декларира, че ""NAC EUR WAVE2"отговаря на съществените изисквания и другите приложими изисквания на Директива 1999/5/ЕС.
Croatian	Ovime "Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o.", izjavljuje da je ovaj "NAC EUR WAVE2" je u skladu s osnovnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.
Czech	""Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o." tímto prohlašuje, že tento ""NAC EUR WAVE2"je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
Danish	Undertegnede ""Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o." erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr ""NAC EUR WAVE2"overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Dutch	Hierbij verklaart ""Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o." dat het toestel ""NAC EUR WAVE2"in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
English	Hereby, ""Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o.", declares that this ""NAC EUR WAVE2"is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
Estonian	Käesolevaga kinnitab ""Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o." seadme ""NAC EUR WAVE2"vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
German	Hiermit erklärt ""Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o.", dass sich das Gerät ""NAC EUR WAVE2"in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
Greek	ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ ""Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o." ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ ""NAC EUR WAVE2"ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
Hungarian	Alulírott, ""Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o." nyilatkozom, hogy a ""NAC EUR WAVE2"megfelel a vonatkozó alapvető követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb előírásainak.
Finnish	""Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o." vakuuttaa täten että ""NAC EUR WAVE2"tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
French	Par la présente ""Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o." déclare que l'appareil ""NAC EUR WAVE2"est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Icelandic	Hér með lýsir ""Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o." yfir því að ""NAC EUR WAVE2"er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC
Italian	Con la presente ""Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o." dichiara che questo ""NAC EUR WAVE2"è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Latvian	Ar šo ""Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o." deklarē, ka ""NAC EUR WAVE2"atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Lithuanian	Šiuo ""Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o." deklaruoja, kad šis ""NAC EUR WAVE2"atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
Maltese	Hawnhekk, ""Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o.", jiddikjara li dan ""NAC EUR WAVE2"jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Direttiva 1999/5/EC.
Norwegian	""Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o." erklærer herved at utstyret ""NAC EUR WAVE2"er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Polish	Niniejszym ""Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o." oświadcza, że ""NAC EUR WAVE2"jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC
Portuguese	""Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o." declara que este ""NAC EUR WAVE2"está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Slovak	""Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o." týmto vyhlasuje, že ""NAC EUR WAVE2"spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
Slovenian	""Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o." izjavlja, da je ta ""NAC EUR WAVE2"v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Spanish	Por medio de la presente ""Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o." declara que ""NAC EUR WAVE2"cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Swedish	Härmed intygar ""Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o." att denna ""NAC EUR WAVE2"står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.

In order to satisfy the essential requirements of 1999/5/EC Directive, the product is compliant with the following standards:

RF spectrum use (R&TTE art. 3.2)	ETSI EN 300 328 V1.9.1 (2015-02)
EMC (R&TTE art. 3.1b)	ETSI EN 301 489-1 V1.9.2 (2011-09) ETSI EN 301 489-17 V2.2.1 (2012-09) ETSI EN 300 440-2 V1.4.1 (2010-08) EN 55013 (2013) EN 55020 (2007)
Health & Safety (R&TTE art. 3.1a)	EN 60950-1:2006 + A11:2009+ A12:2011 + A1:2010 + AC:2011+ A2:2013
RoHS	2011/65/UE, 2014/1UE to 2014/6/UE, 2014/8/UE to 2014/16/UE

The conformity assessment procedure referred to in Article 10 and detailed in Annex IV of Directive 1999/5/EC has been followed with the involvement of the following Notified Body:

AT4 wireless, S.A.
Parque Tecnologico de Andalucía
C/ Severo Ochoa 2
29590 Campanillas – Málaga
SPAIN
Notified Body No: 1909

Thus, the following marking is included in the product (**Label on top**):

CE 1909

There is no restriction for the commercialization of this device in all the countries of the European Union.

➢ Specific instructions of installation and proper use of the equipment

This Multimedia System Equipment must be fixed in a car dashboard.

This Equipment is intended to be installed by service persons or qualified operators in a restricted access location that can only accessed by using a tool.
The external devices and accessories connected to the equipment shall comply its product standard in order to prevent fire risks.
Fuse characteristics:

MINI AUTO FUSE W Yellow 20:
Voltage rated: 32V (Volts)
Current rated: 20A (Amperes)

600	0.30 seconds	0.100 seconds
350	0.080 seconds	0.250 seconds
200	0.15 seconds	5 seconds
135	0.75 seconds	600 seconds
110	100 hours	-
% of rating	Minimum	Maximum
	Blow Time	

➢ List of countries within the EU or geographical zones where it can be used.

There is no restriction for the commercialization of this device in all the countries of the European Union:

Austria, Belgium, Bulgaria, Croatia, Cyprus, Czech Republic, Denmark, Estonia, Finland, France, Germany, Greece, Hungary, Ireland, Italy, Latvia, Lithuania, Luxembourg, Malta, Netherlands, Poland, Portugal, Romania, Slovakia, Slovenia, Spain, Sweden, United Kingdom,

➢ Information about the license that apply to it.

There is no specific license.

➢ Restrictions or possible additional restrictions when trying to achieve the authorisation of use of the equipment.

There is no specific restriction to achieve the authorisation of use of the equipment.

USA – Federal Communications Commission (FCC)

FCC ID: ZFW-NACEUR2

1. Modification Statement

"Continental Automotive Rambouillet France S.A.S." has not approved any changes or modifications to this device by the user. Any changes or modifications could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

2. Interference statement

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1)This device may not cause harmful interference, and

(2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

3. Wireless notice:

This device complies with FCCC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment and meets the FCC radio frequency (RF) Exposure Guidelines. This transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

4. FCC Class A/B digital device or peripheral notice – Class

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

—Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
—Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
—Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
—Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.